2014

SAP SD

NEW NOTES

By

Ravi

(propel)

Sai ram Xerox

9885440924.7032083058

Demo on 15/03/2014. SAP - SD.

class① 20/03/14.

* SAP - Systems Applications and products in Data processing.

* SAP is an ERP Package.

What is ERP?

* ERP stands for Enterprise Resource Planning.

* It specifies the Planning in all the Departments in an Organization. So the Success of an Organization will depend up on the planning in all the departments of particular organization (sales, finance, production, HR etc) and that will be specified in SAP-ERP Package.

* ERP specifies planning in 4 Ms which are ① Money ② Materials ③ Mechinary ④ Man Power.

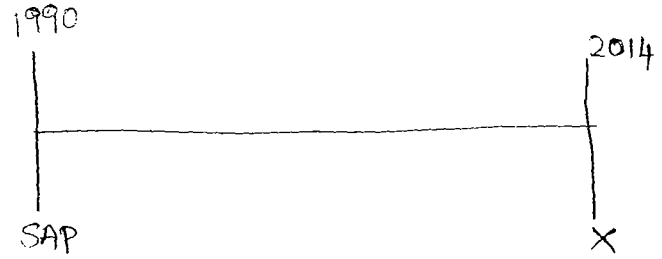
* The Other ERP Packages that are available in the market are oracle, People Soft, BAAN, seibel, JD Edwards, microsoft etc. The all legacy (non SAP) ERP Packages are belongs to (Devel a Particular department of an organization.

* Advantages of SAP:

① SAP will have solution for all the departments in an Organization.

② SAP is Tightly Integrated Product i.e., if you do Transactions in one department it automatically updat that Particular information in other departments where It is Required.

Future of SAP:



* At present SAP ERP Package hold 75% share in the Market rest of the 25% will be shared by all other ERP Packages.
* There is no other Package is available in the market as SAP so if some 'x' start implementing a competitor for SAP it will take around 10 years to finish. By they the SAP will occupy above 80% of the Market share so there will be no doubt on future of SAP to be the number one in the world.
* SAP is implemented in Germany in 1972 and there are 4 People involved in implemented SAP.
* SAP is number one in World ERP processes.

Versions in SAP: There are different versions are available in SAP.

3.0 .... — 4.6 — 4.6C — 4.7 — 5.0 — 6.0 (present)

* The difference between version to version is Upgradation of product.
* Based on the new Requirements of clients SAP is coming out with new versions.
* SAP has stopped giving Support upto 4.7 version. So the clients who are using these versions they need to Upgrade their system to version 6.0.
* All the clients who are using SAP software will have to have life time Support from implementation Partner to solve their Tickets.

* In 6.0 version SAP is further releasing Enhancement Pack for the new requirements of clients.

SAP Version 6.0 — Enhancement = Improvement

- EHP1
- EHP2
- EHP3
- EHP4
- EHP5
- EHP6
- EHP7

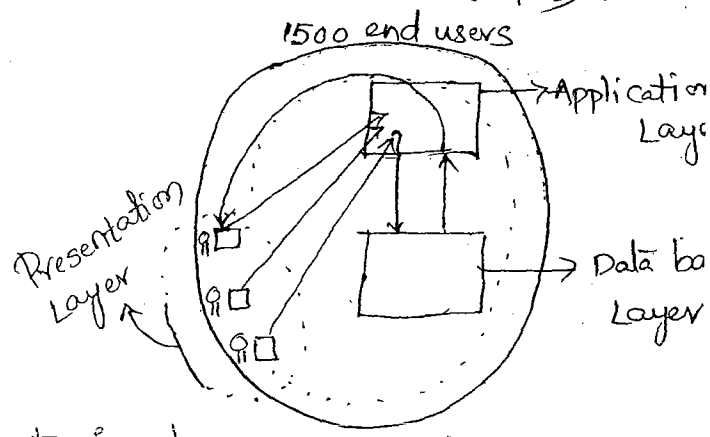
EHP — Enhancement Package.

<u>Modules in SAP</u>: There are two types of modules in SAP.

1. Functional Modules (SD, FI, CO, MM, PP, QM (quality mgmt) etc
2. Technical Modules (Basis, ABAP, Netweaver, etc) — Programming background

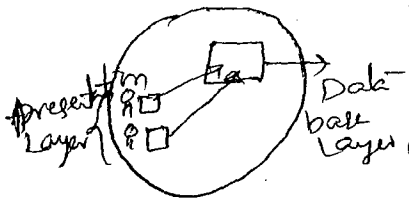
<u>SAP Architecture</u>: SAP uses 3 Tier Architecture (R/3).

1. Presentation Layer
2. Application Layer
3. Data base Layer



* If any client who want to implement SAP they need to Purchase License from SAP based on number of end User
* End User is the employee of client who will do day to day transactions in SAP.
* The system used by end users will be called as <u>Presentation Layer</u>.
* Any Request raised by Presentation Layer (end user) will be taken to <u>Application Layer</u> and Application Layer will send the request to <u>Data base Layer</u> and take the data give it back to the presentation Layer through Application Layer.

* This whole process is called as 3 Teir Architecture.
* Here Application Layer acts as a Medialor between presentation Layer and Data base Layer.
* Previously SAP used 2 Tierz Architecture but it has some problems including performance issues as all the end users accessing the data base straight away.



SAP Landscape: Landscape means Arrangement of servers. Any client if they want to implement SAP they do have to purchase servers. And SAP Suggests to purchase 3 servers.

(1) Development Server (2) Quality server (3) Production Server.

(1) Development Server: Development server will be used to configure the clients business process into SAP.

* Development Server will be used by only consultants.

(2) Quality Server: Quality Server is used to test the Scenarios.

* Quality Server used by consultants and core users.
  (A core User is the employee of client who is having Good Experience and Exposure in client's business process).
  Ex: Senior Managers, General Managers etc.

(3) Production Server: Production Server will be used to enter day to day Live transactions into SAP.

* Production Server will be used by Users. (End users and core users).

Roles and Responsibilities of SAP-SD Consultant:

* As a SAP Consultant you will be either placed into implementation Project or Support project. (or Upgradation Project or ROll out project)

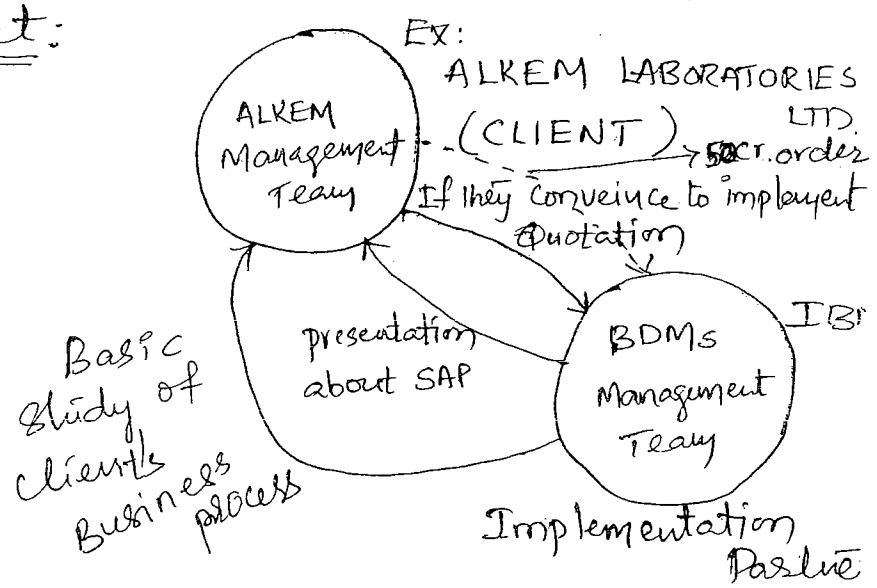
Implementation: Configuring the client's Business Proce Newly into SAP who might be using some Legacy system.

* Legacy means Non-SAP System.

Support: Solving the issues (Tickets) Raised by the clien who already implemented SAP.

Class (2) 21/03/14

Roles and Responsibilities of consultants in Implementation Project:



* When ever Implementation Partner receive order from cli to Implement SAP they we start ASAP Methodology.
* ASAP — Accelerated SAP.
* ASAP Methodology consists of the guidelines to Implmen SAP. i.e., the step by step process of Implementing SAP.

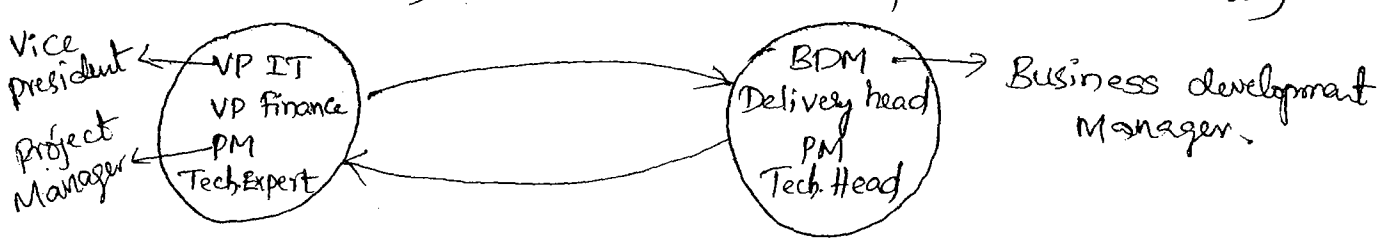
* ASAP Methodology consists of 5 phases.

① Project Preperation ② Business Blue Print (BBP)

③ Realization ④ Final Preperation ⑤ GO-LIVE & Support.

* As a consultant we involve from Business Blue Print phase of the Project.

Ⓐ **Project Preperation:** In Project Preperation phase the management team from Implementation Partner and the management team from client will involve. As a consultant we do not involve in Project Preperation phase.



① st Activity: User Licenses: * They decide on how many user Licenses to be Purchased from SAP.

* Based on Number of end users the client will decide how many user licenses to be Purchased.

* Each User License cost approximately Rs. 80,000/-

Ex: If we have 1500 end users in ALKEM LABORATORIES.

Then the User Licenses to be Purchased is 1500X80,000 = 12 cr.

* Every year client has to Pay 22% of License cost to SAP in the form of Annual Maintainance Contract (AMC).

In Our example Licenses cost $12\,cr \times \frac{22}{100} = 12 \times 0.22 = 2.4\,cr.$

(2)nd Activity : Landscape: * A Landscape is Arrangement of Servers. Any client if they want to implement SAP they have to Purchase servers. And SAP suggests to Purchase 3 Servers.

(1) Development (2) Quality server (3) Production server.

* Development Server will be used by Consultants to configure the client's Business Process into SAP.
* Quality server will be used by consultants and core users to test the scenarios.
* Production Server will be used by Users to enter day to day Live transactions into SAP.
* In Landscape firstly they decide (client) how many servers to be Purchased then they decide on Sizing of the Servers. (Hard disc, RAM, Processor/ IBM, HP, HCL, DELL SELL Serve
* And they decide where to Purchase the servers from.

(3)rd activity: Infrastructure: (i) They decide on how mo new PC's to be Purchased to meet the number of use Licenses.

(ii) Server Environment: They decide on where to Keep th servers. (as they required a Seperate Room with specified temperature and they could keep the servers at head offic or any of the Manufacturing Plant).

(iii) VPN — Virtual Private Network — They decide on VPN Connectivity. Ex: If they want to Connect the serve from a different place than the place they kept they use VPN connectivity to get access of the servers.

④th activity: Implementation Partner will list out all the consultants who are going to involve in this Project and give this information to client.

* And client will list out the Core users who are going to involve in this Implementation Project.

* Core user is the employee of client who is having good Experience and Exposure in client's Business Process.

* The Role of core users in Implementation project is they do have to share the client's business Process to consultants.

* Each Department they will Pick one Person as Core user.

* The approximate team size for well known clients (MNC) is 60. The approximate team size for unkown client is 15.

⑤th activity: Consultant Facilities: * If it is Domestic Project all the consultants will move to client's place to implement SAP. The Normal project Tenure for domestic project is 6 months

* If it is Foriegn client one consultant from each module will go to client's Place and remaining consultants from off shore. The normal project tenure for MNC client is 10 months.

* If all the consultants are moving to clients place they they will decide on who will take care of accomadation, food Expenses, Work environment etc.

⑥th activity: GO-LIVE Date: * The client and Implementation Partner will finalize the GO-LIVE date.

* GO-LIVE date is the day we Handover SAP to client, from that date onwards client will start using SAP. That is users will start entering day to day live Transactions into SAP.

(B) Business Blue Print (BBP):

* After completion of project preperation Phase the management will come back and conduct Kick-off meeting.
* Kick-off meeting including the below (starting off).

1. Introduction about client.
2. Roles and Responsibilities of consultants.
3. Rules and Regulations of clients.
4. Core users List.
5. GO-LIVE DATE.
6. STARTING Date.

* After Kick-off meeting all the consultants will mov client's place to implement SAP.
* When all the consultants move to client's place to imm -ement SAP they we start the Second phase of ASAP me -thodology, that is Business Blue Print.

(B) Business Blue Print (BBP): In Business Blue Print th first activity is Requirement Gathering.

* We gather the Requirement from Core users.
* Basing on the Questionaire provided by Implementati Partner we gather requirements from Core user.
* Everyday will go to Core user's Place and ask the questions one by one and what ever Core user explains note it down.

* Everyday after Requirement gathering we will Prepare a Document called "AS-IS" Document.

* AS-IS means as it is.

* AS-IS document consist of the present business process of the client what ever core user explains. As it is we will put in this document.

* We do requirement gathering for 2 months. After completion of Requirement gathering we will prepare Business Blue print (BBP) document and we will take BBP document sign off from core user.

* BBP Document consist of AS-IS and TO-BE documents.

* AS-IS means the Present Business Process of the client what ever core user explains. As it is we will mention in this document.

<u>TO-BE</u>: How the Present business Process of the client is going to be in SAP.

* While Preparing TO-BE Process we may find some gaps.

<u>GAP</u>: Any client's requirement if there is no solution from SAP then we call it as a GAP.

* When ever we find gaps we need to Prepare "GAP Analysis document" and this document consists of clear description of client's requirements, Alternate solution, Estimated efforts, Functional man days and Technical Man days.

Number of GAPS = Number of GAP Analysis documents

* After Preparing BBP document we will Send this document to core user for sign off.
* Core user has to go through the BBP document and if everything is fine he will Send a confirmation mail. After getting the confirmation mail we go to core user's place and take the Signature on BBP sign-off form. And one copy we Submit to Implementation Partner and one copy we submit to client.
* BBP document Preparation and sign-off will take one month.
* The total Tenure for BBP phase is 3 months.
* The most difficult phase of ASAP methodology or Implementation project is Business Blue Print because the Success of the project is totally dependent on how accurate we gather the requirements from core users.
* BBP Document sign off is mandatory without BBP Sign off we will not move to the next phase of ASAP methodology.

Class (4) 24/03/14

* After BBP sign off we will move to the next phase of ASAP Methodology. That is Realization.

(c) Realization: configuring (Mapping) the client's business process into SAP or Mapping TO-BE Process into SAP.

* In Realization phase we enter into Development Server to configure the client's business Process into SAP.
* Configuration is of two types.

(1) Base Line configuration (2) final configuration.

① Base Line configuration: It is the configuration which is specific to One Module. For which we no need to depend on other module consultants.

② Final configuration: It is a configuration for which you have to depend on other module consultants.

* First we complete base line configurations then we go for final configuration.

** While Saving the configurations system will ask to Save it in a particular Request Number.

** The Request Number will help to Transport the configurations from one Server to another Server.

* Request Numbers are of two types.

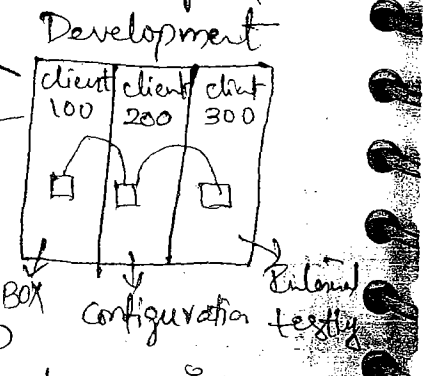
① Customizing Request ② Work Bench Request.

* What ever functional consultants will do that will be saved in Customizing Request:

* What ever Technical consultants (ABAP evs) will do that will be saved in Work Bench Request.

* All work bench Requests are cross client.

Cross client or client Independant: If you do any cross client configurations in one client it automatically updates in other clients with in a server.



* After completing the configurations in Development Server we have to transport all the Requests from Development Server to Quality Server. (BASIS consultant will transport and we will Release all the Requests).

* BASIS consultants will actually Transport the Request from one Server to another Server.

Consultants Role in Transporting Request: We have to Relec all the Requests and Prepare XL sheet with the Released Request Numbers and send this XL file to BASIS consult They BASIS consultant will transport the Requests one by o from one Server to another Server.

* Each Request consist of Parent Request and child Requ
* Child Request will help to carry the data and Parent Requ will help to Transport the Data.
* After Transporting the Request from Development server Quality Server we have to do Testing.
* Testing is of two types.

(1) Unit Testing (2) Integration Testing

(1) Unit Testing: It is the Testing which is specific to o Module for which we no need to depend on other modu consultants.

(2) Integration Testing: It is the Testing for which you to depend on other module consultants.

* First we complete Unit Testing they we go for Integra Testing.

Test case Document

- What to Test?
- How to Test?
- Expected Result
- Actual Result
- Status (Success or Fail)
- Tested document Numbers

* In order to do Tes in Quality server we Prepare one docum called Test Case doc which consists of the Test information that mentioned in the bo

* Based on Test CASE Document we have to do Testing.
* After Testing we will prepare User Manual Document.
* User Manual Document consists of step by step process of creating Master Data and Transaction Data along with the Screen shots.
* After preparing User Manual Document we will send it to core user.
* They we Prepare Configuration Document.
* Configuration Document consists of the Screen shots of all the configurations which we did for this Particular client.
* The Purpose of configuration document is for KT Process.

KT — Knowledge Transfer.

* During final configuration we will prepare FS document.

FS — functional Specification Document.

* We prepare FS document if you require the help of ABAPers.
* Realization Phase Tenure is 2 months.

Class (5) 25/03/14

* After preparing the document we will move to the next phase of ASAP Methodology that is Final Preperation.

(D) Final Preperation:

(1) We give Training to core users on Master Data and Transaction data.

(2) After Training Core user has to Test all the scenarios, if everything is fine Core user has to give UAT sign off.

UAT — User Acceptance Test.

* After getting UAT sign off we Transport all the Requests from Quality server to Production Server.

(A) Cut Over Activities: Uploading of Master Data and Open Transaction Data (The order which is not yet delivered from Legacy to SAP.

Consultants Role in Cut over Activities: In cut over Activiti we have to do Recording and while doing Recording Simulta-neously we have to Prepare XL sheet and send the Recordin to ABAPER and XL file to Core user. Basing on the Recording ABAPER will develop BDC (Batch Data Communication). BDC a tool which will help to Upload the data into SAP. And core user will fill the data in XL file and send it to consultant. Wi the Help of BDC consultant will upload the data from XL to SA

* Cut over Strategy: It is a Planning to Upload the data from Legacy to SAP. While Uploading the data we will Request the client to stop the Business to avoid Data discrepancy.

Cut over Period: It is the Actual time Taken to Upload the data from Legacy to SAP.

* After Uploading the data from Legacy to SAP we will decla GO-LIVE.

(E) GO-LIVE & SUPPORT: GO-LIVE is the date from wh client will start using SAP. That is from that date onwards users will start entering Day to Day Transactions in SAP.

* After GO-LIVE we will Provide 3 months of Post Productic Support.

SUPPORT: Solving the issues Raised by the clients who are already Implemented SAP.

* When ever we get Support Project the both the Parties will enter into an agreement called SLA. ↳ (client & Support Partner)

SLA — Service Level Agreement.

* The client and Support Partner has to enter in this Agreement.

* As a consultant we should Know Some information from SLA.

① Priority of Issues

Generally the Tickets (Issues) are classified into 3 priorities

(i) High Priority Tickets

(ii) Medium Priority Tickets

(iii) Low Priority Tickets

* Any issue if it is stopping the client's business Process they we call it as High Priority.

* High Priority Issues should be solved with in 4 hrs.

* Medium Priority Issues should be solved with in 24 hrs.

* Low Priority Issues should be solved with in 48 hrs.

② Change Request: Anything client is asking new for which there are no Present configurations they we treat it as change Request.

* Whenever we get change Request we have to Prepare change request document.

* Change Request Document consists of Issue details, solution, Efforts (functional Mandays & Technical Mandays)

* After preparing change Request document we will send this document to Superior for Review. After Review we will send this

document to core user for approval. After getting Approva we start working on the issue.

* When ever we get New Support Project the Management will conduct KICK-OFF Meeting and Invite all the consultants wh are going to involve in this Supporting Project.

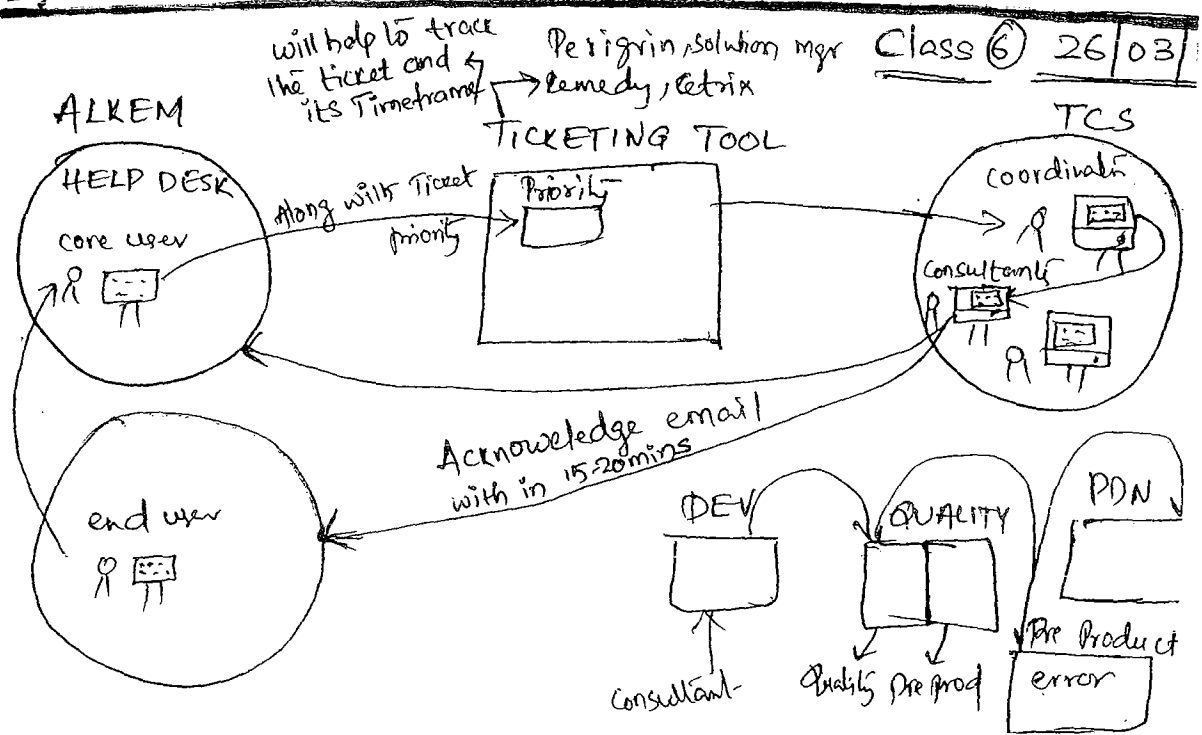
KICK OFF Meeting

1. Introduction about client
2. Roles & Responsibilities of consultants
3. Rules & Regulations of client
4. Core users List
5. Project starting date.

* After Kick off meeting the consultants will go to client's l for KT Purpose. (Knowledge Transfer).

KT Process: Core user will handover configuration docume to consultant. Consultant has to go through the configurati Document and simultaneously he will do system study. Afte System Study the consultant has to Prepare Understanding Document they consultant has to give Reverse KT to co Users.

Class 6 26/03



Ticket Cycle: In day to day Business end user will get the error. They end user will send a mail to Help desk.

* Core users will be available in Help desk, core user will analyse the issue and try to solve the issue. If it is configuration issue then Core user will place the Ticket in Ticketing Tool.

* While Placing the Ticket he will mention the Priority of the Ticket. Ticketing Tool will help to track the Tickets and its Time frame.

* The available Ticketing Tools are Remedy, Perigrin, cetrix, Solution Manager, trillium, OVSC, Raddor, Radix, Service manager 7 etc.

* When Core user Place the Ticket in the Ticketing Tool they the mail will be automatically send to Support Partner's Co-ordinator. And Co-ordinator will analyse the Ticket and allocate it to Relevant consultant. They the maill will be automatically send to Consultant.

* After receiving the Ticket consultant has to send acknowledgement to users with in 15 to 20 Minutes.

* After Sending the acknowledgement consultant will start analysing the Ticket.

* Consultant will go to Pre Production Server and try to do the Same what end user is doing in Production Server. If end user is getting error in Production server we should also get an error in Pre Production Server because the Pre Production Server is Mirror image of Production Server. That is we have same data of Production Server in Pre Production Server.

* After getting the error consultant will analyse and go to Development server and do the necessary configurations and Transport it to Quality server and ask Core user to Test it and after getting confirmation from core user we finally transport it to Production Server. They close the Issue.

* (Some clients will by Pre Production Server and Some will Partition Quality Server into two).

STATUS OF TICKET: (1) open (2) Work in Progress (3) Waiting for information (4) Waiting for confirmation (5) closed

* If the status is in work in Progress they only the Time will run
* Whenever consultant receive the Ticket the status of the Ticket is open. After sending the acknowledgement users they consultant will change the status from open to work in progress.
* If the information Provided by user is not sufficient enough to analyse the Ticket they consultant will send a mail to users requesting for additional information they consultant will change the status from work in Progress to Waiting for information.
* After getting the information from users again the status will be change from waiting for information to work in Progress.
* After doing the configurations we send a mail to users to Test it and confirm. They we change the status to waiting for confirmation. After getting confirmation we change the status closed.

LOGGING INTO SAP:

* Double click on SAP Logon Icon on the Desktop.
* They Double click on IDES.

IDES — Internet Demonstration & Evolution System.

* Mention the client 800 (Training client).
* User ID: SAPUSER
* Password: india123 and they Enter.
* When you enter into SAP by default system Proposes easy access Screen. End users will work in Easy Access Screen.
* Consultants will work in IMG Screen.

IMG — Implementation Guide.

* To go to IMG Screen enter the Tcode (Transaction code) SPRO in Tcode bar.

SPRO — SAP Project Reference Object.

* Then click on SAP Reference IMG.

* If you are in other than Easy Access Screen you have to enter either '/n' or '/o' before the Tcode.

* '/n' will overwrite the Present session.

'/o' will open a new session.

* At a time maximum we can have only 6 sessions.

Class (7) 27/03/14.

Enterprise Structure:

* Enterprise Structure specifies the structure of the company or the structure of the organization.

Ex: Head office, Branch office, Plant etc.

* Whenever we are Implementing SAP to any client first we have to gather the details of Enterprise structure from core user.

(1) Company Code: It is a Legal entity which is Responsible for all External Financial Transactions which happens in the Company. Ex: Balance sheet, Profit and Loss Statements.

* Every year we Prepare Balance sheet on the name of company code.

* It is a Legal entity which is Registered Under company's act 1956.

* FI Consultant is responsible to define company code.

* The Length of company code is 4 digit.
* The code can be Numeric, or Alpha numeric or characters.
* In our project we have one company code that is ALKEM LABORATORIES LTD located in Mumbai.
* The Below scenarios client will have multiple company co

(1) Group of companies

Ex: Tata Group, Reliance Group

Tata Motors, TCS, Tata steel

(2) Having operations in Multiple countries.

(2) Sales Organization:

* It is an organizational unit in sales which is responsil for all sales and services happen in the company.
* It is an organizational unit where strategic decision related to sales will be taken.
* It is an organizational unit where you find directors and Vice President Sales (Head of the Department).
* SD consultant is responsible to define sales organizatic in SAP.
* The Length of sales organization is 4 digits.
* The Below scenarios a client will have Multiple Sales Organizations.

(i) If client is having Multiple company codes they will have Multiple Sales organizations.

(ii) Bifurcation of sales responsibilities Region wise.

(iii) Domestic and Exports.

* In our Project we have two sales organizations. i.e.,

(i) ALKEM DOMESTC (ii) ALKEM EXPORTS.

D100 D200

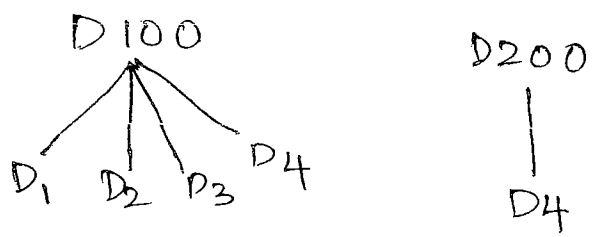
(3) Distribution Channel:

The way of Distributing the goods to end customers. or The way of selling the goods to End customers.

* SD consultant is Responsible to define the Distribution Channel.
* The Length of Distribution channel is 2 digit.
* In our project we have 4 distribution channels.

(1) Dealers — D1
(2) Distributors — D2
(3) Institutions — D3
(4) Direct — D4

* The Combination of Sales Organization and Distribution channel is called as Sales line.
* We have 5 sales lines in our Project.



(4) Division:

A Division is a Product line or Range of Products.

* A Division is Grouping of Multiple Products which are similar in nature.
* SD consultant is responsible to define Division.
* The Length of Division 2 digit.

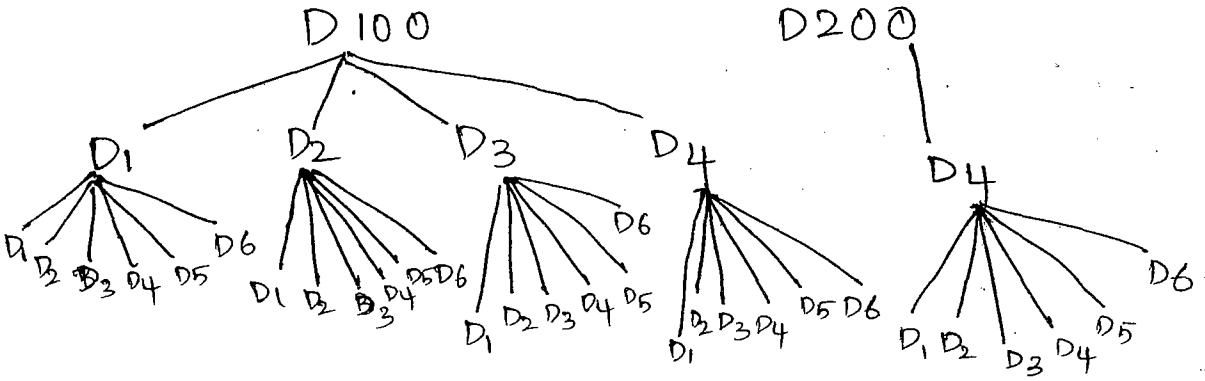
* In our Project we have 6 Divisions.

① Gynaecology [D1] ② Pediatric [D2] ③ Insulin [D3]
④ Antibiotic [D4] ⑤ Cardiology [D5] ⑥ orthopedic [D6]

* The combination of sales organization, Distribution chann and Division is called as sales Area.

* Sales Area Plays a vital Role in SD. Whatever we do i Sales it should be rouled through a Particular sales Area.

* In our project we have 30 sales Areas.



24 + 6 = 30

Class ⑧ 28/03/14

⑤ Sales Office : It is a Physical Location where group o People work together to Perform Sales. We can also call it as Branch office,

* SD consultant is responsible to define Sales office.

* The Length of Sales office is 4 digits.

* In our Project we have 28 sales offices. i.e, each State we have one sales office. But for Practice Purpose we def only One Sales office. (which is Hyderabad Sales office [D1KK

⑥ Sales Group: Group of People with in a sales office working for different activities.

* SD Consultant is responsible to define Sales Group.
* The Length of Sales Group is 3 digit.
* In our project we have 2 sales Groups.

① Insulin & Antibiotic

D	0	1

② Others

D	0	2

⑦ Plant: It is a Physical Location where we do the Process of Manufacturing finished Goods.

* MM Consultant is responsible to define Plant.
* The Length of Plant is 4 digits.

Finished Goods — The Goods ready to Sell.

⑧ Depot: A Depot is a Physical Location where we store the finished Goods for easy distributing the Goods to Customers, "which is owned by Company".

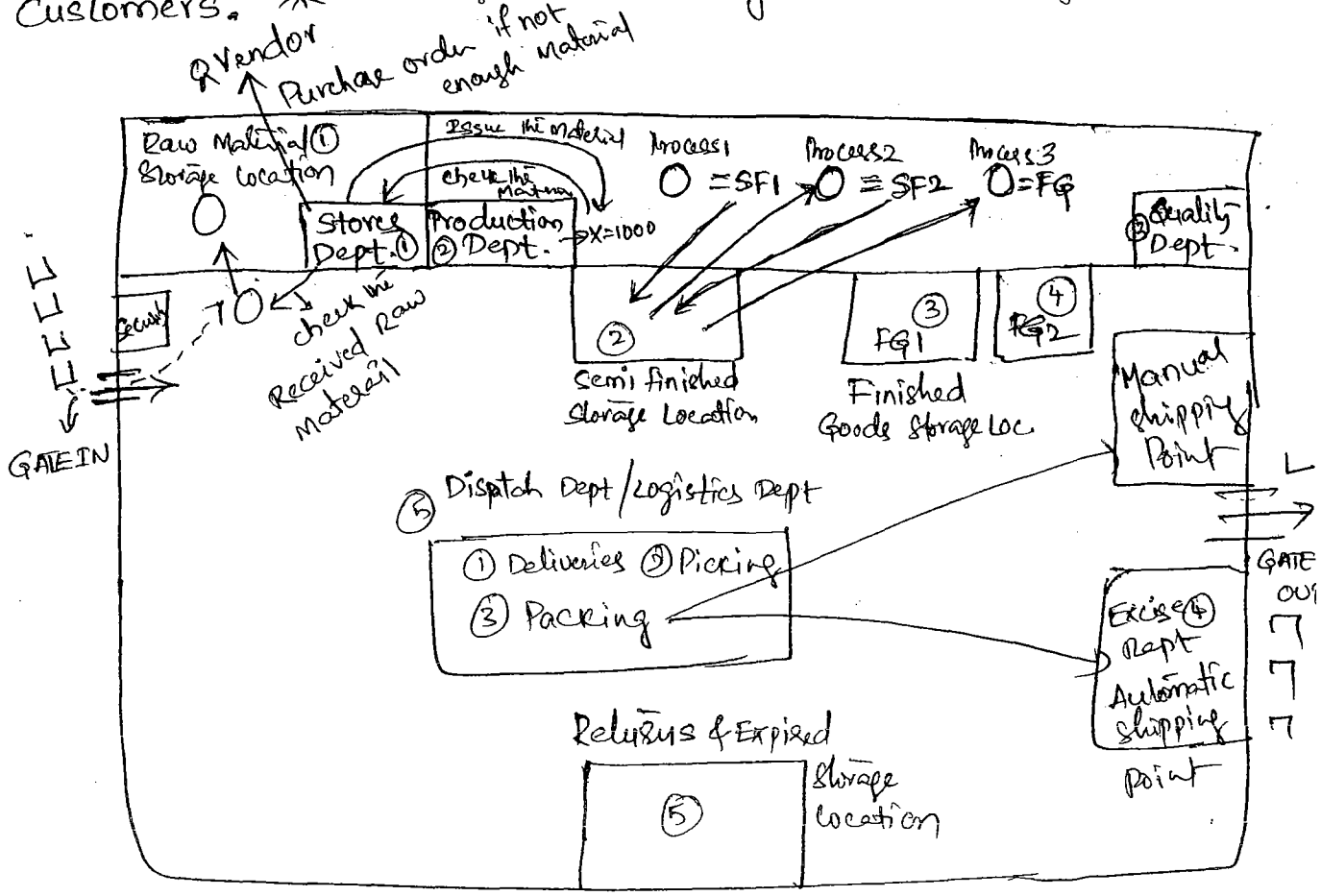
Carry and Forward: C & F is a Physical Location where we store the finished Goods for easy distributing the Goods to customers but its own by a "third party person".

* In SAP Plant, Depot, and C&F will be defined as Plant.
* MM Consultant is Responsible to define Plant, Depot and Carry & Forward.

⑧ Storage Location: It is a Physical Location where we store the Goods with in a Plant.

* MM consultant is responsible to define storage Location.
* The Length of storage Location is 4 digits.

⑨ Shipping Point: It is a Physical Location where we do the Process of Loading the Goods for dispatching it to Customers. * The length of Shipping Point is 4 digit.



* In our Project client is having 4 Manufacturing Plants and 28 Depots. But for Practise Purpose we define 2 Plant

① Mumbai Plant [D|1|0|0] ② Vapi Plant [D|2|0|0].

* In our project each Plant we have 5 storage locations one ① Raw Material ② Semi finished Goods ③ FG1 ④ FG2 and ⑤ Returns and Expired storage Locations.

* Plants + Depots + C&F = Plant, 4 plants + 28 Depots = 32 Plants.

* In our project each Plant we have two shipping points.
① Manual shipping point ② Automatic shipping Point.

Class ⑨ 29/03/14

① Defining Company code in SAP:

Path: SPRO → enterprise structure → Definition → Financial Accounting → Edit, copy, Delete, check company code.

* click on IMG activity.
* Double click on Edit company code data.
* Select the ~~com~~ Standard company code 1000. and click on copyAs.
* Then change the company code to D100.
* Mention Company Name.
* City MUMBAI, country IN, Currency INR, Language EN.
* After Maintaining the details click on Enter. Then System automatically ask for address.
* Title company
  Name ALKEM LABORATORIES LTD

  Search term ½ ALK.

* Search term will help to Search the organizational unit in a Short cut method.
* Mention the Street ALKEM HOUSE, ELPHANSTINE ROAD 10-100
  Post code 300020 Lower Parel west, Mumbai.
  Country IN Region (06) Time Zone INDIA.

* Region specifies the state.

* Language EN. Remove PO BOX and Postal code and click on copy and click on Save.

② Define Sales organization in SAP:

* Spro → Enterprise structure → Definition → S&D → Define, copy, delete, check Sales organization.
* click on IMG Activity and Double click on Define sales organization.
* Select the standard Sales organization 1000 and click on copy.
* change the Name ALKEM DOMESTIC D100.
* Currency INR
* click on copy and save it click on continue
* Address.

  Title Company

  Name ALKEM Domestic Sales. org.

  Search term 1/2 ALK

  Enter Same Address.

* Then click on copy and Save it. * Do the same for D200.

③ Define Distribution channel:

* Spro → enterprise structure → Definition → S&D → Define copy, delete, check distribution channel.
* click on IMG Activity.
* Double click on Define distribution channel.

* Go to New Entries (if there is no Details Tab).

F1 Dealers

F2 Distributors

F3 Institution

F4 Direct.

4) Define Division:

- SPRO → enterprise structure → Definition → Logistics General
- → Define, copy, delete, check Division.
- click on IMG activity.
- Double click on Define Division.
- Go to New Entries.

F1	Gynaecology	F4	Antibiotic
F2	Pediatric	F5	cardiology
F3	Insulin	F6	Orthopedic.

* Save it.

5) Maintain Sales Office:

- SPRO → enterprise structure → Definition → S&D
- → Maintain Sales office.
- click on IMG activity, ~~Double~~
- Go to New entries.

D100 Hyderabad sales offi

* Enter and Mention the address.

Company

Hyderabad sales office

Somajiguda

⑥ Maintain Sales Groups:

* SPRO → enterprise Structure → Definition → S&D → Mainlain Sales group.
* click on IMG activity.
* Go to New entries.

F01 Insulin and Antibiotic F02 Others Group

* And save it.

⑦ Define Plant:

* SPRO → enterprise structure → Definition → logistics - General → Define, copy, delete, check Plant.
* Double click on Define Plant.
* select the standard plant 1000 and click on copy.

Plant D100

Name1 Mumbai Manufacturing plant press enter.

* change the address and click on continue and save it.
* select D100 and select copy as.

Plant D200

Name1 Vapi Manufacturing plant press enter.

⑧ Define storage Location:

* SPRO → enterprise Structure → Definition → Materials Management → maintain storage Location.
* Mention Plant D100 and click on continue.
* Go to New entries.

D100 Raw Materials D200 Semi finished Goods

D300 FG1 D400 FG2 D500 Returns.

* Do the same for plant D200.

(9) Define Shipping Point:

* SPRO → enterprise structure → Definition → Logistics Execution → Define, copy, delete, check shipping point.
* Double click on Define Shipping Point.
* Go to details Tab by selecting standard shipping point 1000 and click on copy.

D101 Manual shipping point
D102 Automatic shipping point } Mumbai

and save it.

* do the same for Vapi D200.

D201 Vapi Manual shipping point
D202 Vapi Automatic shipping point.

Class (10) 01/04/14

Assignment of Enterprise Structure: Maintaining Relation between organizational units.

(1) Assign Sales organization to Company code:

* SPRO → enterprise structure → Assignment → S&D → → Assign sales organization to company code.
* click on IMG activity.
* The Relationship between the company code and the sales organization is one to many. That is one company code can have many sales organizations but one sales organization should be assigned to only one company code.

② Assign Distribution channel to sales organization:

* The combination of sales organization and Distribution channel is called as Sales Line.
* Here the Relationship is many to many. That is one sales organization can have many Distribution channels and one Distribution channel can be assigned to many sale organizations.
* Go to new entries. (when ever if the Relation is many to many then you have to go for new entries).

D100 — F1
D100 — F2
D100 — F3
D100 — F4
D200 — F4.

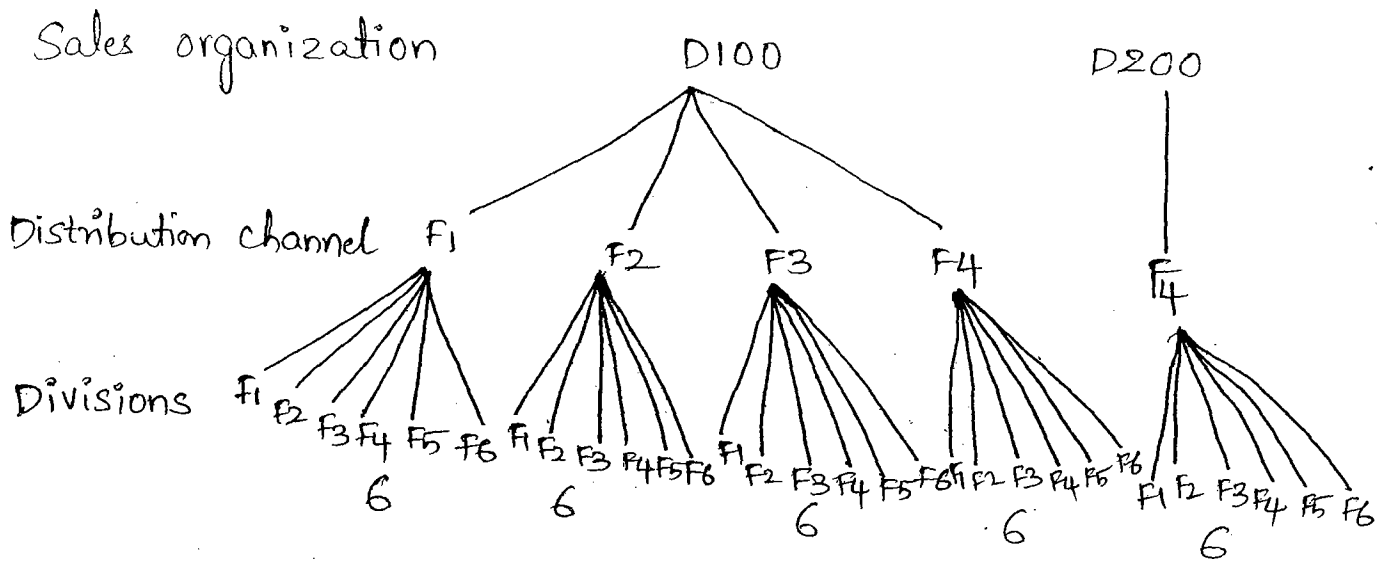
③ Assign Division to Sales organization: The Relationship is many to many. That is one sales organization can have many divisions and one Division can be assigned to many sales organizations.

* Go to new entries.

D100 — F1
D100 — F2
⋮
D100 — F6
⋮
D200 — F6

④ Setup Sales Area: A sales area is a combination of Sales organization, Distribution channel and Division.

* Sales Area plays an important role in sales and distribu because what ever Transactions we do in sales it should be Routed through a particular Sales Area.



Sales Areas = 30

* Go to new entries.

D100	F1	F1
D100	F1	F2
⋮		
D100	F4	F5
D100	F4	F6
⋮		
D200	F4	F6

(5) Assign Sales office to Sales Area:

* Go to new entries.

D100	F1	F1	D100
D100	F1	F2	D100
⋮			
D100	F4	F6	D100

* Here we have only 26 sales Areas to be assigned to Sales office because we do not operate sales from Hyde-rabad sales office for Export sales organization.

(6) Assign sales group to sales office:

* Go to new entries.

D100	D01
D100	D02

(7) Assign Plant to Company code:

* MM Consultant will do this Assignment.
* Spro → enterprise structure → Assignment → Logistics General → Assign Plant to company code.
* Go to new entries.

D100	D100 (Mumbai Plant)
D100	D200 (Vapi plant).

(8) Assign Sales organization-distribution channel to plan

* Spro → enterprise structure → Assignment → S&D → → Assign Sales organization distribution channel to plant.
* Go to new entries.

D100	F1	D100
D100	F2	D100
⋮		
D100	F1	D200
⋮		
D200	F4	D200

(9) Assign shipping Point to Plant:

* spro → enterprise structure → Assignment → Logistics execution- → Assign shipping point to Plant.
* SD consultant is Responsible to do this Assignment.
* The Relationship between shipping point and plant is many to many.
* go to find option mention plant code D100 and enter.
* click on plant.
* select the plant & click on Assign and select the shipping Poir and click on copy.

* The T-code to see the Total Structure of a Particular Company is "ECO1".

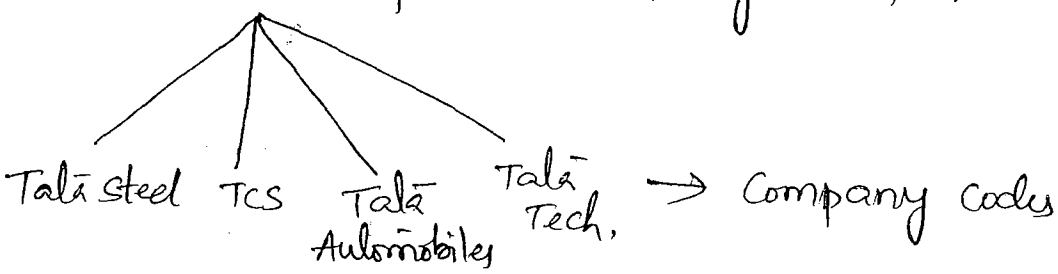
* Enter ECO1 and click on Structure and click on Navigation.

* Double click on your Company code.

Other Organizational Units:

① **Company:** A company is an organizational unit in FI which will help to group Multiple company codes into one.

Ex: Tata Group → company , Reliance Group.



* FI consultant is Responsible to define company.

② **Business Area:** Business Area is an organizational unit in FI which will help to generate internal Balance sheets plant wise. or Plant and Division wise.

* We are not using Business Area Concept in ECC6 version.

* FI consultant is Responsible to define Business Area.

③ **Credit Control Area:** Credit control area is an organizational unit in FI which specifies group of People responsible for Credit Activities (credit Department).

(4) Controlling Area: It is an organizational unit in CO which specifies Group of people Responsible for cost contro-lling Activities. CO consultant is responsible.

(5) Purchase organization: MM consultant is responsible to define Purchase organization.

* It is an organizational unit which is responsible for all the Purchases happen in the company.

Text information in Sales organization: The Text information in Sales organization will help to determine the Address of Sales organization to print it in the Relevant outputs. (Print outs, E-mail, fax).

Calendar: A calendar specifies working days and Holida

* In Real time HR Consultant will create Calendars.

Defining calendar:

* Spro → SAP Netweaver → General Settings → Maintain calendar
* click on IMG activity.
* Select Public Holidays and click on change
* click on create. → With fixed date, Floating date.
* Select Holiday calendar and click on change.
* click on create.
* click on assign holiday.

* Select your Holidays and click on ~~continue~~ Assign Public Holidays. And click on continue.

* Then select factory calendar and click on change.

* click on create.

* Assign Holiday calendar and

* We will assign factory calendar in 3 organizational units.

① Sales organization ② Plant ③ shipping Point.

<u>Rebate Pro. active</u>: (Sales organization)

* <u>Rebate</u>: A Rebate is a special kind of discount. And it is a conditional discount and which will be valid over a specific period of time.

<u>Ex</u>: Any customer if he purchase x material of 50,000 Quantity during a period of Jan 1st to Dec 31st then the customer is eligible for A Rebate of 10%.

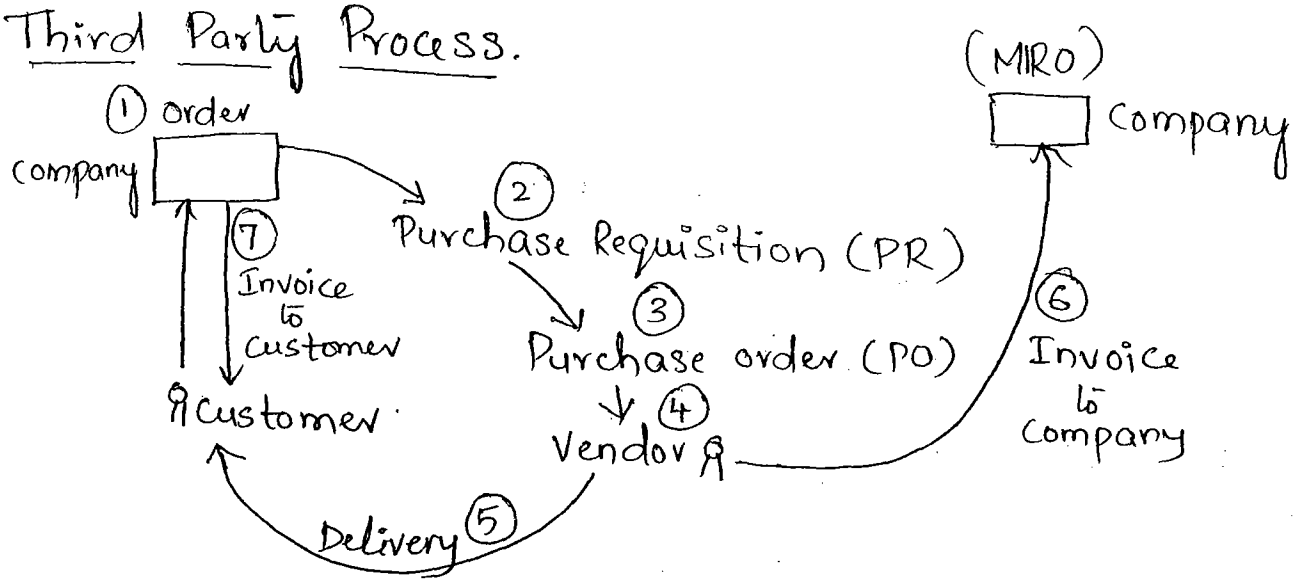
<u>Rebate Pro. active</u>: This field is pre-requisite to process Rebates in an organization.

* If you check this then only system will allow to process Rebates.

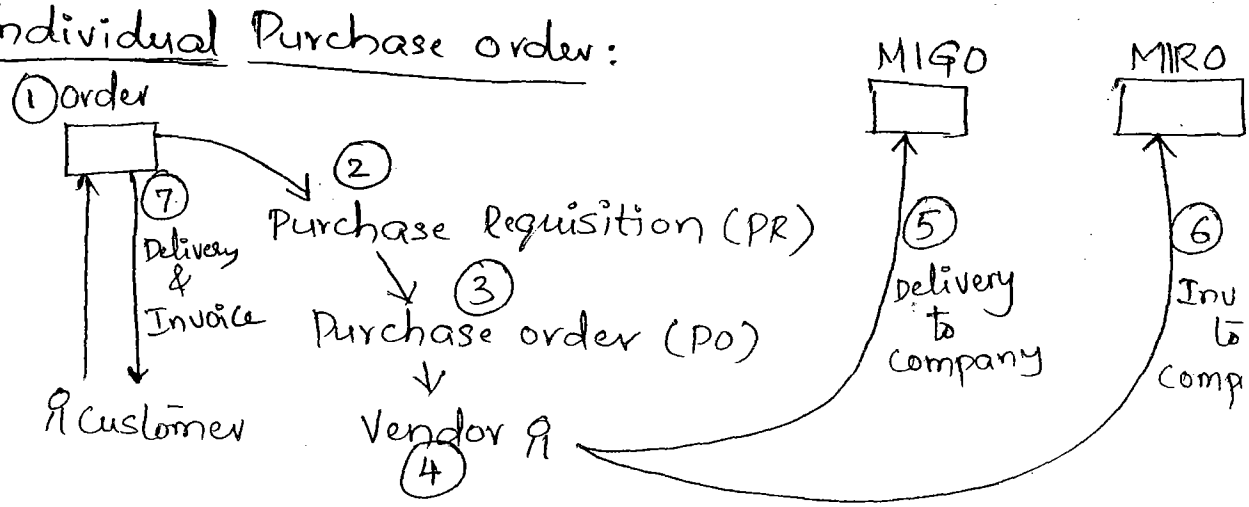
<u>ALE data Purchase order</u>: ALE → Application Linking and Enabling.

*

Third Party Process.



Individual Purchase order:



* ALE Data for Purchase order: In standard while creating Sales order in Third Party Process and Individual Purchas order (IPO) Process the System automatically generates Purchase Requisition But if you maintain ALE data for Purchase order then only while creating sales order in Thir Party process and IPO Process system automatically generates Purchase order.

Loading Time: It is the Time taken to do the Process of Loadin the Goods for dispatching to customers.

Pick / Pack Time: It is the Time taken to Pick the material from Storage Location and to Pack it.

* Pick/pack time and Loading time will help to Perform Delive Scheduling. Delivery Scheduling is the Process of determining deliv date & confirm Quantities.

Concept of Master Data

Class (12) 07/04/14

Master Data: It is the data which is stored centrally and used in day to day Transactions where ever it is Required.

* It is the data which can not be changed frequently.
* The below are the advantages of Master Data.

(i) It will save the time of end users.

(ii) It will avoid Manual mistakes.

* There are 4 types of Master Data.

(1) Customer Master (2) Material Master

(3) Customer Material Info Record (CMIR) (4) Condition Master.

* A customer is the individual to whom we sell the goods.

or A customer is the individual who will Places the order.

(1) **Customer Master:** It is the data of the customer which is stored centrally and used in day to day Transactions where ever it is required.

* Customer Master Data consists of customer's Name, Address, Contact, Payment details, sales details etc.

(2) **Material Master:** A Material is the Product which is ready to sell to the customers.

* It is the data of the Product or the Specifications of the Product which is stored centrally and used in day to day transactions where ever it is required.

* Ex: Weight details, Volume details, specifications and cost details of the Material etc.

③ Customer Material Info Record (CMIR): We use CMIR if customers are placing order with their own Material cod

* By using CMIR we will assign customer Material code will our Material code. Then while creating Sales order if end user enters customer Material code then system automati-cally determines our material code.

④ Condition Master Data (Pricing Master): It is the dat of the price of the Product which is stored centrally an used in day to day transactions where ever it is required

① Customer Master Data:

* Customer Master will be divided into 3 screens.

① General Data ② Company code data ③ Sales Area data

* General Data consist of the Personal information of th Customer. Ex: Name, Address, Bank details, communicatior and contact details etc.

* General Data is further classified into 7 Tab Pages.

① Address ② Control Data ③ Payment Transactions ④ Marketing ⑤ Unloading Points ⑥ Export data ⑦ contact Per

* ② control data, ③ Payment Transactions will be taken ca by Finance. Remaining all Tab Pages will be taken can Sales.

* Customer Master will be created by end user. customer Master is an Integration between SD end user and FI end user.

* Company code data consist of the Finance Related information of the customer.

* Company code data will be further classified into 4 Tab Pages.

(1) Account Management (2) Payment Transactions

(3) Correspondence (4) Insurance.

* The total company code data will be taken care by FI end users.

* Sales Area data consist of the sales Related information of a customer. Ex: Delivery details, Billing details etc.

* Sales Area data will be further classified into 4 Tab Pages.

(1) Sales (2) Shipping (3) Billing (4) Partner functions.

* The Total Sales Area data will be taken care by SD users.

T-Code to create customer Master:

	Create	change	Display
Centrally	XD01	XD02	XD03
Company code view	FD01	FD02	FD03
Sales view	VD01	VD02	VD03

* The Authorization to create customer Master will be given to 1 or 2 users who will be available in corporate office.

The Path to create customer:

* Easy Access → Logistics → Sales & Distributior → Master Data → Business Partner → customer → Create → XD01.

Class 13 08/04/14

Consultant Role in Customer Master Data:

1. consultants has to give training to core users on Mast custome data creation.
2. consultants has to define new entries in customer Master fiel

* Select Account Group overview.
* click on Account Group overview and Double click on standarc account group 0001.
* Mention your company code D100.
* Sales organization
* Distribution channel
* Division.
* Then click on continue.
* When we are creating customer for the first time system will give error message that the sales Area is not defined for customer. To solve this error go to the Path Spro → S&D → Master Data. Define common distribution channels.
* click on IMG Activity. Then go to your sales organization and assign empty coloumns with relevant Distribution channel.
* Do the same for Define common division. go to your Saly organization.

* While creating customer master you do not find entries in customer master Reconcillation account.
* Reconcillation account is a G/L account (General Ledger).
* To get the entries in Reconcillation account we have to copy the G/L account from standard company code to our company code.
* Go to the T-code OBY2 to copy the G/L accounts.
* Mention your company and mention the standard company code (copy from) 1000.
* Uncheck Test Run. And click on Execute.
* Error: Maintain the chart of accounts in company code.
* Go to the T code OBY6 and select your company code and go to details tab and maintain chart of accounts as INT. and Fiscal year variant as V3.
* Fiscal year variant specifies the Financial year of the company.
* Indian companies the financial year is April to March (V3). Foreign companies the financial year is January to December (K4).
* Maintain field status variant as 1000. and Posting Period variant as 1000 and Save it.
* After maintaining chart of accounts go back to OBY2 mention your company code and copy from company code (1000) and Uncheck Test run and Execute. They click on enter after getting message.

* Mention Reconcillation account as 140000.

Fields in Customer Master:

Address Tab: It consist of Name, Address and communicatic details of a Customer.

i) Transportation zone: Transportation zone is one of the para-eter to determine Route into sales document.

* SD user is responsible to maintain Address Tab.

Control Data: Control Data Tab consist of the Tax related information of the customer.

* Control data Tab will be maintained by FI user.

Payment Transactions: Payment Transactions Tab consist of the Customer Bank details and Card details. Ex: Debit ca or credit card.

* FI user is responsible to maintain Payment Transaction

Marketing: SD user is responsible to maintain Marketing

i) Nielsen ID: This field will help to Track the customers who are located in Market Survey Regions.

* When ever we Launching New Product we do Market Surve in a specifice regions. If the customer is located in Market Survey region they maintain Nielsen ID. So when ever we are Launching new product by using this field we track all the customers who are located in Market survey Regions and send Samples to those customers and finally take the Analysis.

Path to define Nielsen ID: Spro → Sales & Distribution → Master Data → Business Partners → Customers → Marketing → Define Nielsen ID.

* Short cut method is go to that field and press f1 then click on customizing. Then click on continue w/o specifying Project.

* click on IMG activity and go to new entries.

Customer classification: Class (14) 09/04/14

* classifying the Customers based on their Sales Turnover.

* The Purpose of customer classification is (1) Analysis (Reporting) (2) Discounts (3) Fixing the credit limits.

* Spro → Sales & Distribution → Master Data → Business Partners → Customers → Marketing → Define customer classification

* Go to new entries and mention your details.

G1 8 – 10cr

G6 0 – 1cr

* Save it.

Industry: Classifying the customers based on the industry they belongs to. The Purpose of this field is (1) Reporting & Analysis (2) Discounts.

* Spro → Sales & Distribution → Master Data → Business Partners → Customers → Marketing → Define Industry sector for customer.

* Go to new entries.

G100 pharma Industry
G200 Food "
G300 Cement "

and save it.

Industry code 1 : This field will be used for further classification of industry.

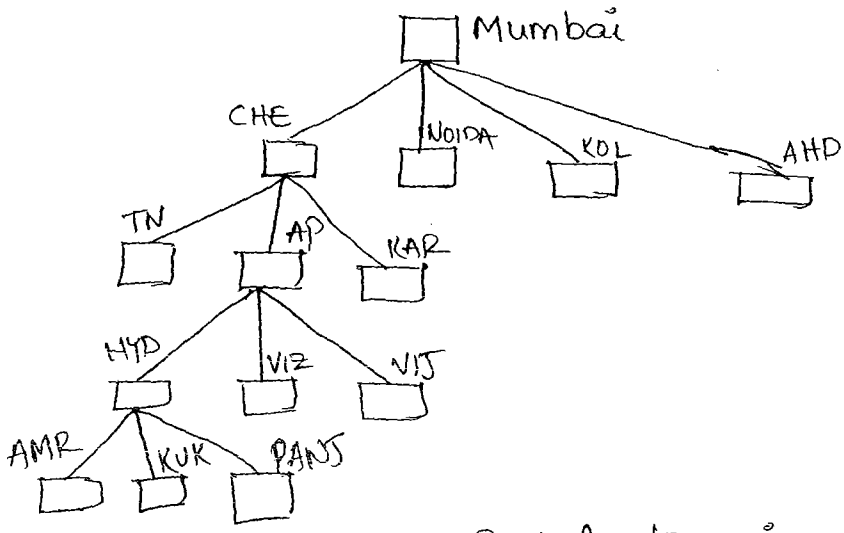
Regional Market : Every company will classify the Local Market into A, B and C. In this field we have to maintain the customer Reginal Market. That is whether the customer belongs to A class market or B class market or C class market.

* The Purpose of this field is Analysis (Reporting).

Hierarchy Assignment : We use this field for customer Hierarchy Concept.

* Customer Hierarchy is a customer having different Levels

BIG BAZAR



* Hierarchy assignment will help to assign the Higher level customers.

Key Figures :

① Annual Sales : Key figures will help to compare the Last year Sales with Present year sales.

Unloading Points:

* In Unloading Points assign customer calendar.

Creating customer calendar:

* SPRO → Sales & Distribution → Master Data → Business Partners → customers → shipping → Define customer calendars

Question: client's Requirement is there is a customer who will receive goods only on Thursdays. how to configure this?

Ans: Create one customer calendar and check only Thursday as working day.

Defining Goods receiving Hours:

* SPRO → S&D → Master Data → Business Partners → Customers → shipping → Define Goods receiving hours.
* go to new entries.

Export Data: If the customer is located out side the country they we maintain Export data.

Contact Person: Contact Person is the employee of customer who is responsible for different activities.

Class(15) 10/04/14

② Company code Data :

Account Management

① Reconcillation Account: It is a G/L account which will help to cumilate the Total outstanding of the customer.
* When we create Invoice system generates accounting document. And the accounting entry is customer account debit to Revenue account credit. For the customer account system determines G/L account from Reconcillation account.

② Payment Transactions:

(i) Terms of Payment: It is an Agreement between company and the customer for the number of days given to make the Payment.

(ii) Payment History record: If you check this then the customer Payments will be updated in credit Management.
* Credit Management is the Process of mangging the credit limits of the customers.

Sales Area Data

① Sales Tab: (i) Sales District : Sales District is a Sub classification of Sales office for the Purpose of generating sales Reports.
* If Management is asking Sales Reports below to sales office level they that will be defined as sales District.

* Spro → S&D → Master Data → Business Partners → Customers → Sales → Define Sales Districts.

* Go to new entries.

G0001	Telangana
G0002	Andhra
G0003	Rayalaseema.

(ii) <u>Customer Group</u>: Grouping of customers who will share the Same Attributes.

Ex:

Dealers	Distributors
G1 Bulk dealers	G1 Bulk Distributors
G2 Medium dealers	G2 Medium Distributors
G3 Low dealers	G3 Low Distributors

* In the above example the Attribute is Bulkiness (volume).

* Spro → S&D → Master Data → Business Partner → Customers → sales → Define Customer Group.

* The main Purpose of Customer Group is (1) Analysis (2) Discounts.

(iii) <u>ABC class</u>: ABC classification

* We classify the customers into A, B and C based on their Turnover, Bulkiness, Payment History and behaviour.

* The purpose of this field is for Response time. That is any Query raised by 'A' class customer we need to respond immediately.

(iv) <u>Currency</u>: If customer located in out side country then we have to maintain customer Currency.

* If customer currency is different from company code curren they while doing sales Transactions (Order → Delivery → Invoic System will display the values in customer currency. But while generating Accounting document system will convert the customer currency to company code currency.
* The conversion will happen based on Exchange Rates.
* The T.code to maintain Exchange rate is $\boxed{OC41}$.
* The standard Exchange rate type is 'M'.

(v) Switch off rounding: If you check this system will not Perform Rounding for the Quantity decimals. (Ex: Petrol

(vi) Order Probability: This field specify after placing the order from customer what is the chance that the customer will stick to it.

(vii) Item Proposal: Listing the materials which customer Regularly order. And calling the list while creating sales ords
* Item proposal will save the Time of end users.

(viii) Exchange Rate type: The standard Exchange Rate type is 'M'.
* If company is having agreement with customers for a fixed Exchange Rate throughout the month. They we have to maintain Exchange rates for Exchange rate type other than 'M'. Ex: 'B'. And assign that (B) Exchange rate typ in Customer Master.

PP customer Procedure (Product proposal):

* We use this field for Cross selling and Product proposal.

Cross selling: Selling Additional Product along with the main Product. If you want to sell additional products to this customer they maintain 'B'.

Product proposal: Determining the item proposal automatically by the system. If you want product proposal then maintain 'A'.

Class (16) 11/04/14

Price Group: Grouping of customers who will share the Same Pricing Attributes.

* Price Group will be used to maintain Discounts.
* Price Group will help to simplify the maintainance of pricing.

Defining Price Group: SPRO → Sales and distribution → Business Basic functions → Pricing → Maintain Pricing Relevant master data fields → Define pricing Groups for customers.

* go to new entries.

G1 Price group 1
G2 Price group 2

* and Save it.

Customer Pricing procedure: Customer Pricing procedure is one of the Parameter to determine Pricing procedure in sales document.

Price List: Grouping of customers who will share the same Base Price.

* Price List will be used only to maintain Base Price.
* Price List will help to simplify the maintainance of Base Price

Customer statistics Group: This field controls whether to update the customers sales data into LIS or not.

LIS → Logistics Information system.

Logistics Information system:

* It is a management Reporting Tool.

Shipping Tab

(i) order combination: This field is prerequisite to combine Multiple orders into single delivery.

* If you check this then only system will allow to combine multiple orders into single delivery.

(ii) Delivery Priority: classifying the customers into High delivery priority, medium delivery priority and low delivery priority.

* The purpose Delivery priority is it will help to process Back orders and Re-scheduling.

Back orders: When ever High delivery priority customer places order and if stock is not available then we go back to the open order of low delivery priority customers and cancel the confirmation and assign it to High delivery priority customer's order.

Rescheduling: Doing the Back order process automatically by the system.

Defining delivery priority: Spro → S&D → Master Data → Business partners → Customers → Shipping → Define delivery priorities.

10	High delivery priority
20	Medium " "
30	Low " "

Shipping conditions: This field is one of the parameter to determine shipping point into Sales Document.

Difine shipping conditions: Spro → Logistics Execution → shipping → Basic shipping functions → shipping point and Goods receiving point determination → Define shipping conditions.

* Go to new entries.

G1	Normal shipping condition.
G2	Imediate shipping condition.

Delivering plant: The criteria for determining plant into Sales document is ① CMIR ② Customer Master ③ material Master.

Relevant for POD:

* POD → Proof of Delivery. → Acknowledgement.

* If you check this they system will not allow to create Invoice until you reach acknowledgement from Customer.

POD Timeframe: If you mention Number of days here and if Customer fails to send the acknowledgement with in the Timeframe they system will allow to create Invoice for the total delivery Quantity.

Complete delivery required by Law: If you check this then system will not allow to create Partial deliveries. And system will not allow to confirm partial quantities. Generally Government Customers will have this check.

Partial delivery per item: This field controls whether partial deliveries are allowed or not. And it also controls how many maximum partial deliveries to be allowed.

* If partial delivery per item is blank then you can restrict maximum partial deliveries to 9.
* If partial delivery per item is 'D' then there is no limit to Subsequent deliveries.
* If partial delivery per item is 'C' then system will not allow partial deliveries.

Unlimited Tolerance: If you check this then system will allow to increase or decrease the quantities in delivery document without any limitations.

Under delivery Tolerance: If you maintain some percentage here then system will allow to decrease the quantities in delivery document upto that percentage. If the percentage exceeds then system will give warning message.

Over delivery Tolerance: If you maintain Some Percentage here then while creating delivery system will allow to increase the quantities in delivery document upto that Percentage. If the percentage exceeds then system will give warning message or error msg.

Billing Documents Tab

(i) **Rebate**: A Rebate is a special kind of discount and It is a conditional discount and which will be valid over a specific period of Time.

* This field is pre requisite to process Rebates for a Customers

(ii) **Invoicing Dates**: If client's requirement is invoice to be raised only on a specific date of every month for all the deliveries made during a Particular month. they we use Invoicing Dates.

Configuration for Invoicing Dates: SPRO → Sales & Distribution → Master Data → Business partners → Customers → Billing document → Define billing Schedule.

* Select Factory calendar and click on change.
* click on create. Mention all requirements.
* Uncheck all working days they assign Some holiday calendar
* go to special rules and click on create and mention the day on which you want to raise Invoice.
* go back to Invoicing dates and assign factory calendar.

(iii) **Invoicing List dates**: In SAP each customer will be further classified into 4 partner functions.

1. Sold to party (SP)
2. Ship to Party (SH)
3. Bill to Party (BP)
4. Payer (PY).

① Sold to Party (SP): Sold to Party is the customer who will place the order.

② Ship to Party (SH): Ship to party is the customer who wi receive the goods.

③ Bill to Party (BP): Bill to Party is the customer who will receive the Bill.

④ Payer (PY): Payer is the customer who will make the payme

* Consolidating all the invoices raised to different Bill to parlys into one and sending it to payer is called as Invoicing List dates.

Configuration for Invoicing List Dates: Same as Invoicin Dates. That is we create one calendar and remove all workin days and go to special rules and mention the dates on whi you want to consolidate all the Invoices.

Incoterms: (International commercial Terms). It is a Inter-national commercial Terms which is an agreement between Shipper and the receiver for successful completion of deliveries

* Incoterms specifies who is responsible for what.

Ex: Fright, Insurance etc.

* whether company is responsible or customer is Responsible.

* If you maintain FOB (Free on board) they we are not suppose to charge fright and Insurance to customers.

* If you maintain CIF (Cost Insurance and fright) they we Charge fright and Insurance to customer.

Terms of payment: It is an agreement between company and the customer for the Number of days given to make the Payment.

Class (18) 14/04/14

* Incoterms is one of the split criteria for deliveries.
* Payment Terms is one of the split criteria for Invoice.

Defining Terms of Payment: SPRO → Sales and distribution → Master Data → Business Partners → Customers → Billing Document → Define Terms of Payment.

* Go to new entries.

Base Line data calculation: It is the date from which system will start calculating payment Terms.

Fixed day: If you mention Number of days they every month from that date onwards system start calculating payment Terms irrespective of the Invoice date.

Additional Months: If you mention number of months here (Ex: 1 month) they after creating Invoice system will wait for another 1 month they system will start calculating Payment Terms.

Default for Base line date: The default Base line date is Invoice date.

* We have 3 options in Invoice dates.

(1) Document Data (system date) (2) Entry date (manually entered date)
(3) Posting Date (Accounting Document generation date)

Cash discounts: It is a discount which we offer to the Customer if the customer is making the payment well before due date.

* The cash discount we maintain in terms of payment will be determine into sales document with the help of SKTO condition type.

Payment guarantee procedure: Generally we maintain this for Export customers. Any customer if you maintain this field then along with the Sales order customer has to Submit the payment Guarantee. That is Lotter of credit (LOC) or Bank Guarantee. If customer fails to Submit Letter of credit or Bank guarantee then system will not allow to create delivery.

Q: Without configuring credit management order is blocked for credit what could be the Reason?

A: The customer is Liable for Payment Guarantee Procedure.

Account Assignment Group: This field is one of the Parameter to determine Revenue G/L accounts while posting Invoice values into accounting.

Tax classification: This field controls whether the customer is Liable for Tax or not.

* If customer is Liable for Tax then we maintain '1'.
* If customer is not Liable for Tax then we maintain '0'.

Partner functions	Descriptions
SP	Sold to Party
SH	Ship to Party
BP	Bill to Party
PY	Payer

Extending the customers to Other sales Areas:

* T. code XD01 and mention the Account Group 0001.
* Mention your customer Number and company code.
* Mention different division Ex. G2

Reference

customer 1167

Company code G100

Sales organization G100

Ref. Division G1

* Do the same for all the Divisions.

T. code XD04: Tracking the changes in customer Master.

T. code XD05: Blocking the customer or Unblocking the customer.

T. code XD06: Customer Flag for deletion.

T. code XD07: Changing the customer from one account Group to another account Group.

Creating customers with Multiple Partner functions:

Apollo Banjara Hills

SP
SH
BP
PY

Apollo Vizag

SH
BP

Apollo Vijawada

SH
BP

Apollo Bhuvaneshwar

SH
BP

Creating Sold to Party (SP):

* XD01 and select Account Group as 0001 they click on continue.
* And save it.
* To create ship to Party select account group as 0002.

Creating Bill to Party (BP):

* To create to Bill to party select account group as 0004.
* And click on continue.
* Go to the change mode of sold to party and assign all the ship to partys and Bill to partys.
* Go to T.code XD02. And mention Sold to party number.
* And assign all the SHS and BPS.

Q: If users are Trying to create Same Customer Multiple times (Duplicating) then system should give message where is the control

A: SPRO → Logistics general → Business Partner → Customer → control → Change message control for Customer Master Data

* Maintain message Number 145 as 'I'.
* The Maximum Length of Customer Number is "10 Digits".

1. * Plant will be determined from ship to Party.
2. Shipping conditions: Shipping conditions will be determined from Sold to Party.
3. Payment Terms: Payment Terms will be determined from Payer.

(4) Tax classification: Tax classification will be determined from ship to party.

(5) Incoterms: Incoterms will be copied from sold to party.

Tables in Customer Master:

* The Table for general data is "KNA1"
* The Table for company code data is "KNB1"
* The Table for Sales Area data is "KNVV"
* The Table for partner functions is "KNVP".
* Total Address data of the customer "ADRC".

Q: Which data from customer master will automatically update in already created sales orders?

A: Address.

* If you want to know the Table Name and field Name go to that field press F1 and click on Technical Information.
* The T.code to see the Table entries "SE16N".
* The T.code to see the Technical field Names of a Table is "SE11".

Class (20) 16/04/14

* The Field name for customer is 'KUNNR'.
* The Field name for Payment Terms is 'ZTERM'.

Account Groups

* The Standard Account Group for Sold to Party is '0001'.
* The Standard Account Group for ship to Party is '0002'.
* The Standard Account Group for Payer is '0003'.
* The standard Account Group Bill to Party is '0004'.

The Purpose of Account Groups:

(1) It controls the Fields in Customer Master. That is whethe to make the Field mandatory or optional or Display or Surpre

(2) Account Group controls the Number Ranges.

(3) Account Group controls the Partner Functions in customer Master. That is if we create Sold to Party System determine 4 Partner Functions (SP, SH, BP and PY). If you create Ship to Party system determines only one Partner Function i.e., SH. If you create Bill to Party system determines only one Partner Function i.e., BP. And if you create Payer system determines only one Partner function i.e., PY.

* In Real Time we will define our own account Groups.
* Generally we (create) define 8 account Groups 4 for dome and 4 for Exports.

Defining Customer Number Ranges:

* Spro → Logistics general → Business Partner → Customers → control → Define and assign customer Number Ranges.
* Double click on Define Number Ranges for customer Master.
* click on change Intervals.
* click on Insert Interval.
* Mention Some Interval Number (2 digit). Ex: N1
* Mention the Number Ranges. From Number and To Number.
* While defining Number Ranges if you check External they System will treat it as External Number and while creating Customer user has to mention the Number Manually. If you Chcheck External they system will treat it as internal Number and while Saving customer system will propose the Number Automatically.
* Number Ranges can be Numeric or Alphanumeric or characters.
* Alphanumeric and characters should always be External.
* Numeric can be External or Internal.
* When ever we create Number Ranges system will not generate Request Number. If you want Request Number go to Number Ranges Main Screen click on interval → Transport and click on Yes.
* If you want to change the current Number they go to ~~Stat~~ Status.
* The T.code for Number Ranges is "OVZC".

Define Account Groups:

* spro → Logistics general → Business Partner → customers → control → Define Account Groups and field selection for customers.

* Select standard Account Group and create own account Group and assign Number Ranges.

** One-time Account check box: We check this for one time customer. One time Customer is the Customer who will place order only once (who may not place order for Next time).

* For one time customers we will not waste the space of the data base. by creating Seperate master Record. for all one tim customers we create one Dummy customer Master and when ever one time customer places order we use the Dummy customer Number in Sales order.

* If you check one time Account then while creating Sales order system automatically ask for Name and Address.

* The standard account group for one time account is CPD and CPDA.

CPD – Internal Number

CPDA – External Number.

Field status: Field status controls the Fields in Customer Master. (Mandatory or optional or display or Surpress).

Text Procedure: Text procedure consists of the customer specific Text information.

Ex: Payment instructions, Packing instructions, Terms and conditions etc.

* This Text we maintain it in Customer Master and from there we copy it into Sales order, delivery and Invoice. And we will print this Text in Relevant outputs. (Print outs, emails and Fax).

* If you want to maintain Text in customer Master go to extras and Texts.

Customer Pricing Procedure: We have this field in customer Master Sales Area data Sales Tab. This field is one of the Parameter to determine Pricing procedure in sales document.

* If you maintain some value here they system by default proposes it while creating customer Master.

Partner Determination Procedure: Partner Determination Procedure consists of Relevant Partner functions and which will be determined into customer Master.

* The standard Partner determination Procedure for Sold to Party is $\boxed{AG}$

* AG Procedure consists of 4 Partner functions ie; SP, SH BP and PY.

* The Standard PDP for ship to Party is [WE].
* WE Procedure consists of one Partner Function i.e., SH.
* The standard PDP for Payer is [RG].
* RG Procedure consists of one Partner Function i.e., PY.
* The standard PDP for Bill to Party is [RE].
* RE Procedure consists of one Partner function i.e., BP.

Output Determination Procedure: If you uncheck "access to conditions" field in output determination they system will try to determine output type from Customer Master w/ the help "DB0001" Procedure.

* We maintain output types in customer Master documents Tab.

(4) Partner Determination in Customer Master:

* Partner Determination is the process of determining Partner functions into customer Master.

Path for Partner Determination in Customer Master:

* SPRO → sales and distribution → Basic functions → Partner Determination → Set up partner Determination.
* Double click on set up partner determination for customer Master.
* The T. code for Partner determination is "VOPAN."
* Select Customer master and click on change.
* Double click on Partner Functions.

* And mention standard Partner functions SP, SH, BP, PY.

Partner Functions	Partner Type	Unique
SP	KU	☑
SH	KU	☐
PY	KU	☐
BP	KU	☐

* 'KU' means customer.

* Unique check: If you check this to any partner Function they system will not allow to add one more Partner Function in customer master. Generally we check Unique for Sold to Party. That is the Reason System will not allow to add one more sold to Party in customer Master.

* And mention standard Partner functions SP, SH, BP, PY.

Partner Functions	Partner Type	Unique
SP	KU	☑
SH	KU	☐
PY	KU	☐
BP	KU	☐

* 'KU' means customer.

* Unique check: If you check this to any partner function they system will not allow to add one more Partner Function in customer master. Generally we check Unique for sold to Party. That is the Reason System will not allow to add one more sold to Party in customer Master.

Class (22) 19/04/14

Configuration for Partner Determination: (Sold to Party)

(1) Partner Determination Procedure:

* Double click on PDP and go to new entries.

NAG New PDP sold to Party

* Press enter when you get error message and save it.

(2) Select the Partner Determination Procedure and Double click on Partner Functions in Procedure.

* Go to new entries (you will get your PDP).

PDP	Partner functions	Not modifiable	MANDATORY
NAG	SP	☑	☑
NAG	SH	☐	☑
NAG	PY	☐	☑
NAG	BP	☐	☑
NAG			

* As we creating PDP for Sold to Party they we have Not modifi-able check.

* If you check Not modifiable they system will not allow to change the Partner Function in Customer Master.

* If you check Mandatory they system will automatically determine the Partner function in Customer Master and system will not allow to save the Customer if the Partner Function is missing.

* And Save it.

③ Step: Double click PDP assignment.

* In this configuration step we will assign Partner Determination Procedure to account Group.

Account Group	PDP
N001	NAG

* and save it.

④ Step: Double click on Account Group function Assignment.

* In this configuration step we will assign Relevant Partner functions to account Groups. * Go to New entries.

Partner Function	Account Group
SP	N001
SH	N001
BP	N001
PY	N001

* and Save it.

(11) Configuration For Partner Determination for Ship to Party:

Step (1): NWE save it.

Step (2): NAG SH ☑ ☑

Step (3): N002 NWE

Step (4): SH N002

* Do the configuration For Partner determination for Payer and Bill to Party in the Same way.

Q: Why we assign Partner Functions to both Partner Determination Procedure and Account Group?

A: We assign Partner Functions to PDP to determine Partner Functions in Customer Master. And we assign Partner Function to account Group to determine Partner Number in Customer Master.

Class (23) 21/04/14

Common Division: If you have 100's of Divisions you need to Create each Customer 100 times. which will Consume the space of data base and the time of end users. To overcome this disadvantage SAP has given a Provision called common Division.

* By Using common Division concept we will create customers only once with common division. which will save the Time of end users and the space of data base.

Configuration for common Division: spro → Enterprise Structure

(1) * Define Division (common Division).

→ definition → Logistics general → define, copy, delete, check division → Define Division.

* Go lō new entries and define a common division.

Go common division.

② * Assign this division lō Sales organization.

spro → enterprise structure → Assignment → sales & distribution → Assign division lō sales organization.

* go lō new entries and assign common division lō sales organization.

③ Assign common division lō Actual divisions.

* Spro → Sales & distribution → Master Data → Define common division.

* Go lō your sales organization and division (position) and assign common division.

G100	G1	G0	G0
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
G100	G1	G0	G0

Q: Do we use common distribution concept for customers?

A: No. Because we do not extend the customer from one distribution channel lō another distribution channel.

Material Master

* It is the Data of the Product and which is stored Centrally and used in day to day transactions where ever it is required.
* Material Master will be further classified into Multiple views. (VIEWS).

(1) Basic data 1 (2) Basic data 2 (3) Sales org data 1
(4) Sales org data 2 (5) Sales general/plant data (6) Sales Text.
(7) Foreign Trade export. (8) Purchasing (9) Purchasing Text.
(10) Foreign Trade Import (11) MRP 1 (12) MRP 2 (13) MRP 3
(14) MRP 4 (15) Plant data storage 1 (16) Plant data storage 2
(17) Accounting 1 (18) Accounting 2 (19) costing 1 (20) costing 2

* Basic data 1 and Basic data 2 will be taken care by MM consultant.
* Sales org data 1, Sales org data 2, Sales general / Plant data, Sales Text and Foreign Trade export will be taken care by SD consultant. & user
* Purchasing, Purchasing Text & Foreign Trade Import → MM.
* MRP1, MRP2, MRP3 & MRP4 will be taken care by PP user.
* Plant data storage 1 & plant data storage 2 → MM
* Accounting1 & Accounting2 will be taken care by → FI
* Costing1 and costing2 will be taken care by CO.
* The T. code to create Material Master **MM01**
* The T. code to change Material Master **MM02**
* The T. code to display Material Master **MM03**

* The Length of Material Master is 18 characters (Digits).

<u>Material code Logic</u>: The Material code Logic should help the end users to Identify the Product.

Brand Name				Age Group				Dosage (mg)				Bottle (or) strip						
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15				
L	E	X	I	1	0	2	0	0	0	2	0	B	O	T				
L	E	X	I	3	0	4	0	0	0	5	0	S	T	R				with diff. age group & strip
V	A	X	I	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	0	B	O	T				with no dosage and bottle

* Material code will have option of both External and Internal Number.
* Mention the Industry the product belongs to. (Pharma).

<u>Material Type</u>:

Class 24 22/04/14

* The Material Type for Raw Materials is **ROH**.
* The Material Type for Semi finished **HALB**
* The Material type for Finished goods **FERT**
* The Material type for Trading goods is **HAWA**.
* Variant Material **KMAT**
* Packaging Material **VERP**
* Service Material **DIEN**.
* Returnable Packaging Material **LEIH**.
* Mention Material, Industry Sector, Material type and press enter.
* Select all the Views.

* You can save the views by clicking on Default setting.
* Mention the Plant, Storage Location, sales organization, Distribution channel and Press Enter. (Error message)
* If you are creating Material master for First they you will get error message that the company code does not exist or has not been Fuly maintained.
* If you get this error go to the T. code OMS2
* Select the Material type FERT and double click on Quantity/value updating.
* Go to the combination of ~~company code~~ Plant and Material type and check Quantity updating and value update.
* If Some views missing they go to OMS2 and slect material type and goto details and check/uncheck the views on requirement.
* If you get error company code does not exist or has not been fully maintained.
* check your Fiscal year variant in OBY6. (1 step.)
* Go to the T. code OMS4 and go to your company code and maintain the Present year and Period.

Year	Period (depend on Fiscal year variant)
2014	1

* And save it.
* Go inside and create on Material by entering Mandatory.
* In MRP1 view maintain MRP type as PD (planning), ND (No Planning)

* If MRP type is PD then system will ask MRP controller. But initially we do not have values says if you press F4 System will ask to maintain entries.
* And click on yes. And click on continue w/o specifying Project.
* Select the Second one and click on continue.

Material Requirements Planning Default MRP Controllers

* They click on IMG activity.
* Select the standard Plant 1000 and copy as.
* Mention your plant (G100) and press enter and save it.
* Enter Lot size as EX.
* They go to MRP2 view system will ask scheduling Margin Key.
* There will be no entries and press YES and continue w/o specifying project. select third one (production) and click on continue.
* They click on IMG activity.
* Select standard Plant 1000 and press copy as.
* Maintain your plant and enter and save it.
* In Accounting 1 maintain valuation class as 7920 (Finished Product) and maintain Standard Price. Ex: 3000.

* Material Master will be created by end users.
* consultants role in material Master is
① We give Training to core users on how to create material Master.
② We define new entries in master data fields.

Bisic data 1 View: ①

① Maintain description.

② Base unit of Measure: It is a unit in which we manufacture and store the Product. (Bottle and strips).

③ Material Group: Grouping of materials which will share Same Attributes.
Ex: Age Group, Dosage etc.
* The Purpose of this field is ① Reporting ② Pricing.

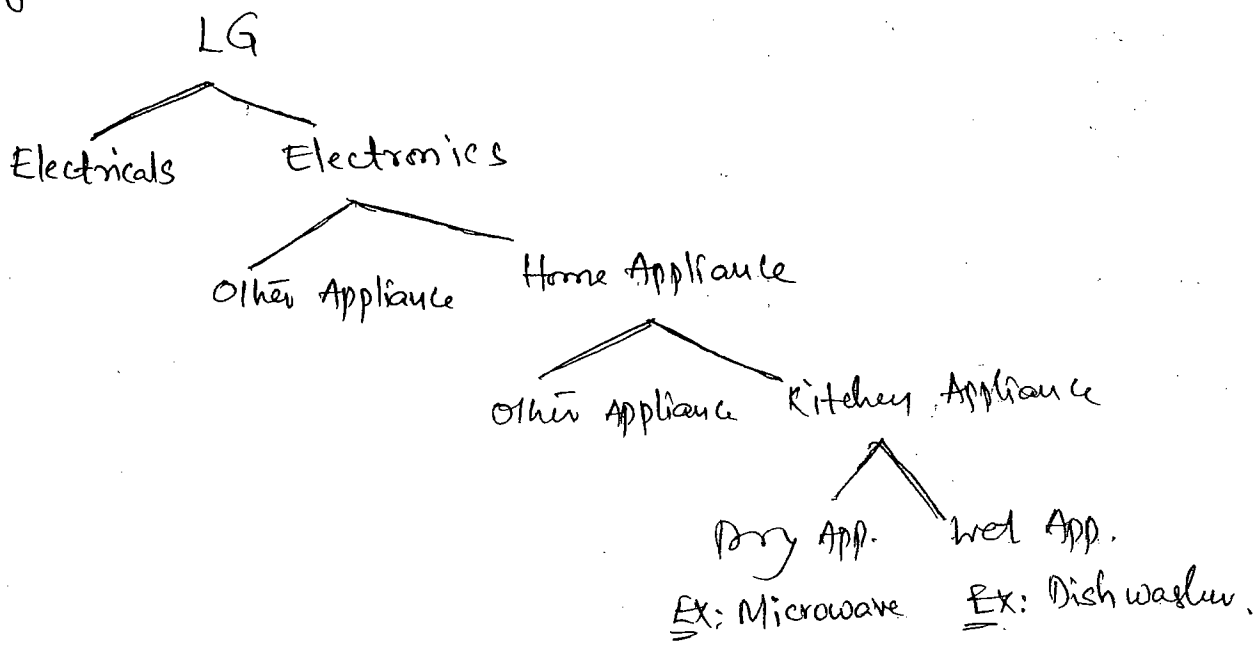
④ Old Material Number: If the Material Number is different from Legacy to SAP then we maintain the field old Material Number.
* The Purpose of this field is for Reference.

⑤ Division: You have to maintain Division inside Material Master because each material belongs to only one Division.

⑥ ~~Product allocation~~:
* If you maintain Division in Material Master ~~that~~ then it will be determined into Sales document line ~~header~~ item.

(6) Product Allocation: Reserving the stocks to customers, Customer group and Distribution channels to meet the Future Requirement.

(7) Product Hierarchy: Product Hierarchy is a Material having different Levels.



Class (25) 23/04/14.

X-Plant Material Status: If you want to block the Material across all the plants they maintain X-plant material status.

General item category group: This field is one of the Parameter to determine item category inbound delivery process.

Inbound → Procuring goods from vendor (Raw Materials)

MIGO → Goods Receipt.

Gross weight: It is the weight of the product including Packing.

Net weight: It is the Actual weight of the product without Packing.

Sales org. 1 : (2)

Sales unit : It is the unit in which we sell the Goods to customer.

Ex: If you maintain CAR then system will ask for conversion.

CAR 1 <=> 100 BOT.

* If you want to change the conversion then go to Additional and Unit of Measure.

* Sales unit not vary: If you check then system will not allow to change the sales unit in sales order.

X-distribution chain status : We use this field if you want to block the Material for sales across all distribution channels.

D chain specific status : We use this field if you want to block the Material for sales across in a particular distribution channel.

* Delivering Plant : This field will help to determine the Plant into Sales document. The criteria for determining plant into Sales document is (1) CMIR (2) Customer Master (3) Material Master.

Cash discount : This field is pre requisite to determine SKTO condition type (cash discounts from Terms of Payment) into Sales document.

Tax classification: This field controls whether the Material is Liable for Tax or not.

Minimum order Quantity : If you maintain this field then while creating sales order if sales order quantity is Less than minimum order Quantity then system will give warning Message

Minimum Delivery Quantity: If you maintain this field then while creating delivery if delivery Quantity is Less than minimum delivery quantity then system will give warning message or error message.

Sales org. 2: (3)

Material statistics group: This field controls whether to update the Material sales data into LIS or not.

LIS - Logistics Information Systems.

Material Pricing group: Grouping of Materials which will Share the Same Pricing Attributes.

* Material Pricing group will be used to Group the Materials for group condition concept in pricing.

Volume Rebate Group:

Group Rebate → ~~Grouping of Materials~~ to announce Rebate on ~~whole group sales~~ group of materials.

(x, y, z) Group = 50,000 Quantity then 10% discount.

** This field will help to Group the Materials for group Rebate concept.

Material Rebate → Announcing Rebates on a Particular Material.

Customer Rebate → Irrespective of Material.

Account assignment group: This field is one of the Parameter to determine Revenue G/L accounts while Posting Invoice values into Accounting Document.

* Accounting Document entry is Customer account debit to Revenue account credit.

Item category group: This field is one of the parameter to determine item category in sales document.

* The standard item category group is **NORM.**
* Third party item category group is **BANS.**
* IPO material item category group is **BANC**
* Make to order item category group is **0001.**
* Variant material item category group is **0002.**
* BOM (Bill of Material) Header pricing group material item category group is **ERLA.**
* BOM item pricing main item **LUMF.**

Header pricing
computer — Rs. 16,000
- cpu — 0
- Monitor — 0
- keyboard — 0
- Mouse — 0

} components.

Item pricing
computer — 0
- cpu — Rs. 8,000
- Monitor — Rs. 6,000
- keyboard — Rs. 1,000
- Mouse — Rs. 1,000

Pricing Reference Material: If pricing is same for multiple materials they instead of maintaining pricing for all the materials we maintain pricing for one material and assign this material as pricing reference material for other materials.

Ex:

A	B	C	X	Y	Z
0	A	A	A	A	A

(3) Sales General / Plant data

Availability check: (checking Group).

* This field controls how the sales order quantities should be updated in MRP.

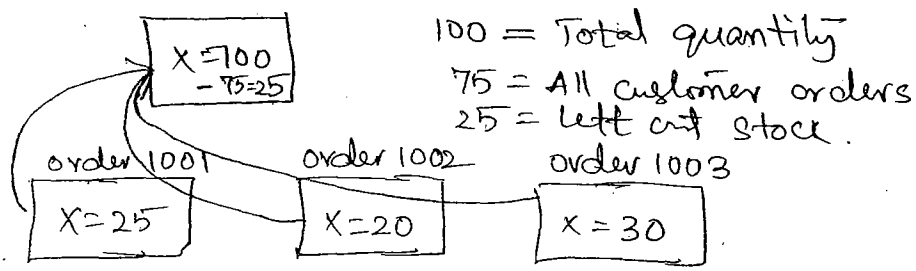
MRP → Material Requirement Planning

* We maintain availability check as 01 or 02.

01 → Daily Requirements → thousands of order quantity
02 → Individual Requirements. → approx > 100.

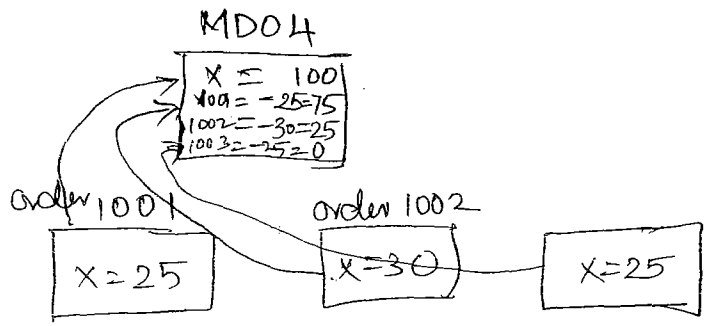
MD01 } MRP
MD02 } T code

01 MD04 (Stock Requirements)



100 = Total quantity
75 = All customer orders
25 = left out stock.

02



* If you maintain 01 system will cumilate the sales order quantities of a particular day and updates it in a single line in MRP.

* The Purpose is that the Back order Process in Not Possible in 01 but it is Possible in 02.

* It will be updated on each day wise in 01.

* If you maintain 02 here then each sales order quantity will be updated in MRP along with the Sales order Number.

* If availability check is 01 then back order Process is not Possible.

<u>Batch Management</u>: It is a unique Number (Batch) system generates for single lot of manufacture.

* The Purpose of Batch is

(1) It will help to track the Expiry date. (BPD)

BPD → Best before date.

(2) It will help to track defective goods.

(3) It will help to trace the Person Responsible.

* If the material relevant for Batch then check the field Batch Management.

* 90% of Industries will check Batch Management.

Transportation Group: This field is one of the Parameter to determine Route into Sales document.

Loading Group: This field is one of the parameter to determine shipping point into Sales document.

* Shipping Point determination: SPRO → Logistics Execution → Shipping → Basic shipping functions → shipping Point & goods receiving point determination → Assign shipping points

* Go to new entries and maintain fields.

01	0001	G100	G101
01	0002	G100	G102
SC	Loagrp	Plant	shipping point.

* The T.code is OVL2

* We determine shipping point based on (1) shipping conditions (2) Loading group and (3) Plant.

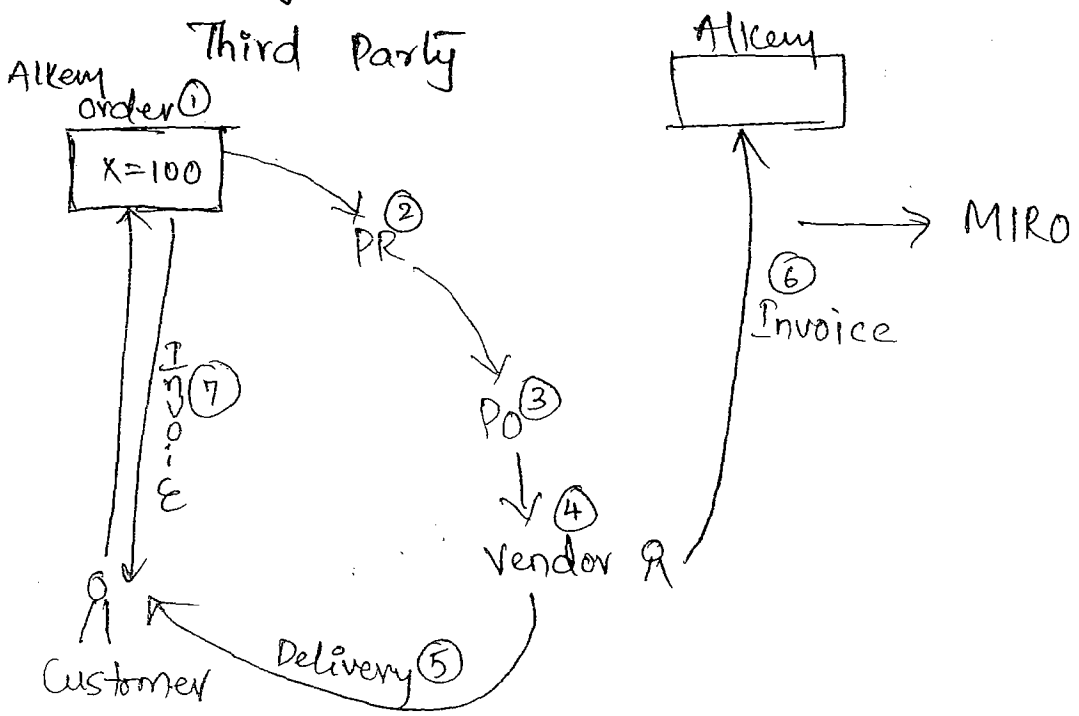
Sales Text (4) : In Sales Text we maintain the specifications of the Product.

(5) Purchasing VIEW :

Purchasing Group : Group of people Responsible for different Purchasing activities.

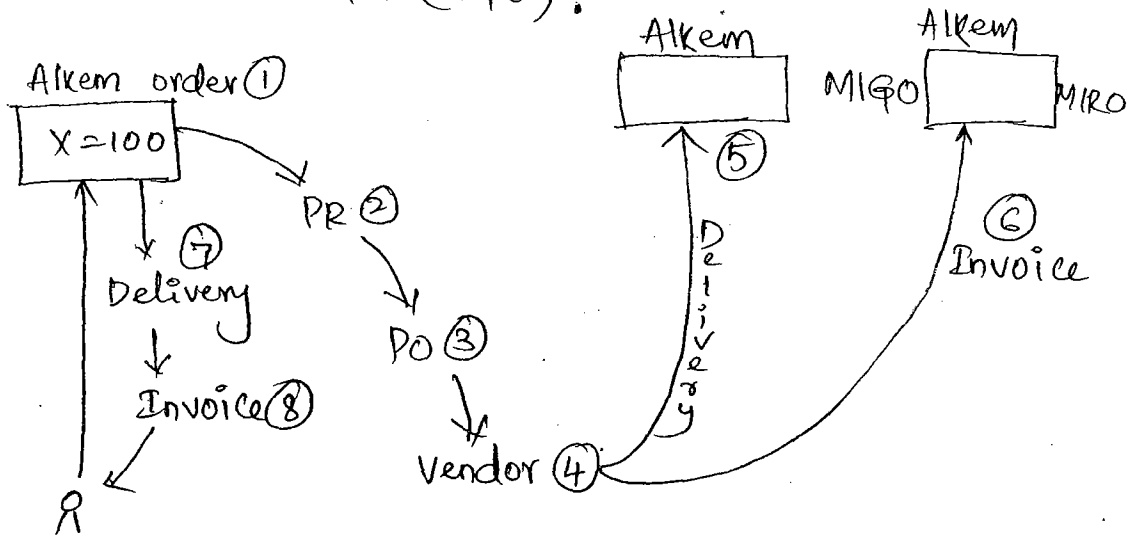
Plant-specific Material status : If you wants to block the Material in a particular plant they maintain this field.

Automatic Purchasing order :



* This process we call it as MIRO in SAP terminology.

Individual Purchase order (IPO).

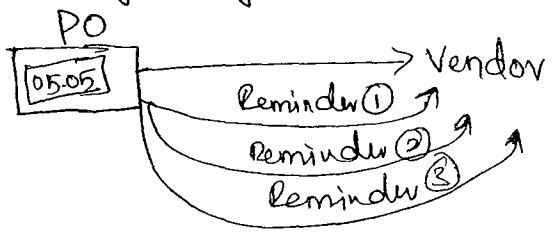


* MIGO — Goods Receipt
* MIRO — Invoice Verification

* We use IPO process if vendor does not accept to do company (Alkem) Packing they we ask Vendor to delivery to company and they we do our packing and sell it to the customers.

* If you check Automatic Purchase order they while creating Sales order in third Party process and IPO process system automatically generates Purchase order.

Purchasing value Key: This field will help to send Reminders to vendors to supply the goods on time.



GR Processing Time: GR → Goods Receive

* After Unloading the goods how much time it will take to finally take the Goods into Storage Location.

Delivery → Quality check → Storage Location.

(6) MRP1:

MRP Group: This field is one of the Parameter to determine Requirement type into Sales document.

MRP type: This field controls whether the material is Relevant for Planning or not.
MRP.

* If the material is relevant for planning then maintain PD.
* If the material is not relevant for planning they maintain ND.

PD → Normal Material.
ND → Scrap Material

* This field is one of the material to determine schedule line category into Sales document.
* This field is one of the Parameter to determine requirement type into Sales document.

Class (27) 25/04/14

MRP controller: He is the Person responsible to run MRP.

(7) MRP 2:

Procurement type: This field specifies whether the Product is manufactured internally or Procured externally (from vendor).

X — Both procurement types.

In-house Production: It is the time taken to manufacture the Goods.

* This field will help to Perform delivery scheduling.

Planned delivery time: It is the Approximate time taken to deliver the goods from vendors location to plant Location.

*Maintain scheduled margin key:

Safty Stock: It is the minimum stock which company has to maintain to meet the future emergency requirements.

MRP 3 (8):

Strategy Group: This field controls whether the material is make to order or make to stock.

* After receiving the order from customer then only we start manufacturing the finished product. Because the specifications of the product is not standard. Every customer will place order with their own specifications. Make to order.

* If the material is make to order maintain strategy group as 20.

Make to stock: Irrespective of customers orders we will manufacture the goods and keep stock of it. If order comes then we deliver the goods from the stock.

* If the material is make to stock they maintain 10 or blank.

* Strategy Group is one of the Parameter to determine requirement type into Sales document.

* The criteria for determining requirement type into sales document is (1) Strategy Group (2) MRP Group (3) Item category and MRP type.

Total ~~replacement~~ Replenishment lead time: It is the total time taken to make the finished Goods ready for dispatch.

No Stock	Manufacture	Quality check	Storage location
	10 days	3 days	

* The field is one of the Parameter to perform delivery schedu-ling.

(9) Plant data / Storage 1:

Storage conditions: This field is one of the Parameter to determine storage location in delivery document.

Storage Location determination: SPRO → Logistics Execution → Shipping → Picking → Determine Picking location → Assign Picking Locations.

* The storage location will be determined based on shipping Point, Plant and storage conditions.

* go to new entries.

G101	G100	01	GFG1
G101	G100	02	GFG2

* and save it.

Total shelf Life: This field will help to calculate the expiry date of the product.

Minimum remaining shelf life: If you mention Number of days here they if the stock is going to expire with in the Number of days mentioned then system will not propose the stock for delivery.

(10) Accounting 1 View:

Valuation class: valuation class will help to determine G/L accounts for Inventory accounting document.

* Inventory Accounting document generates at the time of PGI.

  PGI – Post Goods Issue.

* And the accounting entry is "cost of Goods sold a/c debit to Inventory a/c credit".

Inquiry
↓
Quotation
↓
order
↓
delivery
↓
Invoice

(8,000) → PGI → Inventory Accounting document.

x = 50,000
− 8,000
x = 42,000

* Valuation class for finished Product 7920.
* Valuation class for Trading goods 3200.

Price control: This field controls whether the Material is Standard cost or moving cost.

* Cost is the expenses incurred to manufacture the goods or to Procure the goods from vendor.
* If the material is standard Price they maintain Price control as 'S'. finished goods
* If the material is moving Price they maintain Price control as 'V'.

↓
cost

Standard price — Finished product

Moving price — Trading product.

* Generally finished product will have standard cost and Trading product will have moving cost

* The cost we maintain in material master will be determined into Sales document with the help of "VPRS" condition type.
* And Finally Save Material Master.

Extending the Materials from one distribution channel to another distribution channel:

* Mention the material Number copy from and press enter.
  Same

* Select the views and click on continue

* copy from	copy to
G100	maintain distribution channel G2.
GFG1	
G100	
G1	

* Do the Same for one plant to another plant.

Tables in Material Master:

* General data MARA — MATNR
* plant data MARC
* Sales data MVKE
* Accounting data MBEW

Customer Material Info Record (CMIR): Class (28) 26/04/14

* We use CMIR if customers are placing order with their own Material codes. By using CMIR we will assign Customer material code with our material code. our material code with customer material code
* While creating sales order if user enters Customer material code then system automatically determines our material code.
* The T. code to create CMIR is VD51.
* If you go to details tab then you can see all the fields in CMIR.
* The fields we have in CMIR will be given first preference while determining it into sales document.

(1) Plant (2) Delivery priority (3) Minimum delivery Quantity (4) Partial delivery per item (5) Maximum Partial deliveries. (6) Under delivery Tolerance (7) over delivery Tolerance (8) Unlimited Tolerance (9) Item usage.

* Minimum delivery quantity → Material Master, Remaining all from Customer master shipping Tab.

Questions of Customer Master:

(1) There is a customer who receive goods only on Saturdays. where is the control?

(2) what is purpose of Nielsen ID?

(3) which field will be used to Group the customers based on their sales Turnover? Customer classification.

(4) What is the Purpose of Reconcillation Account?

(5) client's requirement is irrespective of Invoice date system shoud calculate payment Terms from 25th of every month where is the control?

Terms of Payment → Fixed day.

(6) What is Base Line date?

(7) what is cash discount? and how we determine it into Sales document?

By using SKTO condition type.

(8) What is the Purpose of Item proposal and what is Item Proposal?

(9) Why we use Sales district?

(10) What is the Purpose of Exchange rate type?

(11) What is PP customer Procedure?

(12) What is the difference between price List and price Group?

Price Group — Discounts

price List — Base Price

(13) What is the Purpose customer pricing procedure?

(14) What is the pre requisite to ord. combine multiple orders into Single delivery?

(15) What is the purpose of delivery priority?

(16) What is Rescheduling and Back order Process?

(17) What will happen if you check Relevant for POD?

(18) What is the criteria to determine Plant into sales document?

(19) How many maximum Partial deliveries we can make?

(20) What happens if I check Unlimited Tolerance?

(21) What is Invoicing dates?

(22) What is Invoicing List dates?

(23) With out configuring credit management system is blocking the order for credit where is the control?

(24) What is the Purpose of shipping conditions?

(25) How shipping point determines?

(26) Which data from Customer Master will automatically updates in already created Sales order?

(27) System should inform the users if ~~to~~ user is duplicating the Customer Master? where is the control?

(28) From which Partner function system will determine Shipping conditions?

(29) What is T. code for customer Flag for deletion?

(30) What is T. code to see the Customer List? VC/2.

(31) Can I transport Number Ranges from one Server to another server? NO.

(32) How to change the customer's current Number?

(33) If system is taking the Numbers in Buffer then go to the T. code SNRO and mention object as Debitor and click on change. And Leave blank the field "No. of Number in Buffer."

(34) What is the Length of customer Number?

(35) What is the Table for customer Master Sales Area data?

(36) What is the Table for customer master Partner data?

(37) What is the Table for customer master General data?

(38) What is the purpose of Account Group?

(39) What happens if I check one time account in Account group?

(40) What is the Standard Partner determination procedure for Payer?

(41) What is the Purpose of output determination Procedure in Account Group?

(42) Where is the control that the system will not allow to add one more Sold to party in customer Master?

(43) Where is the control that the system will not allow to change Sold to Party in Customer Master?

(44) Why we assign Partner functions to both Partner determination procedure ~~to~~ and account Group?

(45) What is the T.code for PDP?

(46) How we configure Partner determination?

(47)

Questions on Material Master:

Class (29) 28/04/14

1. What is Length of Material code?
2. What is the Purpose of valuation class?
3. I want to block the material for sales where is the control?
4. What is the Purpose of Product Allocation?
5. What is the Purpose of volume Rebate Group?
6. What is the Purpose of Material pricing Group?
7. What is the Purpose of Loading Group?
8. What is the Purpose of General Item Category Groups?
9. What is the Purpose of Item Category Group?
10. What is the difference between daily requirements and Individual requirements?
11. What is the criteria to determine Requirement type into Sales document?
12. What is the Purpose of RLT?
13. What combination Storage Location determines into delivery document?
14. What is the Table for Material Master sales data?
15. What is the Table for Material Master General data?
16. What is the Table for material Master FI data?
17. What is the Table for Material Master Plant data?
18. What is the Purpose of Transportation Group?
19. what happens if I do not maintain cost in Material Master?

(20) What is the Prerequisite to determine SKTO condition type into sales document?

(21) What is the T.code to create CMIR?

(22) Why we use CMIR?

(23) What are the fields we have in CMIR?

(24) What happens if I check Automatic PO?

(25) What is the difference b/w Make to order and Make to stock?

(26) What is the Purpose of MRP type?

(27) What is the Purpose of common division?

(28) Do we use common distribution concept for customers?

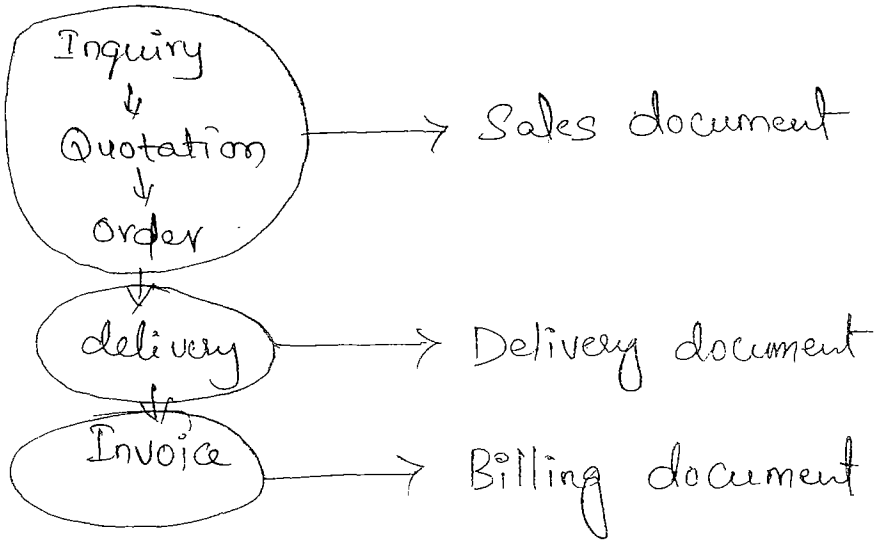
(29) What is the Purpose of Safety stock?

(30) What is pricing referance material?

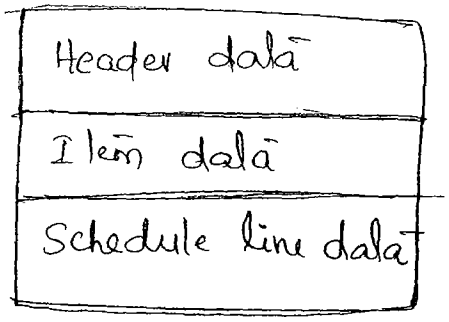
(31) Which field in material master will be used to determine expiry date?

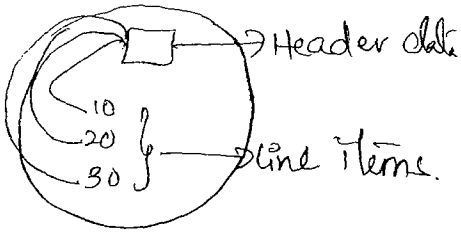
Sales Document

* Sales Document consists of sales related information.



Structure of Sales document:





Header Data: It is the data which will apply to all the Line items in the Sales document.

* The Source of Header data is Customer Master, configuration data and control data (Enterprise structure).
* Header Data will be controlled by document types.
* The Table for Header data is VBAK.

Item data: It is the data which is applicable to particular Line item in the Sales document.

* The Source of Item data is Material Master, CMIR, condition master, configuration data and control data.
* Item data will be controlled by Item category.
* The Table for Item data VBAP.

Schedule line data: It is the data which consists of delivery dates and confirm quantities.

* schedule line data will be controlled by schedule line category.
* The Table for schedule line data is VBEP.

Some other Tables:

* Business data ⟶ VBKD (Sales, shipping & Billing Tab).
* Business data is the data which copies into Sales

document from customer Master sales Tab, shipping Tab and Billing Tab.

* Sales document Partner data → VBPA
* Document Flow → VBFA.
* Header status → VBUK.
* Item status → VBUP.
* Pricing Table → KONV.

Transaction	Document Type	T. code
Inquiry	IN	VA11
Quotation	QT	VA21
Order	OR	VA01
Rush order	RO	VA01
Cash sales	CS	VA01
Return order	RE	VA01
Credit Memo Request	CR	VA01
Debit Memo Request	DR	VA01
Invoice correction Request	RK	VA01
Free of charge	FD	VA01
Sub Sequent delivery free of charge	SDF	VA01
Consignment Fill up	CF	VA01
consignment Issue	CI	VA01
consignment Pick up	CP	VA01
consignment Returns	CONR	VA01
Quantity contract	QC	VA41
value contract general	WK1	VA41
value contract material specific	WK2	VA41
scheduling agreement	DS	VA31

Creating Inquiry:

Class (39) 29/04/14

* Inquiry IN VA11.
* Mention Inquiry type, Sales organization, Distribution channel, division and press enter.
* You will get a error message i.e., order type 'IN' is not defined in Sales area.
* To rectify the error go to the Path.
* Spro → S&D $\xrightarrow{\text{sales}}$ sales document → Sales document Header
→ Assign sales area to sales document types.
* click on IMG activity and double click on combine sales organizations.
* Go to your sales organization and assign the same sales organization in Reference sales organization.

S org.	Ref S org.
G100	G100
G200	G200

* and save it.
* Go back and double click on combine distribution channels.
* Go to your sales organization and distribution channel combination and assign same distribution channel Reference distribution channel.

Dist. channel	Ref. Dis. ch.
G1	G1
G2	G2
G3	G3
	G4

* Go back and double click on combine divisions.
* Go to your sales organization and division combination and mention the same division in Reference division.
* and save it.
* And go back and double click on Assign sales order types permitted for sales area.
* Go to new entries.

G100	G1	G1	IN
G100	G1	G1	QT
G100	G1	G1	OR
⋮			

save it

* Enter customer Number in sold to Party.
* Enter PO Number and the periods valid from and valid to.
* Enter material.
* While creating Inquiry you will get error message <u>No pricing procedure could be determined.</u>
* To solve the error go to the T-code V/08.
* Go to new entries and mention some pricing and description.

G10000 New pricing procedure.

* Then select the pricing procedure and double click on Control.
* They again go to new entries.

Step	cond. type (CTYP)	Requirement (Reqt)	Account key (ACC key)
10	PR00	2	ERL

* Press enter and save it.

(2) * Then go to the T.code OVKK and assign Pricing Procedure (G10000) to the combination sales organization, distribution channel, division, document Pricing procedure (A), Customer Pricing procedure (1), Pricing procedure (G10000).

* Go to new entries before assign pricing procedure.

* Press enter and save it.

Maintain condition Records for PR00:

(3) * The T.code is VK11.

* Enter condition type (PR00) enter and select material with release status and click on choose.

		Amount.
* Mention your materials.	LEX110200150 BOT	15,000
	LEX110200020 BOT	10,000

* Go back and do Inquiry.

* If you want see the price they double click on material and go to condition Tab.

* Before you save Inquiry go to edit and click on In completion block and they save it.

* when you save Inquiry system will propose Inquiry Number, EX: 10000023

Creating Quotation: Enter all details and click on Reference create with Reference enter Inquiry Number and click on copy.

* Mention valid from & valid to.

* And go to ~~edit~~ edit and check In completion Log.

* you have to maintain all the fields in Incompletion Log. And you can go to a field by double clicking on that field.

* In Incompletion log if shipping point is not determined then go to T.code OVL2 shipping point determination and assign shipping point to the combination shipping condition, Loading group and plant.

Shipping condition	Loading group	Plant	Shipping Point
01	0001	G100	G101
↓	↓		
Customer Master Shipping Tab	Material Master Sales general plant data.		

* And Save it.

* And Save the Quotation. System will propose a Quotation Number. Ex: 20000146.

Creating Order: Order OR VA01 change VA02 VA03

* Go to the T.code VA01 and mention document type OR and click on create with Reference.

* Mention your quotation Number (20000146) and click on copy.

* Mention PO Number some and save it.

Posting Stocks: If you want to create delivery then you have to have some stock.

* The T.code is MBIC.

* Mention the Movement type 561. mention your plant and Storage Location.
* Press enter. Then you will get a ~~error~~ Warning message that Parameters for plant G100 not maintained in Inventory Management.
* To maintain Parameters go to the Path SPRO → Materials Management → Inventory management and physical Inventory → Plant Parameters.
* Select the standard Plant 1000 and click on copy.
* Then mention your plant G100. and press enter and Save it.
* Maintaining plant Parameters in Production Planning (PP):
* SPRO → Production → ~~Production~~ ~~Planning~~ → Material Requirement planning → Plant parameters → Carry out Overall maintainance of plant Parameters.
* click on copy.
* Mention From plant as Standard plant (1000).
* Mention To plant as Your plant. And click on copy and save it.
* Maintain Material and the quantity and press enter.
* And you will get error message that No stock posting possible for this Material.
* To Solve this go to the T. code OMS2.

* Select your material type FERT and double click on Quantity /Value updating.
* Go to the combination of plant and material type check the fields Quantity updating and value update.
* And save it.
* And do the same for Trading goods (HAWA) and save it.
* Next error: No controlling area has been assigning to company code G100.
* To solve this error go to the Path SPRO → controlling → General controlling → organization → Maintain controlling Area → Double click on maintain controlling Area.
* Go to new entries.
* Maintain 2 in
* And mention currency type as 10.
* Mention the currency INR.
* chart of Accts INT.
* Fiscal year variant V3.
* Mention Standard Hierarchy some number and press enter and create that Standard Hierarchy.
* Double click on Assignment of company code.
* Go to new entries. And mention G100 and save it.
* The double click on Activate Components /(control) indicators,
* And go to new entries mention the Fiscal year 2014

and save it.

* Next error: check Table 169P: entry G100 does not exist.
* To solve this error go to the T.code SE16 and mention Table as T169P. Then click on create entries.
* Select the standard company code 1000 and click on copy. And mention your company code G100 and save it.
* Next error: For object, Number range interval 49 does not exist FBN1.
* To solve the error go to T.code FBN1.
* Mention your company code and click on change intervals.
* And click on insert interval.
* Maintain Number interval 49 and year 2014 and from Number and To Number (Any Numbers).
* And click on save it.

The T.code to see the stock overview is MMBE.

* Go to MMBE maintain all fields and click on execute.

<u>Creating delivery</u>: Delivery T.code → VL01N.

* Mention your shipping point and enter.
* Go to Picking Tab and enter the Pick quantity same as delivery quantity (100).
* They click on PGI.

Creating Invoice:

* T. code to create Invoice is VF01.
* Enter T. code and press enter and save it.

Errors:

Class (31) 03/05/14

* Posting Periods Possible in periods 2014/01 and 2013/12 in company code.
* The T. code to close the Periods MMPV.
* Mention your company and period you want to close (02) and mention the year 2014.
* click on Execute.
* Int, GBB, BSA (BSX), 7920 does not exist.
* To Solve above error go to the T. code OBYC.
* Double click on GBB and mention your chart of accounts as INT.
* Go to BSA and click on Copy, and make it blank and press enter and save it.
* Number interval for Trans/event WA/WE does not exist.
* To solve go to the T. code OMBT.
* click on Groups and select the error that the system showing and click on maintain.
* Select the previous year (2013 but it can be any year) and go to edit menu and click on Insert year.
* Mention year (2014) and mention some From Number and To Number.

* To see the Inventory accounting document go to the change mode of delivery (VL02N) and click on document flow select Goods issue delivery and click on display document and click on Accounting document.

* To generate accounting document during Invoice go to the T.code VKOA double click on Table Number 1 and search the combination of Application 'V'

condition type 'KOFI', chart of accts 'INT'
Sales org. '1000', Acct Assg Gr '01' (for customer)
Acct assg Gr '01' (for material)
Account Key 'ERL'.

* Take the G/L account (800002) and go back double click on ~~Account Key and go to new entries~~
General (H) and go to new entries and mention Application as 'V'
Condition type 'KOFI', chart of accts 'INT', Sales org. '1100' and copy the G/L accounts. And save it.

* G/L account Number does not exist in company code 1100.

* To solve copy the G/L accounts from standard company code to our company code. And the T.code is FS00.

* Mention your G/L accounts (800002) and mention standard company code (1000) and click on Block (B) and Uncheck all the blocks and save it.

* They mention your company code and click on With Template.

* Mention G/L accounts and standard company code (1000) and click on save.

* Number range interval 01 does not exist (FBNI).

* To solve go to T.code FBNI.

* Mention your company code click on change intervals and go to click on insert interval and mention the below.

NO	Year	From Number	To Number
01	2014	300000	399999

* Press enter and save it.

Class (32) 04/05/14.

Business Process

Standard Process:

Inquiry (IN)
↓
Quotation (QT)
↓
Order (OR)
↓
Delivery
↓
Invoice.

* When ever customer inquires about the product we create Inquiry document in SAP. Inquiry is a Internal document and which consists of Customer details, material details, and Quantity details.

* After creating Inquiry we will create quotation with Reference to Inquiry. Quotation is a valid document which consist of customer details, material details, Quantity details, pricing and Terms & conditions and validity (quotation) Period.

* After creating quotation we will send this document to Customer. If customer satisfies with the quotation they he will place order.

* Order is an agreemant between company and the customer to Supply the goods. order consists of customer details, material details, Quantity details, Terms & conditions, Pricing and delivery dates.

* After order we will create Delivery.

* In Delivery we have 3 activities and which are

① Picking ② Packing ③ PGI (Post Goods Issue)

* When we do PGI system will perform various activities in the back ground. The activities are,

① stock updates ② Inventory Accounting document generates.

And the accounting entry is

cost of Goods sold a/c Dr.
TO
Inventory account cr.

③ It updates in LIS

④ It updates in credit Management

⑤ It updates in Document flow.

⑥ It updates in Billing due list.

* After PGI (delivery) we create Invoice with Delivery.

* When we create Invoice system will perform vario activities in the back ground. The activities are,

(1) Accounting document generates.

And the Accounting entry is

Customer a/c Dr.
To
Revenue a/c Cr.

(2) Profitability analysis document generates.

(3) Cost center document generates.

(4) It updates in LIS.

(5) It updates in credit management.

(6) It updates in document flow.

Material does not defined for sales from India. (error) delivery

* To solve go to Spro → Sales & distribution → Basic functions → Taxes → Define Tax determination Rules.

* go to new entries.

Tax country	country Name	seq.	Tax category
IN	India	1	MWST

* And go to customer Master Billing Tab and Maintain Tax classification. And go to material master & maintain Tax classification.

period 002014 → 2014 is not opened for account type S/M.

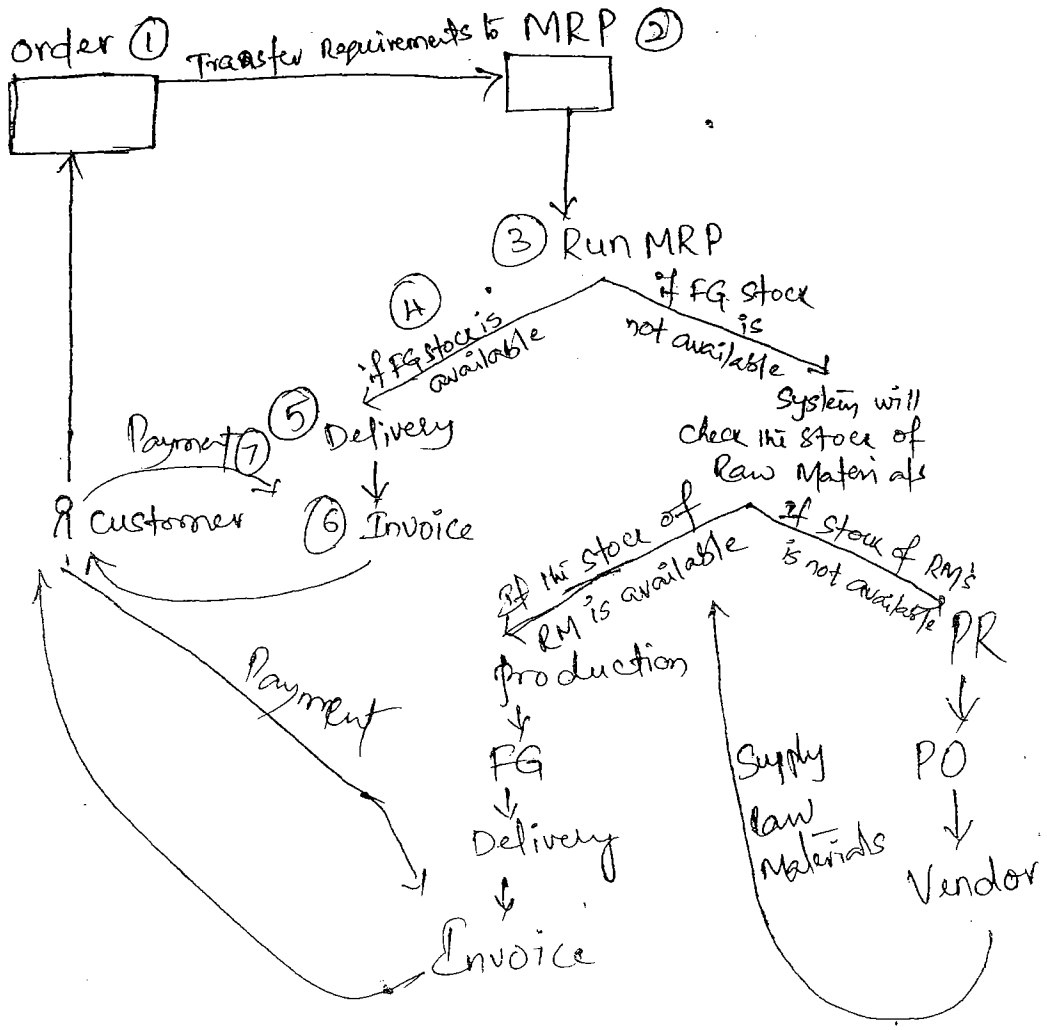
go to OBY6 and go to your company code (G100)

check posting period variant. (1000).

* Go to the T.code OB52 and go to your posting period variant (select all) and go to the second year coloumn and maintain future year.

* And save it.

Order to cash (OTC): OTC

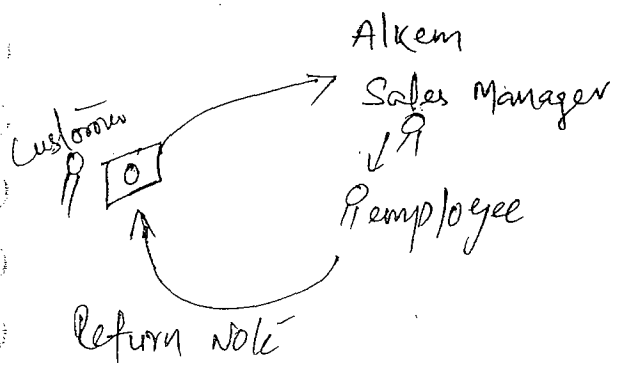


Return Process:

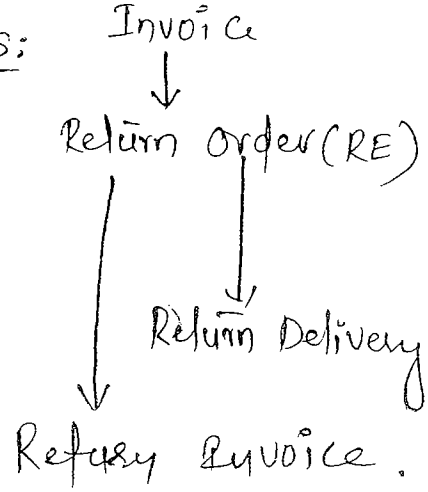
* We do return process when customer returns the goods. The below scenarios customers will return the Goods.

1. If the stock is damaged.
2. Defective Goods
3. Expired stock.

* Whenever customer finds the damaged stock or defective stock he will inform to company. Then company will send an employee to Customer's place to cross check the goods. After cross checking the goods employee will prepare Return note.
* Return note consist of Customer Number, Invoice Number, Material, Quantity, Reason, customer Signature and employee signature.
* After preparing Return note employee will submit it to company.
* Then end user will create Return Order with Reference to Invoice.



Process:



* When we create Return Invoice system generates Accounting Document. And the Accounting entry is <u>Revenue a/c Dr to Customer a/c Cr</u>. That is the amount will be deducted from Customer's outstanding Payment. ⟶ Practice.

<u>Credit Memo Request:</u> We do credit Memo request if you want to deduct the amount from customer's outstanding with out physical movement of goods.

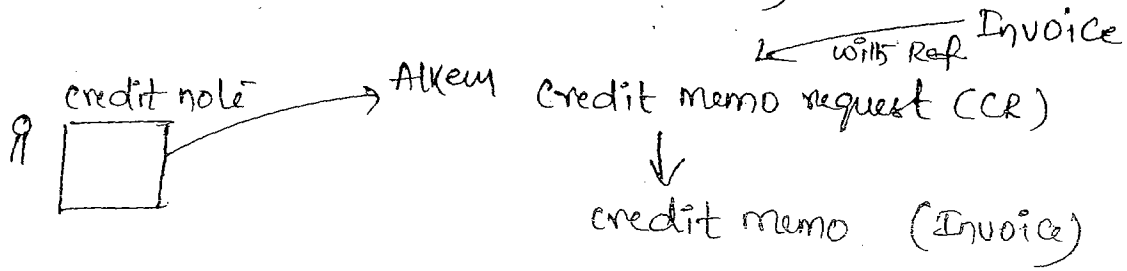
* The below scenarios we do credit memo request.

(1) Goods are totally damaged and which are not in a position to take back.

(2) User mistakely over charge the Previous Invoice.

(3) Secondary sale promotional activity. (The company will ask dealers (it's customers) to give discounts to their customers and company remberse that amount to it's customers). ⟶ Practice.

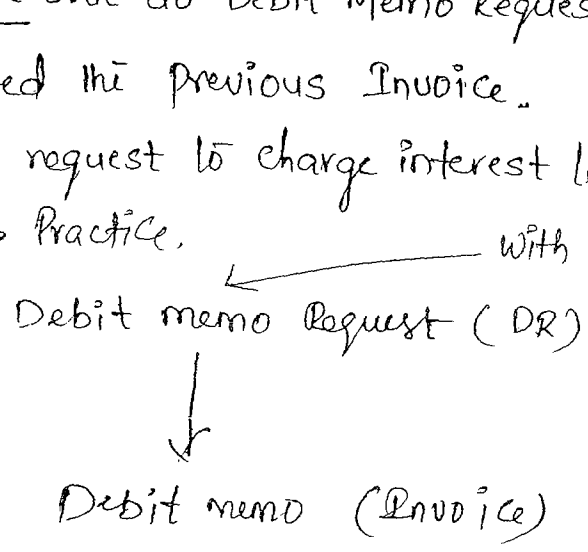
<u>Process:</u>



<u>Debit Memo Request:</u> (1) We do Debit Memo Request if user is mistakely Under charged the previous Invoice.

(2) We do Debit memo request to charge interest to customers for Late Payments. ⟶ Practice.

<u>Process:</u>



Invoice Correction Request: We do Invoice correction request if you want to deduct some amount from customer's outstanding or if you want to add some amount to customer's outstanding.

Process: Invoice correction request should be always created with reference to Invoice.

Mandatory

Invoice correction request

10 VAXINE 100 1,00,000

20 VAXINE 100 −90,000

(+10,000)

Credit Memo (Invoice)

+10,000

Revenue a/c Dr

to

customer a/c Cr.

With Reference to Invoice

Ex: 10 VAXINE1500 100

10 VAXINE100 1,00,000

20 VAXINE 100 −1,10,000

(−10,000)

(Invoice)

Credit Memo

−10,000

Customer a/c Dr

to

Revenue a/c Cr.

Rush Order: Immediate delivery order. If customer is asking delivery immediately they we do Rush order Process.

Process: Rush order (RO

Delivery will be automatically created by the system in the back ground while doing Rush order.

Delivery

↓

PGI → we do PGI manually

Invoice.

Cash Sales (counter Sales):

* Customers walking into outlet pick the material and go to the cash counter and pay the cash, take the bill and leave the counter along with the goods.

Process:

Cash sale order (CS) → Invoice

Cash sale order (CS) → Cash sale Invoice

Cash sale order (CS) → Delivery → PGI

Automatically by the system in the background.

* When we create cash sale invoice system generates Accounting document and the accounting entry is Cash Settlement a/c Dr. To Revenue a/c Cr. (change mode of delivery and accounting).

Free of charge: (Sample Process): Whenever we launching new products we send samples to customers at free of charge.

Process: Free of charge order (FD) → Delivery → proforma Invoice (Dummy Invoice).

* Proforma Invoice is a Dummy Invoice which will not generate Accounting document.

Subsequent Delivery free of charge: (Replacement goods to Customer in case of Returns): Whenever Customer Return the goods instead of deducting the amount from Customer's outstanding we will replace the goods to Customers without

Charging

Process: SDF should be always created with reference to Return order. And which is Mandatory.

Return order (RE)

Subsequent delivery FOC (SDF) → Delivery → Pro forma Invoice.

Return Delivery

* If you want to Replace the goods (to do the SDF) you need to Reject the item in Return order and that particular item will be copied into SDF. So you must have to Reject the item in Return order if you want to do SDF for that particular item so the item which has been ~~order~~ Rejected will not copied into Return Invoice (In case of Multiple line items).

Quantity Contract: It is an agreement between company and customer for supplying the goods of a Particular quantity with in a specific validity period.

* Here the benefit to company is assured sales and the benefit to customer is discounts or Less price.

Process: Quantity Contract (QC) VA41

↓ X = 10,000 (1 year)

Release order (OR) → X = 1500 → Delivery → Invoice

X = 2,000

Release order → Delivery → Invoice.

* Any order with Reference to contract is called as Release order.

Value contract general:

Class (35) 08/05/14

* It is an agreement between the company and the customer for supplying the goods of a particular value within a specific validity period.
* Value contract general not specific to one material. It is for group of material. For value contract general we will create Assortment Module to group the material.

Creating Assortment Module: T. code WSV2

* Easy access → Logistics → S&D → Master data → Products → Value contract - Assortment Module → WSV2 - Create.
* Press enter. give some description material. The Materials (X, Y, Z) and save it. They system will give one number (module 100000028)

Process:

Value contract general (WK1) → VA41.
↓
Release order
↓
Delivery
↓
Invoice

Assortment Module (100000028)
↓
consist of Group of Materials.

* Go to VA41 and maintain your sales Area. And mention value and Assortment Module that we already created.

Value contract Material Specific: This is an agreement between company and the customer for supplying the goods of a particular material and value within a specific validity period.

Process: Value contract Material specific (WK2)

↓

Release order

↓

Delivery

↓

Invoice.

Scheduling Agreement: It is an agreement between company and the customer for supplying the goods of a particular Quantity with in a specific validity period with Predefined delivery dates.

Process: Scheduling Agreement

10/05/14	200
10/06/14	200
28/06/14	200

→ Predefined delivery dates.

↓

Delivery

↓

Invoice

* Go to the T. code VA31, maintain document type and Sales area press enter.
* Enter required details and go to schedule line by double clicking on material.
* And mention Delivery dates and order quantity in schedule line.

Consignment: Dumping the stock at customer's place and keeping ownership with the company with out raising the Invoice. When our customer sell the goods to their customer they we raise Invoice to our Customer and we transfer the ownership.

* Consignment will be classified into 4 types.

① <u>consignment fill up</u> (CF).

* Dumping the stock at customer's place with out transfering the ownership and with out raising Invoice.

consignment fill up
(600)
↓
Delivery (600)

Alkem x = 1000 Qty. (Neo Prod.)
− 600
400 = 680
+280
Apollo Customer x = 600 − 350 = 250
+30
= 280

* When we do delivery in consignment fill up stock will be reduced from ~~Unrss~~ Unrestricted stock and it will be added to consignment stock.

* Consignment fill up is not relevant for Invoice.

② <u>consignment Issue</u> (CI): When our customer sell the goods to their customers then our customer will inform the Same to company then we do consignment Issue to raise Invoice to customer and to transfer the ownership.

consignment Issue (CI
(350)
↓
Delivery (350) ⟶ Invoice

* When we do delivery in consignment issue the stock will be reduced from consignment Stock.

* Consignment Issue is relevant for Invoice

③ <u>consignment Returns</u> (CONR): If end customer return the goods to our customer then we do consignment returns. When we do Return delivery in consignment returns the stock will be added to

consignment stock.

* consignment Return is relevant for Return Invoice.

Consignment Returns (30) Returned stock from Customers

↓

Return Delivery (30)

↓

Return Invoice

(4) <u>consignment Pick up (CP)</u>: When our customer request to take back the consignment goods then we do consignment Pick up.

* When we return delivery in consignment Pick up stock will be reduced from consignment stock and stock will be added to Unrestricted stock.

consignment Pick up (CP) (280)

↓

Return Delivery (280)

* consignment Pick up is not relevant for Invoice.

Class (36) 09/05/19

Document Types: Document Type controls the Header data of the Sales document.

* The T. code to define document types is VOV8.
* And the Path to define document types is Spro → S&D → → Sales → sales document → Sales document Header → Define Sales document types.
* Select the document type (standard) and click on copy. And mention your document type.

Sales document type STOR Standard order.

* Say yes if it ask for a field. And save it.
* And press continue.

Document type controls

(1) **SD document category:** Document category controls the functioning of the Sales document.

* Document category for Inquiry is 'A'.
* Document category for Quotation is 'B'.
* Document category for ORDER is 'C'. (OR, CS, RO, CF, CI)
* Document category for Returns document type 'H' (CONR), (CP)
* Document category for CR and RK is 'K'.
* Document category for Debit memo request is 'L'.
* Document category for FD, SDF is 'I'.
* Document category for QC, WK1, WK2 is 'G'.
* Document category for DS is 'E'.

Q: Where is the control that system will not allow to create delivery with reference to Inquiry or Quotation?

A: Document category.

② Indicator: We maintain indicator only for Invoice correction request (RK) document type. We maintain indicator as 'D'.

* Indicator 'D' controls that each line item from Invoice will be copied as two line items in Invoice correction Request document.

③ Sales document block: If you maintain this field they that sales document type will be blocked to create sales document with that particular document type.

④ Number systems:

(i) Number Range internal assignment:

Defining Sales document Number Ranges:

* The T. code is VN01.

* And the Path is, SPRO → Sales & distribution → Sales → Sales documents → Sales document Header → Define Number Ranges for Sales documents.

* Click on change interval and click on insert interval.

* Create one internal Number Range and one External Number Range and assign them to Number Range internal assignment and Number Range external assignment respectively.

(iii) Item Number Increment: This field controls how the line item Number should be incremented in Sales document.

* If you keep this field blank system will not save sales documents

Sub-item Increment: This field controls how the Sub item Number should be incremented in Sales document.

* The below Scenarios we will have sub items.

(i) BOM (Bill of Material)

(ii) Free goods

Ex: computer → Main item

- cpu
- Monitor
- Keyboard
- Mouse

} Sub components

* Any material if we have sub components they we call it as BOM.

(ii) Free Goods

Ex: offering the material free of cost in relation to the Main item.

(iii) Material determination

* Substituting one material in place of other Material.

(iv) Cross selling

* Selling additional products along with the Main product.

(5) General control:

(i) Reference Mandatory: This field controls whether any preceeding document required or not to create a sales document.

* In standard only RK and SDF will have reference Mandatory.

* client's requirement is for Dealers and distributors system should allow to create order directly but for Institutional and direct customers system should not allow to create order directly system should mandatorily ask for quotation. How to do this?

* Copy OR to ZOR. And 'OR' Reference Mandatory 'Blank' and Keep 'ZOR' Reference Mandatory as 'B' And assign that sales document type to their particular Sales Area.

Class (37) 10/05/14.

(ii) Check Division: This field controls how system should respond if the Division in the Header deviates from division in the item. That is whether to give warning message or error message or No message.

(iii) Item Division: If you check this then while creating sales order the line item division will be copied from material master. If you unchek this then the line item division will copied from Header division.

* Item division should be always checked otherwise it will effect the Reports.

(iv) Probability: This field specifies the chances of converting the document type into order.

* SAP standard says Inquiry converting into order is 30% And Quotation converting into order is 70%.

(v) Read Info Record: This field is applicable only for CMIR.
* If you check this then system will read CMIR and determine it into Sales document. If you uncheck this then system will not read CMIR and system will not determine it into Sales document.

(vi) Check Purchase order Number: If you maintain this field then while creating sales order system will check the combination of customer and PO Number in previous orders. If the same combination exist in Previous orders then system will give message.
* The Purpose of this field is it will avoid the duplication of Sales order.

(vii) Enter PO Number: If you check this then the & while creating Sales order if PO Number is blank then sales order Number will be copied as PO Number.

(viii) Commitment Date: If you maintain this field then system will display the extra field in Schedule lines Tab. That is committed Quantity. Any order with commited quantity will be given first preference while delivering the goods to customers.

(ix) Check credit Limit: This field will be used for credit Management Process. Credit Management is Managing the credit limits of the Customers.
* Credit Management can be processed in two ways.
(1) Simple credit check
(2) Automatic credit check

* This field controls whether to process simple credit check or Automatic credit check.
* If you want to Process simple credit check they maintain either A or B or C in check credit limit. And if you want to Process Automatic credit check they maintain D.
* 'A' means Run simple credit check and give warning Message.
* 'B' Run simple credit check and give error message.
* 'C' Run simple credit check and assign delivery Block.

Simple Credit check	Automatic credit check
(1) In simple credit check if Customer's credit limit exceeds they you can block only at order Level.	(1) In Automatic credit check if customer's credit limit exceeds they you can block at order Level or Delivery Level or PGI Level.
(2) In Simple credit check there is no concept of Risk categories.	(2) In Automatic credit check we have risk categories. That is High, Medium and Low Risk. High Risk — order Level Medium Risk — Delivery Level Low Risk — PGI Level.
(3) In Simple credit check system consider only receivables while Performing credit check.	(3) In Automatic system considers open order values, open Delivery values, open Invoice values and open item values.

Class (38) 12/05/14

Credit Group:

* We use this field only for Automatic credit check. This field control which transaction should block if customers Cr. limit exceeds. That is whether to block at order or Delivery or Invoice.

Material entry type: This field controls how to search the material while creating sales document. That is with material Number or with Product catalog.

Transaction Flow:

(i) **Screen Sequence Group:** This field controls which screen should be determined while creating sales document.

(ii) **Display Range:** This field controls whether to display all items or only main items into sales document.

creating Bill of Material (BOM):

create Main Material: Ex: computer (cpu, Monitor, keyboard, Mouse)

* In BOM for main material in sales org. 2 view maint item category Group as 'ERLA'.
* create material for main item, and each component.
* For all components item category Group is NORM. Only for Header item we will maintain either "ERLA" or "LUMF". If you want BOM Header Pricing they maintain item category Group as ERLA or if you want BOM item pricing they maintain item category Group as LUMF.

* The T. code to maintain BOM is "CS01".

* Mention the main material, mention your plant, mention BOM usage as "5". And press Enter.

* Maintain the components and Quantity. Some components will have more than 1 Qty in our example (computer) each component have only 1 Qty.

* And Save it.

(iii) <u>In completion Procedure</u>: This Procedure consists of List of Mandatory fields which user has to enter Mandatorily while creating sales document. If any of the Mandatory field missing then either system will not allow to save the Sales document or even if system will allow to save the status of the sales document will be incomplete. And you can not process Incomplete documents.

(iv) <u>F code for overview Screen</u>: This field controls which screen should be displayed by default while creating sales order.

(v) <u>Transaction Group</u>: Transaction Group controls the T. code of the sales document type.

9951 594336

Class (39) 13/05/14

Document Pricing Procedure:

* This field is one of the Parameter to determine Pricing Procedure in Sales document.
* The Pricing procedure determines based on Sales area, document Pricing procedure and Customer Pricing Procedure.
* We use different Document pricing procedure for different document type and we use different customer pricing procedure for different customers.

Status Profile: Status profile is a order release Process. After creating sales order by end user the order will be send to Authorized people (SM, GM) to cross check the sales order and to Release. After Releasing the order they only system will allow to create delivery and Invoice.

Alternate Sales document type 1 and Alternate Sales document type 2:

* This will help to shift the sales documents from one document type to another document type. We maintain this if users are confusing between any two document types. This will save the time of End user.

Variant: If you wantto control the fields in Sales document they we use variant (Transaction variant).

* Controlling the fields means whether to make the field mand-atory or optional or display or supress.

* The T.code to create Transaction variant SHD0 → zero.
* Mention the Transaction code (Ex: if in order they va01) and mention Transaction variant (Something). Press enter and enter and click on create. And Press enter, and click on continue. And enter Customer Number and material, quantity and keep pressing on continue and make the fields as you want to and keep saving all the screens by pressing Local object.

Quotation Messages: If you maintain this they while creating Sales order independently the system will check is there any open Quotations existing for this Customer or not. If yes they System will propose the List of open Quotations.

Outline ~~arrangem~~ agreemant Messages: If you maintain this they while creating sales order system will check for this Customer is there any open contracts existing or not. If yes they System will propose the List of open contracts.

Incomplete Messages: This field controls whether to save the incomplete document or Not.

* If you check this they system will not allow to save the incomplete document. If you Uncheck this they system will allow to save incomplete document.

Shipping

Class (40) 14/05/14

Delivery Type: If you maintain Delivery type here then it automatically determines while creating Delivery document.

* The standard Delivery type is LF.
* Cash sale delivery type is BV.
* Return Delivery type is LR.
* Delivery without order reference LO.
* STO Delivery type NL.
* STO Return Delivery type NLR.
* Inter company STO Delivery type NLCC.
* Inter company STO Return Delivery type NCR.

(ii) **Immediate Delivery:** We maintain this field only for Cash sale (CS) and Rush order (RO). This field controls that while creating sales order system automatically creates delivery in the Background.

* If you maintain "X" then System will create delivery if quantity is confirmed.
* If you maintain "A" then irrespective of Quantity confirmation system will create Delivery.

Delivery Block: If you maintain Delivery Block then the order will be automatically Blocked for Delivery. The Authorized person has to cross check and release the Delivery block. Then only system will allow to create Delivery.

Shipping conditions: If you maintain shipping conditions in Document types then it over writes the shipping conditions in Customer Master while determining shipping point into Sales Document.

* We maintain shipping conditions in Document types for cash sale and Rush order to determine Immediate shipping point.

Ship and cost Info profile: This will help to plan the shipments in sales order itself.

Billing

Delivery related Billing type and order related Billing type:

* Delivery related Billings are OR, RO, CI, DS.
* Order related Billings are CS, RE, CONR, CR, DR.
* If you maintain Billing type here then system automatically determines it while creating Invoice.
* The standard Billing type is F2.
* Cash sales Billing type is BV.
* Returns Billing type is RE.
* Consignment Returns Billing type RE.
* Credit Memo Billing type G2.
* Debit Memo Billing type L2.
* Profarma Invoice order related F5.
* Profarma Invoice Delivery related F8. (no accounting document)
* Invoice cancellation is S1.
* Returns and Credit Memo Invoice cancellation S2.
* Inter company Billing type TV.

* Intercompany Billing type IV.

Billing Block: If you maintain Billing Block they system will automatically Block the order for Billing. They the Authorized person has to check the order and release the block they only System will allow to create Billing.

* In Standard RE, CR, DR, RK and CONR will have Billing Block and we call these documents as complaints.

Condition type Line item: We have two cost condition Types.

(1) EK01 (2) EK02.

* We use EK01 if selling price is totally dependent on cost.
* We use EK02 if ~~selling~~ cost is only statistical. That is selling price does not have any effect on cost.
cost does not have any effect on selling price.

Billing Plan type: We have two types of Billing plans.

(1) Periodic Billing (2) Milestone Billing.

Periodic Billing: Billing based on Regular intervals. Ex: Monthly Billing. We use Monthly Billing in Rental contracts and Service contracts.

Milestone Billing: (Activity base billing). That is Billing based on Work done. Ex: Constructions, contracts etc.

Lead time in days: If you maintain lead time in days here they it overwrites the RLT in Material Master while performing Delivery Scheduling.
↳ Replenishment lead time.

Propose Delivery Date: If you check this they by default system proposes todays (order date) date as Requested Delivery date while creating Sales order.

Propose PO date: If you check this system will propose todays date as PO date while creating Sales order.

Date type: This field controls whether to Propose Delivery dates in day format or week format.

Proposal for pricing date: This field controls on what basis the pricing date should be determine into Sales document. That is based on today's date or based on Requested delivery date.

Class (41) 16/05/14

Client's Requirements:

(1) client's Requirement is they want to take order Division wise.

(2) Client's requirement is that they want to restrict the duplic-ation of sales order?

(3) client's requirement is for dealers and distributors they want to create order directly. For Institutions and Direct customers they want to create order with reference to Quotation?

(4) The Users are confusing between two document types instead one document type they are creating order with another docum-ent type?

(5) The client's requirement if order is incomplete they system should not allow to save that particular order?

(6) client's requirement is after creating sales order by user the order will be sent to Authorized People to cross check and release. After release they only system should allow to create delivery and Invoice?

(7) client's requirement is they do not want to change some fields in Sales document?

(8) client's requirement is while doing Rush order process they want to determine immediate shipping point?

(9)

Item categories

* Item category controls the line item the data of the Sales document.

Process	Document type	Item category
Inquiry	IN	AFN
Quotation	QT	AGN
Order	OR	TAN
Rush order	RO	TAN
Cash sales	CS	BVN
Returns	RE	REN
Credit Memo Request	CR	G2N

Process	Document type	Item Category
Debit Memo Request	DR	L2N
Invoice correction Request	RK	G2N
Free of charge	FD	KLN
Subsequent Delivery Free of charge	SDF	KLN
Quantity contract	QC	KMN
Value contract General	WK1	WKN
Value contract Material Specific	WK2	WKN
Scheduling agreement	DS	LPN
Consignment Fill up	CF	KBN
Consignment Issue	CI	KEN
consignment Returns	CONR	KRN
consignment Pick up	CP	KAN

* Item category for free goods — TANN.
* Item category for Third Party — TAS.
* Item category for IPO — TAB.
* Item category for make to order — TAK.
* Item category for variant configuration — TAC.
* Service Item category — TAD.
* Third Party Returns — TASG.
* STO item — NLN.

* STO Returns — NLRN.
* Inter company STO — NLC.
* Inter company STO Returns — NCRN.
* BOM Header Pricing item category is

for main item — TAQ

for components — TAE

computer → TAQ
- cpu
- Monitor
- Mouse

TAE

* BOM item pricing item category is

for main item — TAP

for components — TAN

computer → TAP
- cpu.
- Monitor
- Mouse

TAN.

<u>Material Determination</u>: <u>Header Pricing</u>:

* X → TAX
  - Y → TAPS sub

X — Item that run out of stock or Do not manufacture.

Y — Replaced Item.

* Material Determination for Item pricing.

X → TAPA

Y → TAN.

* The T. code for Defining item category is VOV7.
* Spro → S&D → Sales → Sales Documents → Sales document Item → Define Item categories.

* Select the Item category you want to define and click on copy. say yes after saving it.

Item category controls (VOV7):

① **Item type**: This field specifies whether the item is Standard item or text item or value item or Packaging item.

Standard item → The item we sell it to the customer.

Text item → which we do not sell but give along with the product.

* Standard item is the item which we sell to customers.
* Text item is the item which consist of some information and which we deliver to customer without selling. (Ex: User Manuals)
* value item is the item which consist of some value and which we deliver to customer without selling. (Gift vouchers)
* Packaging item is an item which will be used to pack the main item.
* The item category for Text item is TATX.
* The item category for value item TAW.

② **Business item**: This field controls whether to change the business data ~~at~~ item level or not. If you check this then system will allow to change the business data at item Level and if you Uncheck this then system will not allow to change the business data at item Level.

* Business data will be copied from Sales, Shipping and Billing Tabs.

Completion Rule:

Class (42) 17/05/14

* This field controls when the status of the Line item should be completed.
* If you want to check the status of the sales document (any) then go to the change mode of that particular sales document and click on status button.
* The completion Rule for AFN (Inquiry) is "A".
* "A" means item will be completed with the first reference irresp-ective of the Quantity.)
* The completion Rule for Quotation is "B"
* "B" means item will be completed once you refer the Total Quantity.
* The completion Rule for Quantity contract (KMN) is "C".
* "C" means item will be completed once you refer Target Quantity.
* The completion Rule for value contract is "E". (WKM)
* "E" means item will be completed once you refer Target value.

Q: Why completion Rule is not applicable for (TAN)?

A: Because the completion Rule is applicable only between Sales document to Sales document. And After order we create Delivery. And both are not Sales documents. That is the Reason completion Rule is not applicable for TAN.

Schedule line allowed: This field controls whether the item is relevant for schedule lines or not. If you check this then only system will determine schedule line Tab into Sales document. If you uncheck this system will not determine schedule lines Tab into Sales document.

* The below item categories will have schedule lines allowed Unchecked.

① Credit Memo Request (G2N) ② Debit Memo request (L2N)
③ Quantity contract (KMN) ④ value contract (WKN)
⑤ Text item (TATX) ⑥ value item (TAW)

* Any item if schedule lines allowed is uncheck then system will display the Quantity as Target Quantity.

Item relevant for Delivery: This field is applicable only for Text item or Value item.

* If Text item or value item relevant for delivery then we have to check this field.

* Because the Text item and the value item schedule lines allowed is Uncheck. with out schedule lines we can not create delivery but if you check item Relevant for delivery then system allow to create delivery with out schedule lines data.

**Special stock: This field controls which stock should be considered while doing delivery. That is whether to consider Unrestricted stock or consignment stock (W) or sales order stock (E).

* The below item categories will have special stock indicator "W".

① KEN (consignment issue) ② consignment Returns (KRN)

Special Stock indicator "W".

* The below item categories will have special stock indicator "E".

① Make to order (TAK) ② IPO (TAB)

Special Stock Indicator "E".

* Remaining all item categories will have special stock indicator as Blank (" ").

Alkem X = 10,000
−6,000
4,000

Appollo customer 6,000
−2,500
3,500
+300

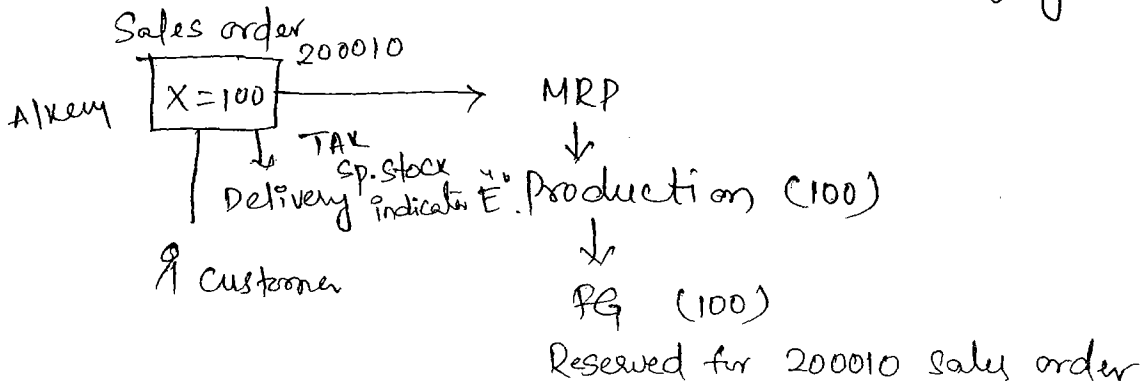
Consignment Fill up 6,000	Consignment Issue 21500	CONR 300
↓	↓	↓
Delivery	Delivery 2500	Return Delivery 300

* When we do delivery in consignment Issue the stock will be reduced from consignment stock and the control is special stock indicator "W" in item category KEN.

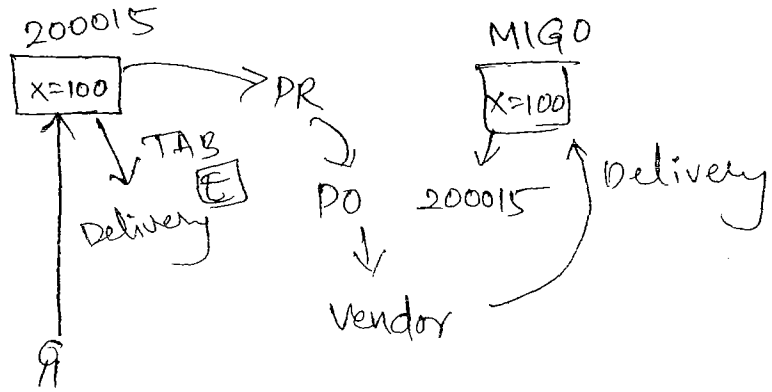
* In consignment Returns when you do return Delivery the

Stock will be ~~reduced~~ added to consignment stock. And the control is special stock indicator "W" in KRN item category.

* In Make to order Process after manufacturing the finished goods the stock will be reserved to that particular Sales order Number. And in Make to order Process while doing delivery system will consider Sales order stock and the control is special stock indicator "E" in item category TAK.



IPO Process:



* In IPO Process when we do MIGO the stock will be reserved to that Particular Sales order Number. And while doing delivery system will consider Sales order stock. And the control is special stock indicator "E" in item category TAB.

Class (43) 19/05/14

Billing Relevance: This field controls whether the item is Relevant for Billing or not. And it also controls whether the item is relevant for order related billing or Delivery related billing.

* The below item categories are not relevant for Billing.

(1) KLN (2) KBN (3) KAN (4) AFN (5) AGN (6) WKN (7) KMN (8) TAE.

* The below are the Delivery related Billing relevance. ("—")

(1) TAN (2) LPN (3) KEN (4) TAB (5) TAK (6) TAQ (7) TAX (8) TAC ("A")

* The below item categories are Order related billing.

(1) BVN — "B" - Order related billing status according to order quantity.

(2) REN (3) KRN (4)

* The below item categories will have Billing relevance "C" (order related billing status according to Target quantity.

(1) G2N (2) L2N. — "C" — Because shedule lines is Unchecked.

* **Billing Relevance "D"**: (Relevant for Proforma Invoice)

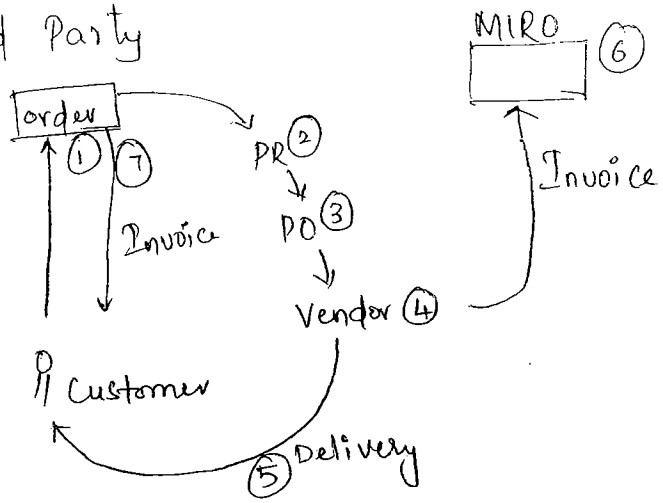
* For KBN and KLN and NLN (Stock transfer) we maintain Billing relevance as "D".

Billing Relevance "F": (Order related billing status according to Invoice quantity (Vendor Invoice)).

* Billing relevance "F" used only third Party Process.

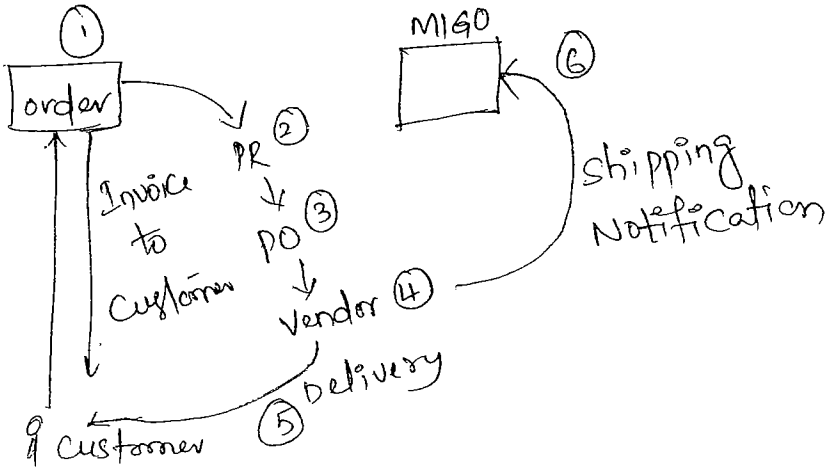
* This field controls that with out MIRO we can not create Customer Invoice

Third Party



* Billing relevance "F" controls that system will not allow to create Invoice to Customer with out MIRO.

Third Party with shipping notification. (Billing Relevance "G")



* Billing relevance controls that in third Party with shipping notification system will not allow to create Invoice to customer with out MIGO.

<u>Billing Relevance "K"</u> (Delivery related Invoices for Partial quantity) – It controls that how to Partial Invoice quantity.

<u>Billing Relevance "M"</u>:

* In case of Batches system will determine 'Zero' quantity line item into Invoice. To restrict zero quantity line item in Invoice.

click on selection list to change quantity in Invoice

Returns: This field specifies whether the item going out or coming in.

* The below item categories will have return check.

① REN ② KRN ③ KAN ④ G2N.

Q: My Document value is displaying in Negative what could be the reason?

A: Some one might have check Returns.

Weight/Volume Relevance: If you check this then system will calculate the weight and determine it into sales document line item.

Credit active: This field controls whether to update the line item value into credit management or not. If you check this then only the line item value will updated into credit management and if you uncheck this then the line item value will not be updated into credit management.

Determine cost: This field is Pre requisite to determine VPRS condition type (cost) into sales document.

* If you check this then only VPRS condition type will be determined it into sales document and If you uncheck then VPRS condition type will not determine into sales document.

Billing Plan type: If you maintain Billing Plant type in document type then that will be applicable to total line items.

* If you maintain Billing Plan type in item Category then it will be

Billing Block: If you maintain Billing block in document types then that will be applicable to total document.

* If you maintain Billing Block in item Category then it will be applicable to a Particular line item.

Class (44) 20/05/14

** Pricing: This field controls whether the item is relevant for Pricing or not. And it also controls whether the item is relevant for normal pricing or Free goods Pricing.

* If the item is not relevant for price then we maintain pricing as Blank ("—").

* If the item is relevant for Price then we maintain Pricing as "X".

* If the item is relevant for free goods price then we maintain pricing as "B". (B Means 100% discount).

* The below item categories are not relevant for price.

(1) KLN (2) KAN (3) KBN (4) TAE (5) TAP (6) TAPS (7) TAPA (8) TATX (Text item) (9) TAW (value item).

* The Below item categories are relevant for free goods Pricing.

(1) TANN (Free goods) — TANN ("B"-pricing).

* If pricing is blank then system will not determine the price into Sales document. If pricing is "B" then R100 condition determines make the net value "zero".

* If pricing is "X" then the price will be determined into Sales document.

Statistical value: BOM Header Pricing

computer — 16,000 — TAQ — X
- cpu — TAE — " — "
- Monitor — TAE — " — "
- Mouse — TAE — " — "
- Key board — TAE — " — "

computer — TAQ — 16,000 X
- cpu — TAE Pricing as "X"
- Monitor — TAE Statistical
- Keyboard — TAE value as "X"
- Mouse — TAE

* If you maintain statistical value then the line item value is inactive. That is the line item value doesnot have any effect on Net value.

Automatic Batch determination (General control): If you check this then the Batch Number will be determined automatically into sales document.

Rounding permitted: If you check this then system will perform Rounding for Quantity decimals.

Order Quantity = 1: If you check this then system will restrict each line item quantity to 1.

Create PO automatic: We use this field only for Third Party and IPO Process. If you check this then while creating sales order in third party and IPO system automatically creates PO in the background.

Structure Scope: This field controls whether to explode BOM or not and it also controls whether to explode single level BOM or multi level BOM.

* We use structure scope only for TAQ and TAP.
* 'A' means single level BOM.
* 'B' means explode multi level BOM.
* Multi level BOM — computer
  - Mouse
  - Keyboard
  - Cpu
    - Harddisk
    - RAM

Value contract Material: We will use this only for value ~~general~~ contract general (WKN). Because value contract general is not specific to one material it is for Group of materials. And without material system will not allow to create document. So we maintain dummy material here and which will be determined into value contract general document.

Contract release control: This field controls how system should respond if the release order value exceeds contract value. That is whether to give warning message or error message or No message.

Class (45) 21/05/14.

The differences between two document types:

(1) WK1 | WK2

Screen sequence Group is difference.

(2) FD | SDF

Reference Mandatory (FD ☐ and SDF [C])

(3) CS | RO

Delivery type BV LF

Billing type BV F2.

(4) OR | CI

(5) RE | CONR

Item category differences:

① AFN | AGN

completion Rule [A] | [B]

② TAN | REN

Return ☐ | Return ☑

Credit active ☑ | credit active ☐

Billing Relevance [A] | Billing relevance [B]

③ TAN | BVN

Credit active ☑ | ☐

Billing relevance [A] | [B]

④ REN | G2N

Schedule line allowed ☑ | ☐

Billing relevance [B] | [C]

⑤ G2N | L2N

Credit active ☐ | ☑

Returns ☑ | ☐

⑥ TAN | TAQ

Structure Scope ☐ | Structure Scope A or B.

⑦ TAQ | TAP

Pricing [X] | Pricing ☐

(8) WKN KMN

completion Rule [C] completion Rule [C]

Value contract Material [X] value contract material [ ]

contract release control [B] contract release control [ ].

(9) TAN KEN

special stock [ ] special stock [W]

(10) REN KRN

special stock [ ] special stock [W]

(11) TAN TAS

Billing relevance [A] Billing relevance [F]

(12) TAS TAB

Billing relevance [F] Billing relevance [A]

Special stock [ ] special stock [E]

(13) TAQ TAE

Pricing [X] pricing [ ]

Billing relevance [A] Billing relevance [ ]

Structure scope [A] structure scope [ ]

Item category Determination: When ever we create sales document system automatically determines Item category.

* The T. code for Item category determination is VOV4.
* We can not create a sales document with out Item category.
* Path: Spro → S&D → Sales → Sales documents → Sales document Item → Assign item categories.
* The item category determines based on
  1. Sales document type
  2. Item category group.
  3. Item usage.
  4. Higher Level item category.
* From the above combination we determine Item category and we call it as Default Item category.
* Create new document type and new Item category. And assign document type to Item category in VOV4.

Rounding Permitted: If you check this then System will Perform Rounding for Quantity decimals.

Order Quantity = 1: If you check this then system will restrict the each line item Quantity to 1.

Create PO automatic: We use this field only for Third party and IPO Process. If you check this then while creating sales order in third party and IPO process system automatically creates PO in the background.

Structure Scope: This field controls whether to explode BOM or not. And it also controls whether to explode Single Level BOM or Multi level BOM.

* We use Structure Scope only for TAQ and TAP.
* "A" Means single level BOM.
* "B" Means explode Multi Level BOM.
* Multi Level BOM ——— Computer
  - Mouse
  - CPU
    - Hard disk
    - RAM.

Value contract Material: We will use this only for value contract general (WKN). Because the Value contract general is not specific to one material it is for group of Material. And with out Material system will not allow to create document. So we maintain Dummy material here and which will be determined into value contract general document.

contract release control: This field controls how system should respond if the release order value exceeds contract value. That is whether to give warning message or error message or No message.

Differences b/w two document types: Class (45) 21/05/14.

(1) Order (OR) i) Immediate Delivery ☐ ii) Shipping conditions ☑	Rush order (RO) Immediate Delivery ☑ Shipping conditions ☐
(2) Credit Memo request (CR) i) document category 'K' ii) Billing type 'G2'	Debit Memo Request (DR) document category 'L' Billing type 'LV'
(3) Inquiry (IN) i) Document category 'A'	Quotation (QT) Document category 'B'
(4) Returns (RE) i) Document category 'H' ii) Delivery type 'LR' iii) Billing type 'R'	Order (OR) Document category 'C' Delivery type 'LN' Billing type 'L'
(5) Credit Memo Request (CR) i) Indicator ☐ ii) Reference Mandatory ☐	Invoice Correction Request (RK) Indicator [D] Reference Mandatory ☑
(6) Free of charge (FD) i) Reference Mandatory ☐	Sub sequent delivery FOC (SDF) Reference Mandatory ☑
(7) Cash Sale (CS) i) Delivery type 'BV' ii) Billing type 'BV'	Rush order (RO) Delivery type 'LF' Billing type 'F2'
(8) Value contract general (WK1) i) Screen Sequence group	value contract material specific (WK2) Screen sequence Group
(9) order (OR)	consignment Issue (CI)
(10) Returns (RE)	consignment returns (CONR)

Differences b/w two item categories:

① Inquiry (AFN) i) completion Rule [A]	Quotation (AGN) completion Rule [B]
② order (TAN) i) Return [ ] ii) Credit active [✓] iii) Billing Relevance [A]	Returns (REN) Return [✓] Credit active [ ] Billing relevance [B]
③ Order (TAN) i) Credit active [✓] ii) Billing relevance [A]	Cash sale (BVN) Credit active [ ] Billing relevance [B]
④ Returns (REN) i) Schedule lines allowed [✓] ii) Billing relevance [B]	Credit Memo Request (G2N) Schedule line allowed [ ] Billing relevanc [C]
⑤ Credit Memo Request (G2N) i) Credit active [ ] ii) Returns [✓]	Debit Memo request (L2N) Credit active [✓] Returns [ ]
⑥ Order (TAN) i) Structure Scope [ ]	BOM Header pricing main item (TAQ, Structure Scope A or B.
⑦ TAQ (BOM Header pricing Main Item) i) Pricing	BOM item pricing main item (TAP) Pricing
⑧ Value contract general (WKN) i) completion Rule [E] ii) value contract Material [X] iii) contract Release Control [B]	Quantity contract (KMN). completion Rule [C] value contract Material [ ] contract release control [ ]
⑨ Order (TAN) i) Special stock [ ]	Consignment Issue (KEN) Special stock [W]
⑩ Returns (REN) i) Special stock [ ]	consignment Returns (KRN) Special stock [W]

(11) Order (TAN) i) Billing relevance [A]	Third party (TAS) Billing relevance [F]
(12) Third Party (TAS) i) Billing relevance [ ] ii) Special stock [ ]	IPO (TAB) Billing relevance [A] Special stock [E]
(13) BOM Header Pricing Main item (TAQ) i) Pricing [X] ii) Billing relevance [A] iii) Structure Scope [A]	BOM Header pricing Sub item (TAE) Pricing [ ] Billing relevance [ ] Structure Scope [ ]

Item Category Determination

* When ever we create sales document system automatically determines Item category. And we can not create a sales document with out item category.
* The T. code for Item category determination VOV4.
* SPRO → Sales and distribution → Sales → sales documents → Sales document type → Assign item categories.
* The item category determines based on

(1) Sales document type
(2) Item category group
(3) Item Usage
(4) Higher Level item category

} = Default item category.

* From above combination we determine item category and we call it as Default item category.
* Create new document type and new item category. And assign document type to Item category in VOV4.

* We Knew Sales document type. So we go to next item. Class (40) 22/07/14.

(2) Item category group: We have this field in Material Master Sales org. 2 view. The Standard item category group is NORM.

* Item category group for Third party Material is BANS.
* Item category group for IPO Material is BANC.
* Item category group for Make to order Material is 0001.
* Item category group for variant Material is 0002.
* Item category group for BOM Header pricing Header item is ERLA.
* Item category group for BOM item pricing Header item is LUMF.
* System considers item category group to determine different item category based on Material.

X — TAN	←	X	Standard NORM.
Y — TAB	←	Y	Third party BANS.
A — TAB	←	A	IPO BANC
B — TAK	←	B	Make to order 0001
C — TAC	←	C	Variant 0002
D — TAQ	←	D	BOM Header pricing Header item ERLA.
E — TAP	←	E	BOM ~~Header~~ Pricing Header item LUMF Item

(3) Item Usage: System considers item usage when ever sub item is automatically determining into sales document other than BOM.

* (1) The below scenarios Sub item automatically determines into Sales document.

(i) Free goods.
(ii) Material determination.
(iii) cross selling.

(1) Material determination Header Pricing Header item

X — TAX
└ Y

(2) Material determination Item pricing Header item

X — TAPA
└ Y

(2) System considers item usage to determine different item category with the same combination of document type and item category group. (Material determination Header pricing Header item and material determination Item pricing Header item).

(4) <u>Higher Level Item Category</u>: System considers Higher level item category to determine item category for Sub item.

* The below scenarios you will have Sub item.

(1) Free goods

(2) Material Determination

(3) Cross Selling

(4) BOM.

* For free Goods item usage is FREE.
* Item usage for Cross Selling goods is CSEL.
* Item usage for Material determination Header pricing header item is PSHP.
* Item usage for Material determination Header pricing Sub item is PSEL.
* Item usage for Material determination Item pricing Header item is PSA1.
* Item usage for Material determination Item pricing Sub item is PSA2.

Scenario ①: Item category determination based on only sales document type:

Sales document type	IN	QT	OR	RO	CS	RE	CR	DR	RK	FD	SDF	QC	WK1	WK2	DS	CF	CP	CI	CONR
Item cat. group	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM	NORM
Item Usage	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Higher Level Item Cat.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Default item category	AFN	AGN	TAN	TAN	BVN	REN	G2N	L2N	G2N	KLN	KLN	KMN	WKN	WKN	LPN	KBN	KAN	KEN	KRN

Scenario ②: Item category determination based on Item category group:

Sales document type	OR	OR	OR	OR	OR	OR	OR
Item category Group	NORM	BANS	BANC	0001	0002	ERLA	LUMF
Item Usage	—	—	—	—	—	—	
Higher Level Item category	—	—	—	—	—	—	
Default item category	TAN	TAS	TAB	TAK	TAC	TAQ	TAP

* Client's requirement is any customer if he purchase slow moving item then system should not update this line item value into credit Management.

Ans: (1) Copy TAN to XTAN and Uncheck Credit active in XTAN.

(2) Create new item category group

SPRO → Sales and distribution → sales → sales documents → Sales document item → Define item category groups.

* Go to new entries.

* XORM Slow moving items.

(3) Go to the Slow moving item and assign the new item category group for item A, B and C.

(4) Define item category determination → VOV4.

* Go to new entries and mention the below.

* OR XORM XTAN..

Class (47) 23/05/14.

Scenario (3):

Item category determination based on Higher level item category:

* System considers Higher Level item category when system is determining item category for Sub item.

* The below Scenarios we will have Sub item.

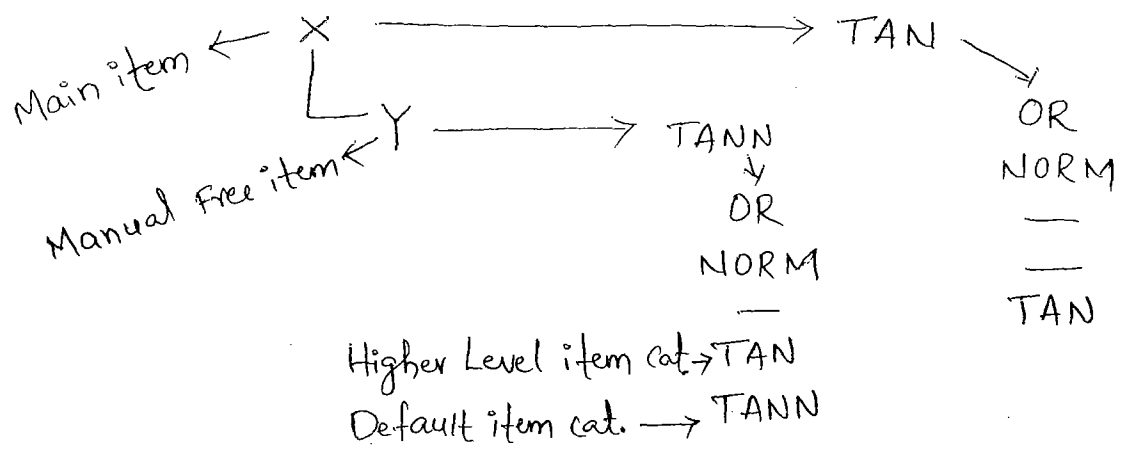
(1) Free goods

(2) BOM

(3) Material determination

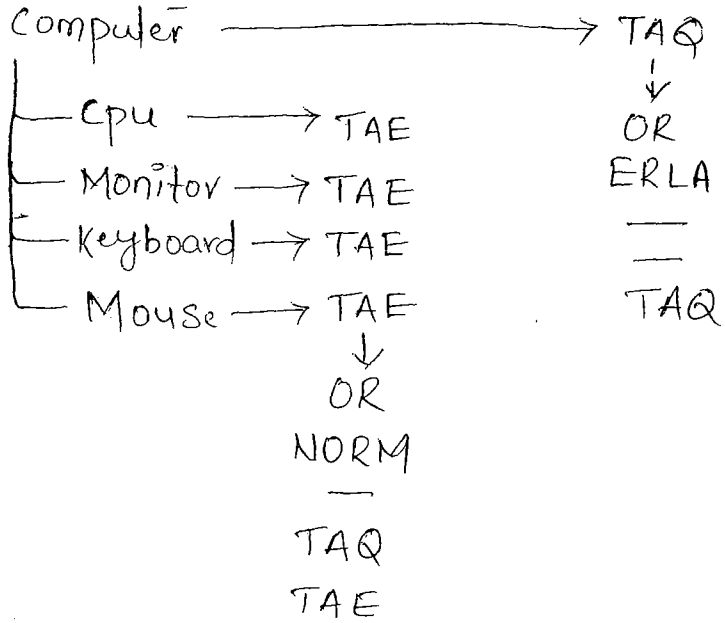
(4) Cross selling.

① Manual Free goods:



* From above X is the main item and Y is a Free good item and we have to determine item category for Y by using Higher Level item category as it has ~~an~~ Higher level item which X so we determine it by giving X's item category as Higher level item category for Y.

② BOM Header Pricing:



* All the components will have standard item category group.
* From above all the components item category group is (TAE) NORM and we determined it by using Higher level item category ~~group~~ TAQ.

③ BOM Header Pricing Multi Level BOM:

Computer → OR
ERLA
—
—
TAQ

- Mouse → TAE
- Keyboard → TAE
- Monitor → TAE
- Cpu → TAE

} → OR
NORM
—
TAQ
TAE

- Harddisk → TAE
- RAM → TAE

} → OR
NORM
—
TAE
TAE

④ BOM item pricing:

Computer → TAP
↓
OR
LUMF
—
—
TAP

- Cpu → TAN
- Monitor → TAN
- Keyboard → TAN
- Mouse → TAN

} → OR
NORM
—
TAP
TAN

⑤ BOM Item pricing Multi Level BOM:

Computer → TAP
↓
OR
LUMF
—
—
TAP

- Keyboard → ZTAN
- Mouse → ZTAN
- Monitor → ZTAN
- Cpu → ZTAN

} → OR
NORM
—
TAP
ZTAN

- Harddisk → TAE
- RAM → TAE
  ↓ OR
  NORM
  —
  ZTAN

Scenario (4): Item Usage item category determination:

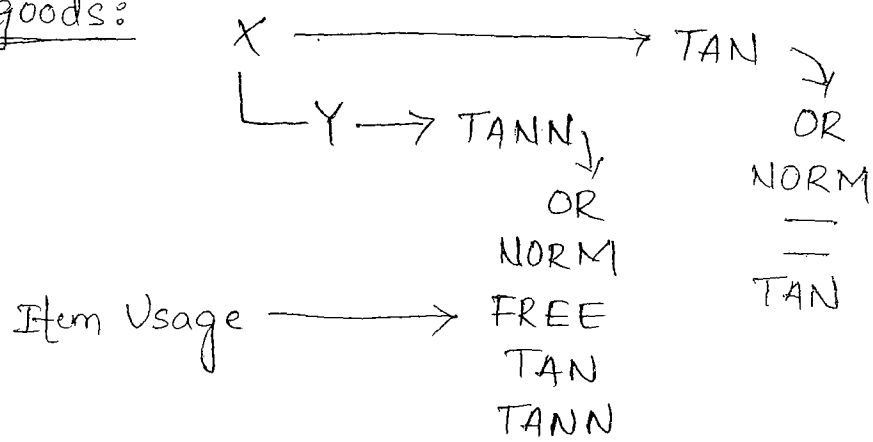
(1) System considers item usage when ever Sub item is automatically determining into sales document other than BOM.

* The below Scenarios system consider Item Usage.

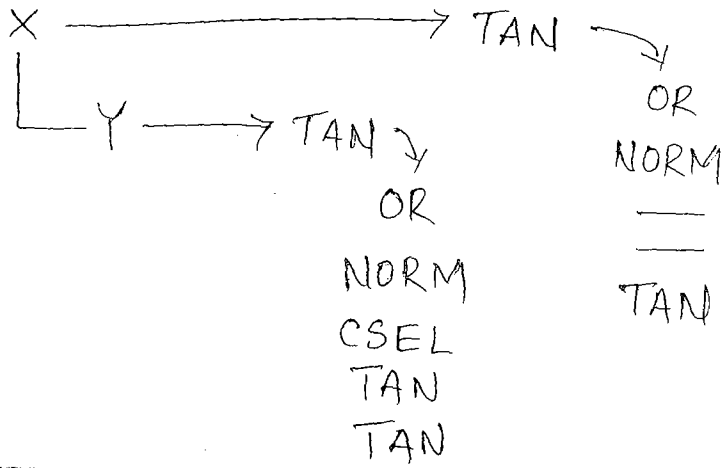
(i) Automatic Free goods (ii) Material determination (iii) cross selling.

* The Usage standard for free goods is **FREE.**
* The Usage for Cross selling is **CSEL**
* Material determination Header pricing Main item is **PSHP**
* Material determination Header pricing Sub item is **PSEL**.
* Material determination Item pricing Main item is **PSA1**.
* Material determination Item pricing Sub item is **PSA2**.

(i) Automatic Free goods:



(ii) Cross Selling:



(iii) Material determination Header pricing:

X → TAX → OR, NORM, PSHP, TAX

└ Y → TAPS → OR, NORM, PSEL, TAX, TAPS

(2) System considers item usage when ever you want to determine different item category with the same combination of document type and item category group.

Ex: (i) Material determination Header pricing Header item.

(ii) Material determination Item pricing Header item.

(iv) Material determination Item pricing:

X → TAPA → OR, NORM, PSA1, TAPA

└ Y → TAN → OR, NORM, PSA2, TAPA, TAN

Class (48) 24/05/14

* Item Usage will be considered automatically by the system based on the Process. Item Usage can be controlled Manually in CMIR.

** client's requirement is some customers if they Purchase some slow moving items system should not update the value into credit Management. How to do this?

Step (1): create new Item Usage → X 001.

Path: Spro → Sales and distribution → Sales → Sales document → Sales document item → Define item category Usage.

* X001 → New item Usage. And save it.

Step (2): Maintain CMIR for the customer and Material combination,

* T.code VD51.
* Enter details. Customer 100214
  Sales org. D100
  Distribution ch. D1

100214
100215
100216

X
Y
Z

* Maintain X — X1, Y — Y1, Z — Z1 } → customer Material code.
* Go to Details Tab change Usage for all Materials (X,Y,Z) to X001.
* Do the Same steps for Customers 100215 and 100216 too.

Step (3): Item category Determination

* T. code VOV4 ..
* Go to new entries.

OR

NORM

X001

—

XTAN.

Step (4):

* create order.

Schedule line categories: schedule line categories controls the schedule line data of the Sales document.

Process	Document Type	Item category	Schedule line Category.
Inquiry	IN	AFN	AN or AT
Quotation	QT	AGN	BN or BT.
Order	OR	TAN	
Rush order	RO	TAN	
Cash sale	CS	BVN	
Free of delivery	FD	KLN	CN or CP
Subsequent Delivery FOC	SDF	KLN	
Make to order	TAK	TAK	
Variant configuration	TAC	TAC	
BOM Header pricing Header item	TAQ	TAQ	
Returns	RE	REN	DN
Consignment fill up	CF	KBN	E1
Consignment Issue	CI	KEN	C1
Consignment Returns	CONR	KRN	D0
Consignment Pick up	CP	KAN	F1
STO (Stock Transfer)		NLN	NN
STO Returns		NLRN	NR
Inter company STO		NLC	NC
Inter company STO Returns		NCRN	NS
Third Party		TAS	CS
IPO		TAB	CB
BOM Header Pricing Sub item & Bom item pricing Main item		TAE and TAP	CT
Material det. Header Pricing Main item		TAX	CX
Mat. det. Header Pricing Sub item		TAPS	PP
Mat. det. item pricing Main item		TAPA	CD

* The T. code to define Schedule line category is [VOV6].
* Path: SPRO → Sales and distribution → Sales → sales document → Schedule lines → Define schedule line category.
* The standard schedule line category is [CP.]

Schedule Line Category Controls:

① **Delivery Block:** If you assign Delivery Block here then it will be applicable particular schedule lines but if you assign delivery block in Document types then it will be applicable to total document.

* Each item can have multiple line items and each line item can have multiple schedule lines.

order

[X = 100] ⇒ No Stock ⇒

25/05 — 30 Qty
28/05 — 40 Qty
30/05 — 30 Qty

} Schedule line Deliveries.

② **Movement Types:** Every physical movement of goods requires Movement type informations.

* Movement Types controls the below.

(i) It Updates the stock.

(ii) It will controls the Inventory accounting document.

* System considers Movement type while doing PGI.

(i) **Standard schedule line category (CP) Movement Type 601:**

Effect: (a) Stock will be Reduced from Unrestricted Stock.

(b) Inventory accounting document generates. And the accounting entry is Cost of Goods sold a/c Dr. TO

Inventory a/c Cr.

(ii) The movement type for Reverse PGI is 602:

* The T.code for Reverse PGI is VL09.

* We do Reverse PGI if we have done some mistake while doing PGI.

Effect: (a) Stock will be added to Unrestricted stock.

(b) Inventory accounting document generates and the accounting entry is Inventory a/c Dr
To
Cost of Goods Sold a/c Cr.

* To see the Movement and to see the Inventory accounting document entry. Just go to the change mode of Delivery and click on Document Flow. Select Goods issue delivery and click on Display document. click on Accounting document.

* To check stock go to MMBE.

* For Reverse PGI go to T.code VL09 and enter Delivery Number and click on execute and then click on Reverse PGI.

Class (49) 26/05/14.

(iii) Returns Movement type 651 (DN) (Return stock):

Effect: (a) It will add the stock to Return Stock.

(b) Inventory accounting document will not generate.

(iv) Returns Movement type 653 (DN) (Unrestricted Stock):

Effect: (a) It will add the stock to Unrestricted stock.

(b) Inventory accounting document generates and the accounting entry is Inventory accounting Dr
To
Cost of Goods sold a/c Cr.

(v) Return Movement type 655 (DN) (Quality Inspection Stock):

Effect: (a) It will add the stock to Quality stock.

(b) Inventory accounting document generates. And the accounting entry is Inventory a/c Dr.

To

Cost of Goods sold a/c Cr.

(vi) Returns Movement type 657 (DN) (Blocked stock):

Effect: (a) It will add the Stock to Blocked Stock.

(b) Inventory accounting document generates and the accounting entry is Inventory a/c Dr.

To

Cost of Goods sold a/c Cr.

(vii) consignment Fill up Movement type 631 (E1):

Effect: (a) Stock will be Reduced from Unrestricted stock and Stock will be added to consignment stock.

(b) Inventory accounting document will not generate.

(viii) consignment Issue Movement type 633 (C1):

Effect: (a) Stock will be reduced from consignment stock.

(b) Inventory accounting document generates and the accounting entry is Cost of Goods sold a/c Dr.

TO

Inventory a/c Cr.

(ix) consignment Returns Movement type 634 (DD):

Effect: (a) Stock will be added to consignment stock.

(b) Inventory accounting document generates and the accounting entry is Inventory a/c Dr.

To

cost of Goods sold a/c Cr.

(x) Consignment Pick up Movement type 632 (F1):

Effect: (a) Stock will be reduced from Consignment Stock. And (b) Stock will be added to Unrestricted stock.

(b) Inventory accounting document will not generate.

(xi) STO Movement type Two step 641 (NN):

* Stock Transfer → Transffering stock from one plant to another.

Effect: (a) Stock will be reduced from Supplying Plant and Stock will be displayed as Stock in Transit in receiving plant.

(b) Inventory accounting document generates and the accounting entry is Stock inward Movement a/c Dr.

To

Stock outward Movement Cr.

(xii) STO Movement type One Step 647 (NN):

Effect: (a) Stock will be reduced from Supplying plant and Stock will be added to receiving plant.

(b) Inventory accounting document generates and the accounting entry is Stock inward Movement Dr.

To

Stock outward Movement Cr.

(xiii) STO Returns Two Step Movement type 671

one Step Movement type 677.

Effect: Same as STO.

(xiv) Inter company STO Two Step Movement type 643.

One Step Movement type 645.

Effect: Same as STO.

(XV) Inter company STO Returns: Two Slip Movement 673
One step movement 675.

Effects: Same as STO.

(XVi) Initial Stock Upload Movement type 561 :

Effect: (a) 561 or 101 — To take the finished goods
To take the Trading goods.

(b) Inventory accounting document generates and the accounting entry is Inventory a/c Dr.
To
Cost of Goods Manufacture a/c Cr.

Class (50) 27/05/14.

* Item relevant for Delivery: This field controls whether the Item is Relevant for Delivery or not.

* The below schedule line categories are relevant for Delivery.

(1) TAN (2) TAK (3) TAB (4) TAC (5) KLN (6) TAQ (7) BVN (CP)
(8) KBN (EI) (9) KEN (CI) (10) KRN (DO) (11) KAN (FI) (12) TAP (CT) (13) DN.

* Any schedule line category if item relevant for delivery is checked and if you do not have movement type then that item will copied into delivery but stock will not be reduced.

Order type: We use this field only for third Party and IPO. That is CS and CB.

* We maintain order type as NB. And order NB type controls that while creating sales order in third Party process and IPO process system will automatically generates Purchase Requisition (PR) in the Back ground.

Item Category: Like Sales documents, MM documents will also require item category information. If you create Purchase Requisition manually then we maintain item category manually. But in third Party and IPO process we are generating PR automatically in the background. So we are passing item category information from schedule line category to Purchase Requisition.

Item category "5": We maintain item category "5" in third Party Process.

* Item category "5" controls that even if you do MIGO in third Party with shipping Notification system will treat it as Dummy MIGO and stocks will not be updated.
* We maintain item category "0" for CB schedule line category.
* Item category "0" controls that when you do MIGO in IPO process system will treat it as actual MIGO and stocks will be Updated.
* With out item category system will not generate PR. Item category will help to generate PR automatically.
* We maintain item category only for CS and CB.

Account assignment category: This field controls whether to generate Inventory accounting document or not.

* Inventory accounting document generates at the Time of MIGO and PGI.
* Account assignment category "1" will not generate Inventory accounting document. (Third Party).
* For CB(IPO) we maintain Account assignment category as "E".

* E controls that system will not generate Inventory accounting document at the time of MIGO and PGI in IPO process. System will assign the cost to that Particular Sales order Number.

Purchase Requisition delivery scheduled: We check this field only for IPO process (CP).

* If you check this then while creating sales order in IPO process system will pass the delivery dates and confirm quantity information from sales order to Purchase Requisition.

Requirement /Assembly: This field is pre requisite to transfer the Sales order requirements to MRP. If you check this then only the Sales order requirements will be transfered to MRP.

* For CP will have this check and CN we will have this Uncheck.

Availability: This field is Prerequisite to Perform availability check in Sales document. That is if you check this then only System will perform availability check in Sales document.

* CP will have this check and CN will have this Uncheck.

CP	CN
☑ Req. /Assembly	☐ Req. /Assembly
☑ Availability	☐ Availability

Product Allocation: It is a process of reserving the stock to customers, customer group or Distribution channel to meet the future Requirement.

* If you want to Perform Availability check on the above reserved stock then we check this.

Schedule line category Determination:

Class (51) 28/05/14

* The T. code for schedule line category determination is VOV5
* Path: SPRO → Sales and distribution → Sales → Sales documents → Schedule lines → Assign schedule line categories.
* Schedule line category determines based on
(1) Item category (2) MRP type.
* MRP type field is in Material Master MRP1 View.

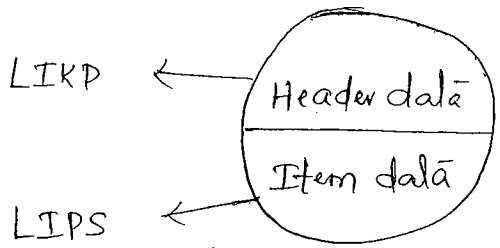
* Standard Item category	TAN	TAN
MRP Type	ND (No planning)	PD (Planning)
Default schedule line category	CN	CP.

* If Item category and MRP type combination is not maintained then system will determine schedule line category only based on Item category.

Steps: (1) Create new document type → VOV8
* copy OR to POR. And save it.
(2) Create new item category → VOV7.
* copy TAN to PTAN and Save it.
(3) Create new schedule line category → VOV6.
* copy CP to BP and Save it.
(4) Item category determination → VOV4 → POR
NORM
=
PTAN.
(5) Schedule line category determination → VOV5 → PTAN
=
CP.

Delivery Types:

* structure of the delivery document will be devided in to two parts
* Header data will be controlled Delivery types and Item data controlled by Delivery Item Categories.
* The Table for Header data is LIKP.
* The Table for Item data is LIPS.



* Standard Delivery type "LF".
* Return Delivery type "LR".
* Cash Sale Delivery type "BV".
* Delivery with out order reference "LO".
* STO delivery type "NL".
* STO Returns Delivery type "NLR".
* Inter Company STO delivery type "NLCC".
* Inter company STO return delivery type "NCR".
* The T. code to Delivery types OVLK / OVLK.
* Path: Spro → Logistics Execution → shipping → Deliveries → Define delivery types.
* If you create your own Delivery type then you have to assign it in document type.

Delivery type controls:

① **Document category:** Document category controls the functioning of the document.

* The document category for LF is "J".
* The document category for LR is "T".

Q: Where is the control that while doing Returns delivery, system proposes PGR?

Ans: Document category "T".

② **Number system:**

(i) **Number range internal assignment and Number range external assignment:**

* To create Number ranges [VN01] T.code.
* We can not Transport Number Ranges from one Server to another Server.
* Number Range T.code for Sales document, Delivery document and Billing document is [VN01].

(ii) **Item Number Increment:** This field controls how the line item Number should be incremented in Delivery document.

③ **Order Reference:**

(i) **Order Required:** This field controls whether any Preceding document is required or not to create a Delivery document.

* For LF, LR, BV order required is Sales order Required.
* For LO order required is NO preceding document required.
* For NL, NLCC, NLR and NCR Order required is Purchase Order Required.

Q: While doing Delivery with out order reference how system is Determining Movement Type?

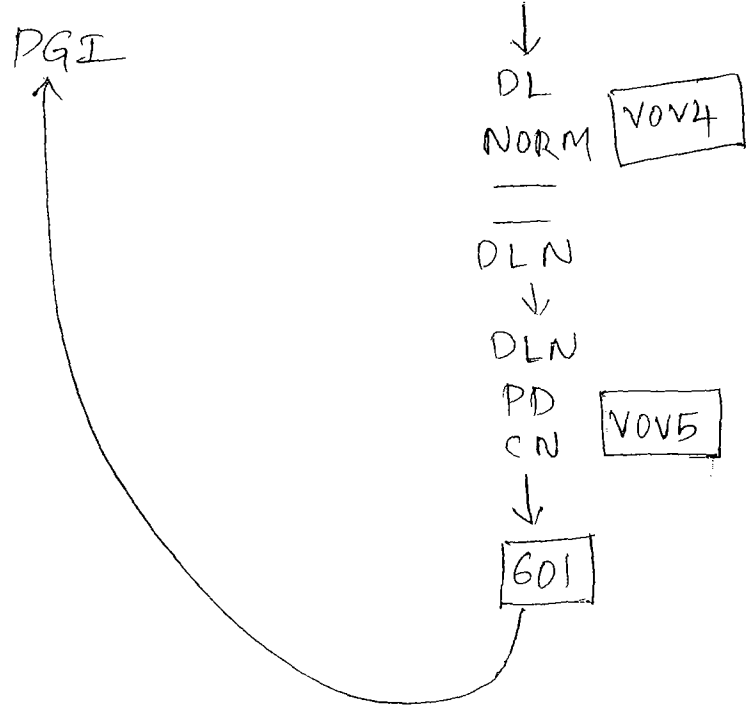
Ans: With the help of Default order type 'DL'.

(ii) Default order type : System consider default order type 'DL' if order required is NOT a Sales order required.

* System considers Default order type while doing delivery with out order reference to determine movement type information.

* While doing delivery with out order reference first system takes Default order type DL and in the back ground it will go to item Category determination and take the item category for DL and NORM and it will go to schedule line category determination and take the schedule line category with the combination of DLN and PO. And finally take the Movement type and determine it in Delivery

* Delivery with out order Reference → 'DL'



(iii) Item Requirement:

Class (52) 29/05/14

* This field controls whether to add new line item in Delivery document or not.
* The Standard item Requirement is 202 and it will allow to add new lin item in Delivery document.
* If you want to restrict adding new line items in Delivery document then maintain Item Requirement as 201.

Document content.

(i) Storage Location Rule: Storage Location Rule will help to determine storage location automatically into delivery document.

* We have 3 types of Storage Location Rules.

(1) MALA (2) RETA (3) MARE.

(1) MALA: MALA Rule specifies that Storage location should be determined based on Shipping point, Plant and Storage conditions.

(2) RETA: RETA Rule specifies that Storage location should be determined based on plant, situation and Storage conditions.

(3) MARE: MARE Rule specifies that Storage location should be determined based (1) MALA (2) RETA.

Delivery Item categories: The Item categories which we define in Sales document type the Same item categories will be applicable in Delivery document.

* The T.code to create Delivery Item categories $\boxed{\text{OVLP}}$.
* Path: SPRO → Logistics Execution → Shipping → Deliveries → Define item categories for deliveries.

Controls :

① Material Number '0' allowed : This field controls whether to create Delivery document with out Material code or not.

* If you check this then system will allow to create delivery document with out Material code.

* For Text item we will create delivery with out Material code.

② Item category statistics group : This field controls whether to update the delivery data into LIS or not.

③ Check Quantity '0' : This field controls how system should respond if the Quantity in the Delivery document is '0'. That is whether to give Warning message or error message or No message.

④ Check Minimum Quantity : We maintain Minimum Delivery Quantity in Material Master Sales org. 1 View.

* This field controls how System should respond if the delivery quantity is Less than Minimum delivery quantity. That is whether to give Warning Message or error Message or No message

Check over Delivery : This field will have Relationship with the below fields in Customer Master.

① Unlimited Tolerance ☐
② Under delivery Tolerance ☐ %
③ over delivery Tolerance ☐ %

} Customer Master Shipping Tab.

* This field controls how System should respond if User is increasing the quantities in Delivery document more than order quantity. That is whether to give Warning msg or error msg or No msg.

* If you maintain over delivery Tolerance in customer Master then System will allow to increase the quantities in delivery document up to that percentage. If the percentage exceeds then System will give error message.

* If you check Unlimited Tolerance in customer Master they check over delivery concept will not work.

Relevant for Picking: This field controls whether the item is Relevant for Picking or not. If you Uncheck this then the Pick quantity field in delivery document will be disabled and System will allow to do PGI with out picking.

* The below item categories will have relevant for picking Unchecked.

(1) REN (2) KRN (3) KAN (4) KEN.

Determine Storage Location: This field controls whether to determine Storage location automatically into delivery document or not. If you check this then only system will determine Storage Location automatically into delivery document.

Automatic Batch determination: If you check this they the Batch will be determined automatically into Delivery document.

Packing control: This field controls whether the material Must be packed or can be packed or can not be packed.

Availability check off: This field controls whether to Perform Availability check in Delivery document or not.

* The below scenarios we have to Perform availability check in Delivery document.

(1) Delivery with out order Refereyce.

(2) Adding new line item in Delivery.

(3) Increasing the quantities in Delivery and (4) STO.

Class(53) 31/05/14.

Delivery Item category Determination:

* In Normal process while creating Delivery with reference to order System will copy the item category as it is from order to delivery. But some scenarios system will determine item category in deleveries.

1. Delivery with out Order Reference.
2. STO delivery.
3. Adding new line item in delivery.
4. Batch split.

(*) Delivery item category determines based on

1. Delivery type
2. Item category group
3. Item usage
4. Higher Level Item category

} Default Item category.

Path: Spro → Logistics Execution → shipping → Deliveries → Define Item category determination in Delivery.

Scenario (1): Delivery with out order reference.

Delivery Type → LO
Item category group → NORM
Item Usage → —
Higher Level Item Category → —
Default Item category → DLN.

Scenario (2): STO Delivery.

Delivery Type → NL
Item category group → NORM
Item Usage → V
Higher Level Item cat. → —
Defaut Item Cat. → NLN.

Scenario (3): STO Returns

Delivery type → NLR
Item category Group → NORM
Item Usage → V
Higher Level Item cat. → —
Default Item category → NLRN.

Scenario (4): Intercompany STO

Scenario (5): Intercompany STO Returns

Delivery Type →	NLCC →	NCR
Item category group →	NORM →	NORM
Item Usage →	V →	V
Higher Level Item cat. →	NLC →	NCRN.

Scenario (6): Adding New Line Item in Delivery.

Delivery type → LF
Item category group → NORM
Item Usage → —
Higher Level Item cat. → —
Default Item category → DLN.

Scenario (7): Batch Split:

Delivery Type → LF
Item category group → NORM
Item Usage → CHSP
Higher Level Item Category → —
Default Item category → TAN.

Billing Types:

* Standard Billing type → F2
* Cash sale Billing type → BV
* Return Billing type → RE
* Credit Memo Billing type → G2
* Debit Memo Billing type → L2
* Inter company Billing type → IV
* Inter company credit Memo Billing type → IG
* Profarma invoice order related Billing type → F5
* Profarma invoice delivery related Billing type → F8
* Invoice cancellation Billing type → S1
* Retury Invoice and credit Memo cancellation → S2
* Profarma Invoice is a Dummy Invoice which will not generate Accounting Document.
* The T.code to define Billing types is VOFA.
* Path: Spro → Sales and distribution → Billing → Billing documents → Define Billing types.
* Whenever we create new Billing type we need to go VOV8 and assign it there in Document type.

Billing Type Controls:

① Number system (internal Number assignment): For Billing types SAP has not given Provision for External Number assignment because it is a Legal requirement that Billing document Number should always be in a sequence.

(2) Item Number Increment: This field controls how the line item Number should be incremented in Billing document.

(3) SD document category: SD document category controls the Accounting entry of the Invoice.

* For F2 (standard billing type) the document category is "M". And M generates accounting entry as customer a/c Dr.
To
Revenue a/c cr.

* For Returns and credit Memo the document Category "O" and "O" generates accounting entry as Revenue a/c Dr.
To
Customer a/c Cr.

* For F5 and F8 document category is "U". And "U" will not generate Accounting document.

Q: Where is the control that for Protarma Invoice system will not generate accounting generate?

Ans: Document category "U" in Billing type controls.

(4) Posting Block: If you check this they system will not generate accounting document automatically user has to Post it Manually.

* The T. code to Post the Invoice values into accounting Manually is VFX3 or you can go to change mode of Invoice and click on Flag. (Release to accounting).

(5) Statistics: This field controls whether to update Billing document value into LIS or not.

* For F5 and F8 Statistics is Normally Unchecked.

(6) Document Types: The FI (Finance) document type for Accounting document is RV.

(7) Negative Posting: This field controls whether to Post the Negative Invoice values into accounting or not.

(8) Invoice List type: The standard Invoice List type is LR.

* Invoice List is consolidating all the Invoices raised to different Bill to Party is into one and Sending it to Payer is called as Invoice List.

* The T. code to create Invoice List VF21 or VF24.

* If you want to create Invoice List they you have to create Invoice List dates and assign it in Customer Master.

* Go to VF21 and enter Invoice Number you want consolidate and enter date and click on Execute.

(6) Document type: The F1 (Finance) document type for Accounting document is RV.

(7) Negative Posting: This field controls whether to Post the Negative Invoice values into accounting or not.

(8) Invoice List type: The standard Invoice List type is LR.

* Invoice List is consolidating all the Invoices raised to different Bill to Party is into One and Sending it to Payer is called as Invoice List.

* The T. code to create Invoice List VF21 or VF24.

* If you want to create Invoice List they you have to create Invoice List dates and assign it in Customer Master.

* Go to VF21 and enter Invoice Number you want consolidate and enter date and click on Execute.

Class (54) 04/06/14.

(9) Relevant for Rebate: This field is one of the Pre requisite to Process Rebates.

* If you want to Process Rebates they you have to check three Rebate prerequisites and which are (1) Rebate Proc. active from Sales organization (2) Rebates (Customer Master) (3) Relevant for Rebates (Billing types).

(10) Cancellation Billing types:

* The Cancellation Billing type for F2 is S1.

* The Cancellation Billing type for RE & G2 is S2.

* The T. code to cancel Invoice is VF11.

(11) Account determination Procedure: The standard account determination Procedure is KOFI00.

* Account determination Procedure will help to determine Revenue G/L accounts while posting Invoice values into accounting.

(12) Document pricing procedure: This field is one of the Parameter to determine pricing procedure in Billing document.

* Normal scenarios the pricing procedure will be copied from Sales order to Invoice but while creating Delivery without order reference or in STO process System will determine pricing procedure in Invoice with the help of Document pricing procedure

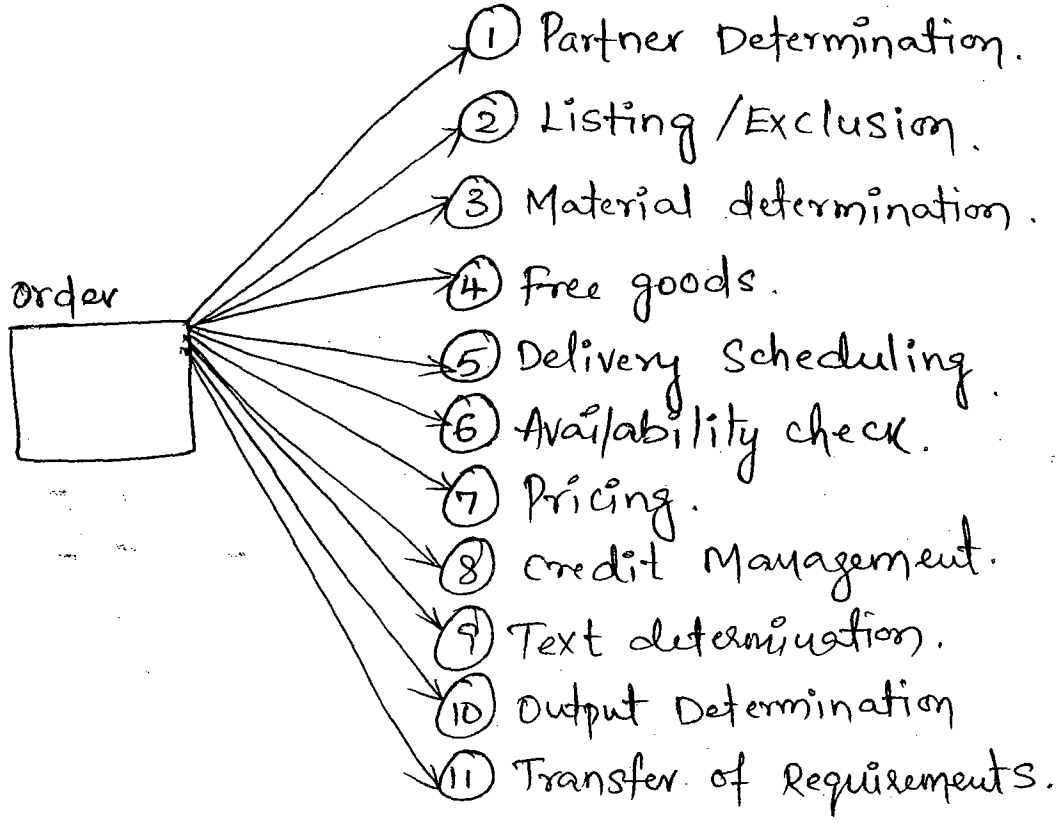
(13) Account determination Reconcillation account: In standard process when we create Invoice, system generates accounting document and the accounting entry is customer a/c Dr. To Revenue a/c cr. For the customer account system determines G/L accounts from Customer Master (Reconcillation account). And if client's requirement is Reconcillation account should not be determine from customer master, it should be determine based on some other combinations like Plant and Division or Sales area wise etc. they we have to configure account determination Reconcillation account.

* The standard procedure for Reconcillation a/c is KOFIAB.

Account determination cash settlement: We use this field only for "BV" billing type (cash sale Invoice). The standard procedure for cash settlement is KOFIAC.

* When we create cash sale invoice the accounting entry is cash settlement a/c Dr. To Revenue a/c Cr. For cash settlement account system determines G/L accounts from cash settlement procedure.

* When you create order system will perform various activities in the Background. which are



The activities system performs when we do PGI:

1. Stock Updates
2. Inventory a/c document generates.
   Cost of Goods sold a/c Dr.
   To
   Inventory a/c Cr
3. It updates in LIS.
4. It updates in Credit Management.
5. It updates in Document Flow.
6. It updates in Billing due list.

Split criteria for Deliveries: 1 shipping Point 2 Ship to Party 3 Incoterms 4 Delivery dates 5 Route.

The activities system performs when we create Invoice:

1. Accounting Document generates. Customer a/c Dr. To Revenue a/c Cr.
2. Profitability analysis document generates.
3. Cost center document generates.
4. It updates in LIS.
5. It updates in credit Management.
6. It updates in Document Flow.

Split criteria for Invoice: 1. Payer 2. Payment Terms. 3. Billing dates.

* The T. code for collective processing of deliveries (combining multiple orders into single delivery) is VL10A / VL10C
* Go to VL10A or VL10C and mention ship to party and click on Execute. And select all and click on Background. click on the Log and select the delivery and click on document.
* The T. code for collective processing of Billing documents (combining multiple deliveries into single Invoice) is VF04.
* Go to VF04 and mention Customer Number and click on Execute. And select all the deliveries and click on collective Billing document online.

Class(55) 05/06/14.

* Client's requirement is while creating Sales order Bill to Party should be determine from ship to Party not from sold to Party. How to configure this?

Step①. Go to Partner determination procedure for customer Master at (VOPAN).

* Go to PDP for ship to Party and select it and double click on Partner functions in procedure. Go to new entries and add Bill to party and save it. Double click on Account group function assignment and assign Bill to party to ship to Party account group.

Step②: Go to set up partner determination for sales document Header. Select the standard PDP (TA) and double click on Partner functions in procedure. They Bill to party go to and maintain source as ship to party (SH) and maintain sequence as 1 and save it.

Ans: Create one Sold to Party and two ship to Parties. And assign 2 ship to parties in Sold to Party.

T. Codes for SAP Standard Reports:

* List of Sales orders VA05N.
* List of Inquiries VA15N.
* List of Quotations VA25N
* List of contracts VA45N
* List of Scheduling agreements VA35N.
* Collective Processing of deliveries VL10A or VL10C
* Collective Processing of Picking VL06P.
* Collective Processing of PGI VL06G.

* Delivery Monitor VL06O.
* List of Billing documents VL05N.
* Expiring Quotations SDQ1.
* Expired Quotations SDQ2.
* Completed Quotations SDQ3.
* List of Customers VC/2.

Questions:

1. What are the activities system performs when we create Sales order?
2. What is the Split criteria for Deliveries?
3. What are the activities system perform when we do PGI?
4. Client wants to restrict adding new line item in deliveries. where is the control?
5. Client's requirement is they want to restrict increasing the quantities in delivery document. where is the control?
6. While creating delivery without order reference how system is determining Movement Type?
7. What is the purpose of General item category group?
8. What is the Prerequisite to combine Multiple orders into Single delivery?
9. How many Maximum Partial deliveries we can make?
10. What is the Split criteria for Invoice?
11. What are the activities system performs when we create Invoice?
12. What is the T.code for Reverse PGI?
13. What is the T.code to cancel Invoice?
14. What is the T.code to post Invoice values into Accounting Manually?

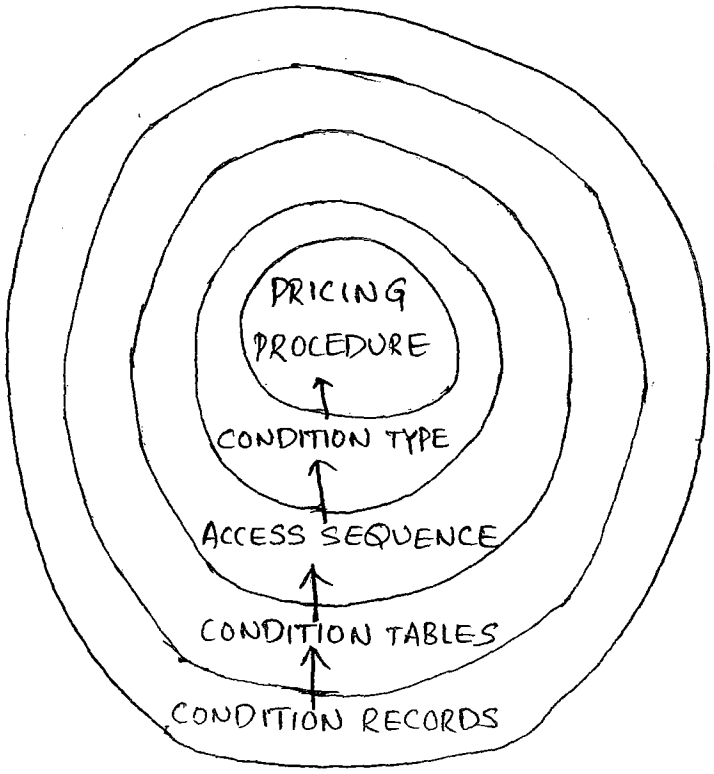
document for Profarma Invoice?

(16) Where is the control that while doing Reliry delivery system is proposing PGR? Document category — T.

PRICING

Class (56) 06/06/14.

* Pricing is based on Condition Technique.
* Condition Technique is the process of determining Condition Records into Sales documents.
* Condition Technique Consists of Condition Records and Condition Records will be stored in condition Tables and Condition Tables will be placed in Access Sequence from Most specific to Most General. And Access sequence will be assigned to condition type and condition type will be placed in Pricing Procedure.

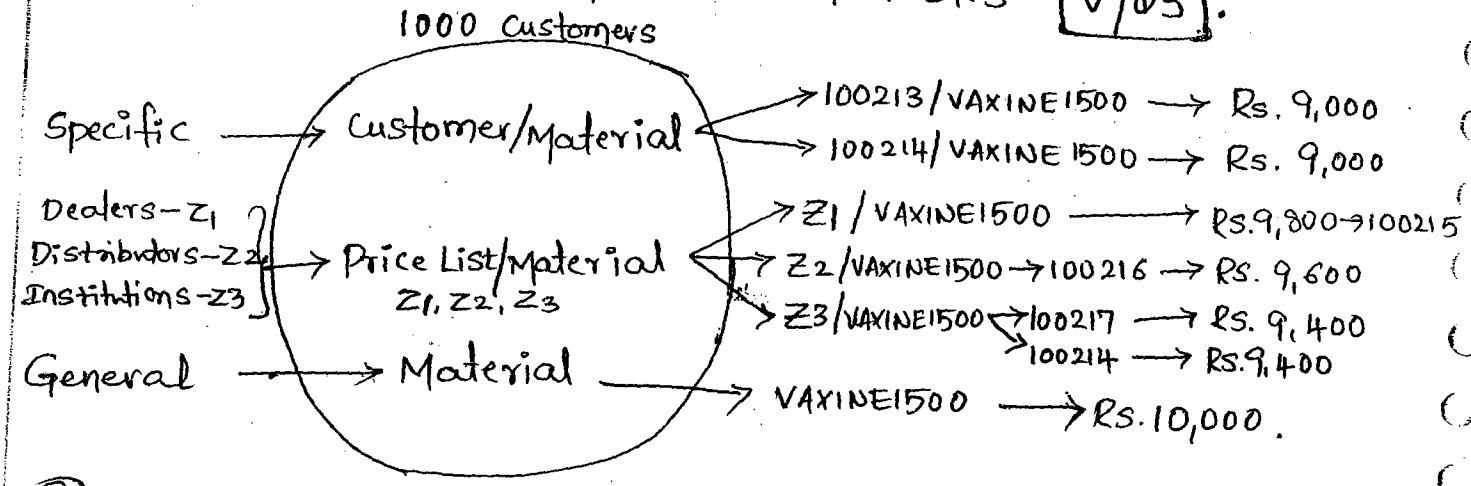


① **Condition Records:** Condition Records is the Master Data for PRICING. We also call it as "Condition Master."

* The T. code to maintain Condition Records is **VK11**.

② **Condition Tables:** Condition Table is the combination of Fields which will be used to maintain Condition Records.

* The T. code to maintain condition Tables **V/03**.



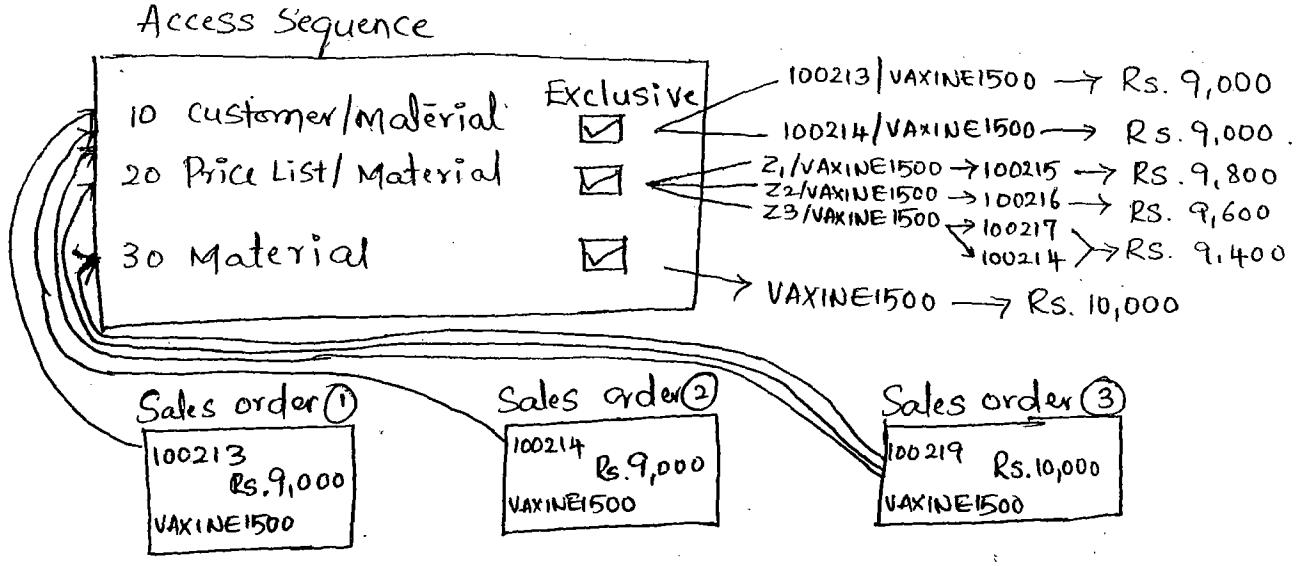
③ **Access Sequence:** It is a Search Strategy which will Search for the valid condition Records from Most Specific to Most General.

Exclusive check box in Access sequence: If you check this then whenever system finds valid condition Record it will come out of the Search strategy and determine the Price into Sales document.

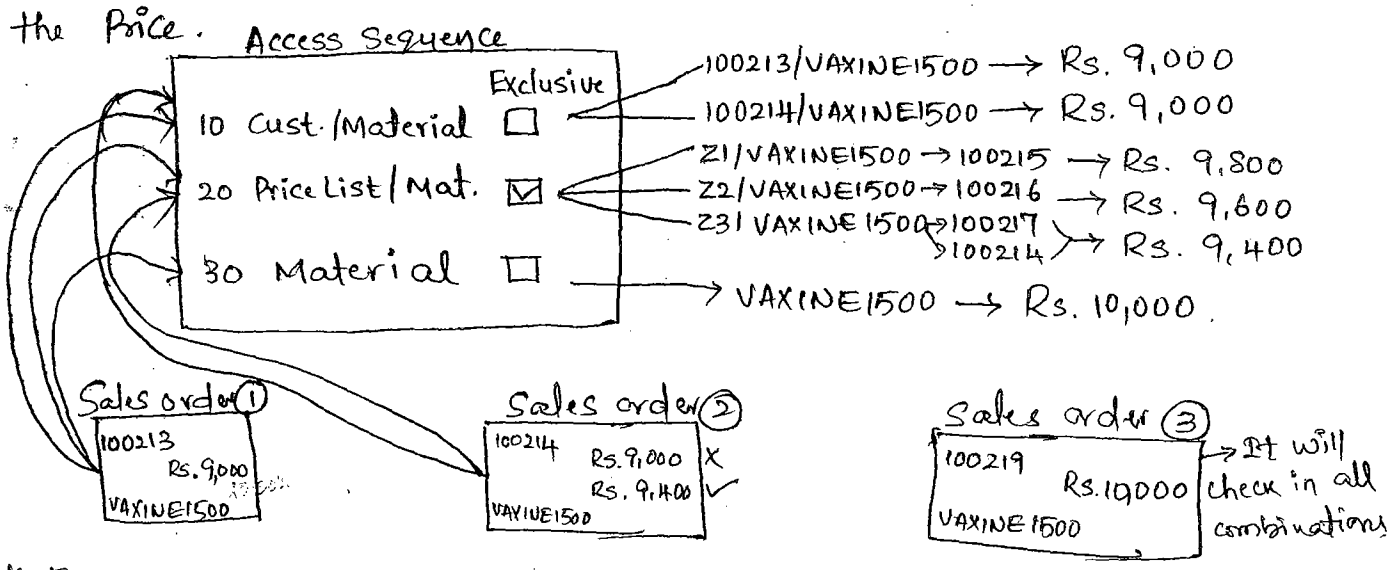
* If you Uncheck this then even after system finds valid condition Records at any of the combination, system will not come out of Search strategy and system will continue to search in all the Combinations and if system finds valid conditions Records it will determine all condition Records into Sales document and active the Last one and deactivate the Previous condition Records (if it is Base Price).

* If it is Discount then it activate all condition Records.

* The T. code to maintain Access sequence is **V/07**.



* From Above examples, in Sales order 1 system finds customer and Material combination at first combination of Access sequence and the Exclusive is checked so system will determine the Price into sales document at the first combination and will come out of Search Strategy
* And it is same in Sales order 2. But when it comes it to sales order 3 they it will check the combination and if there is no condition record they it will go to Second combination and if there is no valid condition record the it will continue to Search in third combination. And in third combination the material is same so system will determine the Price.



* From above Examples, in sales order 1 system will check the first combination ~~then~~ if it finds condition Record for (100213) they it will determine it into sales document but it will ~~can~~ not come out of search strategy because the Exclusive is Unchecked so it will chec

Next combination and if there is a valid condition Record they system will determine and if not it will not determine condition Record but in both the cases system will come out of Search strategy cause the Exclusive is checked at the Second combination.

---

in next combination and if there is a valid condition Record then system will determine it into Sales document and will come out of Search Strategy. And if there is no valid condition Record then system will continue to Search even if the Exclusive is checked. But in Sales order (2) system will check the first combination and determine the Price if any valid condition Record exist and it will continue to search because the Exclusive is Unchecked and in Second combination system check for Valid condition Record and if it is exist then system will determine the Price and will come out of search strategy. But if there are two prices then system will consider the recent one and cancel the previous prices.

* And in Sales order (3) system will check all the combinations and determine the Price at last combination.

(4) <u>Condition Type</u>: Condition type controls the Price components or Price Elements. The T.code to maintain conditon Type is $\boxed{V/06}$.

Price components

BASE PRICE	→	1,00,000	GROSS
DISCOUNTS (5%)	→	-5,000	GROSS
GROSS	→	95,000	Net
Transportation charges ← FREIGHT	→	500	Surcharge
INSURANCE	→	200	Surcharge
NET	→	95,700	
TAX (10%)	→	9,570	
TOTAL	→	1,05,270	

* The standard condition type for Material discount is KØØ4.
* The standard condition type for customer / material discount is KØØ5.
* The standard condition type for Customer discount is KØØ7.
* The Standard condition type for Freight is KFØØ.
* The Standard condition type for Tax is MWST (it is not for Indian clients).

⑤ Pricing Procedure: Pricing Procedure consist of List of condition types which should be placed in a Sequence.

* And the T.code to define Pricing Procedure is V/Ø8.

Pricing Procedure Determination: * Pricing Procedure determine based on combination of Sales Area, Document pricing procedure and Customer Pricing procedure.

* The T.code for Pricing procedure determination is OVKK.
* The common T.code for Pricing is VOKØ.

Defining Condition Tables:

* T.code V/Ø3.

Path: Spro → Sales and distribution → Basic functions → pricing → Pricing control → Define condition Tables.

* Double click on Create condition Tables.
* Enter some Table Number and it should be the Number above 500 and if you do not enter Table Number then system will propose one below 500. User define Table Number should be above 500 (Below 500 are the Default Table Numbers proposed automatically by the system). * Press enter.

Field catalog: Field catalog consists of List of allowed fields to create condition Table.

* If any of the fields is there twice then you go to Other description to choose the one you want to create condition Table.
* If your confusing between two fields then click on Other description.
* Double click on Customer and it will appear in selected fields.
* And go to Material and double click on it and it will appear in selected fields.
* After Selecting the fields click on Generate, and say Yes.
* You have to save it in Package then only system will propose a Workbench Request Number. If you save it in Request Number then only you can transport it from one server to another server. Workbench Request is Cross client, that means if you create any condition Table in one client it will be appeared in all clients. (Ex: 800, 810).

Class (57) 07/06/14.

* We can save condition Table in Local object or Package. If you save condition Table in Local Object then system will not generate Request Number and we can not Transport it from One Server to another Server. If you save condition Table in Package then system generates Request Number then it can be Transportable from one server to another server.
* Condition Table will be stored in Workbench Request and all Workbench requests are cross-client. Cross-client means if you create condition Table in one client it automatically updates in other clients with in a server.

* Package will be provided by Basis Consultant. And Package consist of Group of Enhancements.

(2) Create condition Table for Price List / Material combination.

Package = Z001.

(3) Create another condition Table for Material.

* If you mistakely saved condition Table in Local object and if you want to save it into Request then go to change mode of condition Table and in the menu GoTo Select object directory entry and save it.

Q: If the fields are not available in field category as a consultant what you do?

Ans: We will add the fields in allowed field. We go to define condition Table and double click on conditions: Allowed fields and go to new entries.

KUNNR → Customer

MATNR → Material.

* Some fields system will not allow to add in Allowed fields, in that case we have to do Enhancement. If system is not allowing to field in Allowed fields then we need to add that field in INCLUDE KOMAZ (or) KOMPAZ.

Header field Item field.

(2) Define Access Sequence: Access sequence is also a cross-client. Access Sequence will also be stored in Workbench Request.

* In Access Sequence we will place the condition Tables from Most specific to Most General.

* Go to the T.code V/07 and go to define Access sequence.

* Double click on Maintain Access Sequence.

* Go to new entries and create a new Access sequence.

ARØØ - New Access sequence.

* Select the Access sequence and double click on Accesses. They go to new entries and place the condition Table from Most specific to Most General.

No.	Table No.	Description	Exclusive.
10	570		☑

* Select the Table or Access and double click on Fields and go back.

No.	Table No.	Exclusive
20	571	☑

* Select the Second Table or Access and double click on Fields and enter and go back.

No.	Table No.	Exclusive
30	572	☑

* Select the Table or Access and double click on Fields and press enter and go back.
* Then Save it.

③ Define condition Types:

* India clients the Tax is JCST and JVAT.

JCST → Central Tax → Sales b/w 2 states

JVAT → Value added Tax → Sales with in the state.

* The T.code to define condition Types is V/Ø6.
* click on Define condition types and double click on first one.
* Go to Standard condition type PRØØ then select the condition type and click on copy as. And create your own condition type.

ARØØ Base price and Assign Sequence ARØØ.

* And save it.

(4) Define and Assign Pricing procedure.

* The T.code is V/08. Define Pricing Procedure.
* Double click on Maintain Pricing procedure.
* The standard pricing procedure is RVAA01.
* Go to new entries and create your own pricing procedure AVAA01 New Pricing Procedure.
* Select the Pricing procedure and double click on control data. Then go to new entries and maintain the below.

Step	condition Type	Requirement	Account Key.
10	ARØØ	2	ERL

* Press enter and save it.

Assign Pricing procedure: (Pricing procedure Determination)

* The T.code is OVKK.
* We will assign pricing procedure to the combination of Sales Area, Document pricing procedure and customer pricing procedure.
* check for your ~~card~~ combination (Doc.P, C.Pr.) if it is exist they change other wise go to new entries.

Q: Why we assign condition Type in OVKK?

A: To display the amount of condition Type in line item overview or To change the amount of condition type in Line item overview.

(6) Maintain Condition Records:

* The T.code VK11.
* Mention condition Type ARØØ.

* Go to customer Master and maintain specific customers.

Z1 – dealers — in 100215

Z2 – distributors – in 100216

Z3 – Institutions — in 100217 and 100214.

10) Customer/Material — Exclusive ☑ — 100213/Vaxine1500 — Rs. 9,000; 100214/Vaxine1500 — Rs. 9,000

20) Price List/Material ☑ — 21/Vaxine1500 — Rs. 9,800 — 100215; 22/Vaxine1500 — Rs. 9,600 — 100216; 23/Vaxine1500 — Rs. 9,400 — 100217, 100214.

30) Material ☑ — Vaxine1500 — Rs. 10,000.

* Mention the condition type (ARØØ) and when you press enter it will display condition Tables so select the Table you want to maintain condition Record.

enter customer 100213

Vaxine1500 Vaxine1500 9,000 INR

enter Second customer 100214

Vaxine1500 Vaxine1500 9,000 INR.

* Maintain for Price List/Material select click on choose.

price List (Z1)

Vaxine1500 9,800 INR.

price List (Z2)

Vaxine1500 9,600 INR

price List (Z3)

Vaxine1500 9,400 INR

* Go to Last combination that select Material and click on choose.

Vaxine1500 10,000 INR

Configuration for Discounts.

* Discounts or Deductions which we deduct from Base Price.
* The standard condition ~~Table~~ type for Material Discount K004.
* The standard condition ~~Table~~ for Customer/Material discount K005.
* The Standard Condition Table for Customer Discount K007.
* The Standard condition Table for price Group/Material Discount K032.
* We need to create Tables for above combination but we already have Tables for Customer/Material, Material combination So we need to create two more Tables which are Customer and Price group/Material.

① * Create Table for Customer — 573
* create Table for Price group/Material — 574.
* Name of the Table is character 'A' along with the Table Number (A573, A574).

Q: Can I Delete condition Tables?

A: Yes. Go to change mode of condition Table and Delete.

② Access Sequence (V/07):

* We need to make 4 Access Sequences.
* Go to new entries

A004 Material Discount.

* Select Access sequence and double click on Access.

NO	Table	Exclusive
10	572	☑

* Select the above and double click on fields and save it.
* Do the Same for Customer/Material discount, Customer discounts, Price/group/Material Discounts.

(3) Condition Type:

(i) Material discount condition Types: Copy it from standard material discount condition Types K004.

* V/06. Select standard and click on copy mention condition type and assign Access sequence.

* K004 is a Quantity Based discount.

(ii) Customer/Material Discount: copy it from standard customer/material discount condition type K005.

* Select standard (K005) and click on copy. And Mention your condition type and assign your Access sequence (A005).

* Customer/Material discount is a Quantity Based discount.

(iii) Customer Discount: copy it from standard customer discount condition type K007.

* Select K007 and click on copy.

* Mention your condition type and assign your Access seq. (A007).

* Customer discount is a Percentage based discount.

(iv) Price Group/Material Discount: Copy it from Standard Price Group/Material Discount condition type K032.

* Select K032 and click on copy.

* Mention your condition type and assign your Discount.

* Price Group/Material discount is a Quantity based Discount.

(4) Place condition types in Pricing Procedure:

* The T.code V/08.

* Select your Pricing Procedure and double click on control.

* Go to pricing procedure (V/08), go to new entries and enter the Below.

	Type						
10	AR00				☐	2	ERL
20		BASE VALUE	10		☑		
30	A007		20		☐	2	ERS
40	A005		20		☐	2	ERS
50	A032		20		☐	2	ERS
60	A004		20		☐	2	ERS
70		TOTAL DISCOUNTS	30	60	☑		
80		GROSS VALUE	20	60	☑		

* Save it.

(5) Define and Assign Pricing Procedure: Which we already done it in Base Price so we don't need to maintain it again.

(6) Condition Records: The T.code VK11.

(i) Customer Discount — A007.

100213 — 10%
100214 — 10%

(ii) Customer/Material discount — A005.

100216/Vaxine1500 — Rs. 600
100217/Vaxine1500 — Rs. 600

(iii) Price Group/Material discount — A032

100215 ←	Z1/Vaxine1500 = Rs. 300	
100216 ←	Z2/Vaxine1500 = Rs. 400	
100217 ←	Z3/Vaxine1500 = Rs. 500	→ 100214

(iv) Material discount — A004 | Vaxine1500 = Rs.100 |

(i) condition Type — AØØ7

Customer	Amount
100213	10%
200214	10%

and save it.

(ii) Condition Type — AØØ5

Customer	Material	Amount
100217	Vaxine1500	600
100216	Vaxine1500	600

and save it.

(iii) Condition Type — AØ32.

Price Group Z1		Price Group Z2		Price Group Z3	
Material	Amount	Material	Amount	Material	Amount
Vaxine1500	300	Vaxine1500	400	Vaxine1500	500

(iv) condition Type — AØØ4.

Material	Amount
Vaxine1500	100

and save it.

Create Sales order:

(1) 100214 ARØØ 9,000
(10%) AØØ7 −900
AØ32 −500
AØØ4 −100
Vaxine1500 −1500
Gross = 7,500

(2) 100217 ARØØ 9,400
AØØ5 −600
AØ32 −500
AØØ4 −100
Vaxine 1500 −1200
Gross = −8,200

One Table in Access sequence.

Q: Client's Requirement is if system determine one discoun then system should ~~determine~~ "Eliminate" the other Discounts. How to do this?

A: For this Requirement Create only one condition type with one Access sequence and Place all the condition Tables in that Access sequence from Most specific Most General.

1. Place the condition Tables in Access sequence from Most specific to Most General. (Maintain All Tables).
2. Create New condition type a copy of KØØ7 and assign the Access sequence:

   AIØØ AIØØ

3. Place the condition type in Pricing Procedure. V/08

(4) maintain condition records

Class (59) 10/06/14.

Header Discounts:

* Header Discount is the Discount which is applicable to all the Line items in the Sales doument. We call it as Header Condition.
* Header condition should be always processed manually.
* Header condition does not have Access sequence.
* The Standard condition types for Header Discounts:
* The standard condition type for Header Fixed discount HBØØ.
* The Standard condition type for Header Percentage discount HAØØ.
* Since it doesn't have Acc.seq. no need to create condition Table.

Create Header discount condition types: V/06.

* Select the standard Header Fixed discount (HBØØ) and copy it to create your own.
* condition types ABØØ. And save it.
* select the standard Header Percentage discount (HAØØ) and copy it to create your own.

  condition Type AØØØ and save it.
* Place the Header condition types in Pricing Procedure.
* Go to V/08. And maintain condition types.

Step	condition Type	Description	From	TO	Manual	Statistical	Requirement	Account Key.
10	ARØØ				☐	☐	2	ERL
20		BASE VALUE	10		☒	☑		
25	AIØØ		20		☐	☐	2	ERS
30	AØØ7		20		☐	☐	2	ERS
40	AØØ5		20		☐	☐	2	ERS
50	AØ32		20		☐	☐	2	ERS
60	AØØ4		20		☐	☐	2	ERS
65	ABØØ		20		☑	☐	2	ERS
66	AAØØ		20		☑	☐	2	ERS
70		Total Discounts	25	69		☒		
80		Gross Value	20	69		☑		

Processing Header Discounts:

* To Process Header conditions you should have multiple line items in the Sales documents.
* So maintain Price for Some other materials by using your own condition type.

B 10,000

C 8,000

* Then create an order with Multiple Line items.
* Go to Header data Conditions enter condition type manually.

Ex: ABØØ 20,000

* Select the condition type and click on Activate, then you get the value.
* Any condition type if it is Header and Group condition then the condition type amount will be Distributed among all the Line items in Proportionate to the Value of the Line item. If you check Group condition system will distribute the Same amount among all Line items what ever the amount we enter.
* Do the Same for AAØØ.

Surcharges: Surcharge is the Additional charge which we add to the Gross Value. Ex: Freight, Insurance, Packing, Loading.

* Freight → Transportation charges.
* Freight and Insurance will be maintained with the combination of (Incoterms1 + Incoterms2) and (Incoterms1)
* Packing charges and Loading charges is maintained based on only Material.
* So we need to create three more new condition Tables for Incoterms1 + Incoterms2, Incoterms1, Material. But we already have material So we just need to create two more Tables only which are Incoterms1 + Incoterms2, Incoterms1.
* Create one Access sequence and place two Tables in that and which are Incoterms1 + Incoterms2, Incoterms.

AFØØ New Acc. Seq.

Create New Condition Types:

* For Freight charges ⟶ The Standard condition type is KFØØ.
* Copy the Standard KFØØ and create your own.
* And save it. AF00 – AF00

Create Insurance condition Type: By copying KØØ4 condition type (if it is Quantity Based).

* If it is percentage based then copy KØØ7 and type
* coppy KØØ7 and create your own.

AINS AFØØ.

* Maintain plus/Minus as 'A' (positive).
* Create Packing charges and loading charges by copying KØØ4 condition type.

APAC	AØØ4	Plus/Minus
ALOD	AØØ4	

Place condition Types in Pricing procedure:

* Place Surcharge after Gross value

90	AFØØ	80	2	ERF
100	AINS	80	2	ERF
110	APAC	80	2	ERF
120	ALOD	80	2	ERF.
130	Net value	80	120	

Maintain condition Records:

* The T.code VK11.
* For Frieght condition Type AFØØ

Incoterms	Amount	Unit	Weight
CIF	50	INR	1KG.

CIF 40 1KG.

* For condition type APAC.

Creating New Account Keys for Insurance Loading & Packing:

* Spro → Sales and distribution → Basic functions → Account assignment/costing → Revenue account determination → ~~Design~~ Define and assign Account Keys.
* Double click on Define Account Key.
* Go to new entries.

Act. Key.	Name
AIN	Insurance charge
ALD	Loading charge
APC	Packing charge.

* Then go back to Pricing procedure and assign Acct. Keys.

---

(1) Create condition Table for Freight with Incoterms1 + Incoterms2 combination. And create access sequence and condition Type.

(2) create condition Table for Insurance with Incoterms combination. And create access sequence and condition Type.

(3) create condition Table for Packing with material combination or use the old one.

(4) Create condition Table for Loading with material combination or use the old one.

TAX:

Class (60) 12/06/14

* The standard condition type for sales Tax is 'MWST'.
* MWST ⟶ Is not for Indian clients.
* The standard condition type for Sales Tax for Indian clients are JCST and JVAT.
* The combination for Sales Tax condition type is Country, Tax classification of Customer and Tax classification of Material.

(1) Create condition ~~type~~ Table (V/03) with the above combination.

578 condition Table

~~Customer~~ Country.

Tax classification of Customer (Tax class. cust. 1).

Tax. class. Mat.

(2) Create Access sequence (V/07).

AWST — Sales Tax Access seq. and Maintain Table.

(3) Create condition Type (V/06).

* Select the standard condition type for sales Tax 'MWST' and click on copy.

Condition Type	Acc. Seq.
AWST	AWST.

* And save it.

(4) Place the condition type in Pricing Procedure after Net value.

NO	cond. Type	From	Requirement	Base type	formula	Account Key
140	AWST	130	10	16		MWS.

* And Save it.

(5) Go to the T.code OBBG and assign procedure TAXD to Country "IN".

* Go to new entries and mention IN TAXD.

(6) Create Tax code.

* The T.code is FTXP. And mention the below.

Country IN

Tax code TI (something, can be anything you want).

* And press enter.

Description Sales Tax output

Tax Type "A" (output Tax).

* Click on continue and save it.

(7) Define Tax Determination Rules.

Path: Spro → Sales and distribution → Basic Functions → → Taxes → Define Tax Determination Rules.

* Check for country (IN) and if you do not have the combin-ation then go to new entries and mention the below.

Country	Sequence	Tax catalog
IN	1	AWST (Your condition Type)

* If you already have the combination then just simply assign your condition Type.

(8) Go to the Same Path used above and click on Define Tax relevancy of Master Records.

* Double click on Customer Taxes and go to new entries.

Tax category	Tax class.	Description
AWST	0	NO TAX
AWST	1	Full Tax.

* Double click on Material Taxes and go to new entries.

Tax category	Tax class	Description
AWST	0	No Tax.
AWST	1	Full Tax.

(9) Go to Customer Master and Maintain Tax classtication in Sales Area Data, Billing Tab as 1 (Full Tax).

(10) Go to Material Master and maintain Tax classification in Sales Org. view 1 as 1 (Full Tax).

(11) Maintain condition Records for Sales Tax in VK11.

* Condition Type [AWST] and press enter.

Country IN

Tax class cust1. 1

Tax class.Mat	Amount	Tax Code
1	5%	T1

* Save it and create order.

Statistical condition Types: Any condition Type if you check statistical,

(i) The condition type value does not have any effect on Net value.

(ii) The condition type value will not be posted into Accounting.

(1) **VPRS Condition Type (cost)**:

* We have this field in Material Master Accounting 1 View.

* The Cost which we maintain in Material Master Accounting 1 View will be determined into Sales document with the help of VPRS condition Type.

* Place the condition type (VPRS) in Pricing Procedure. We should place statistical condition types in the Last place in Pricing Procedure.

200	VPRS	☑	B	4

② SKTO condition Type (Cash Discount):

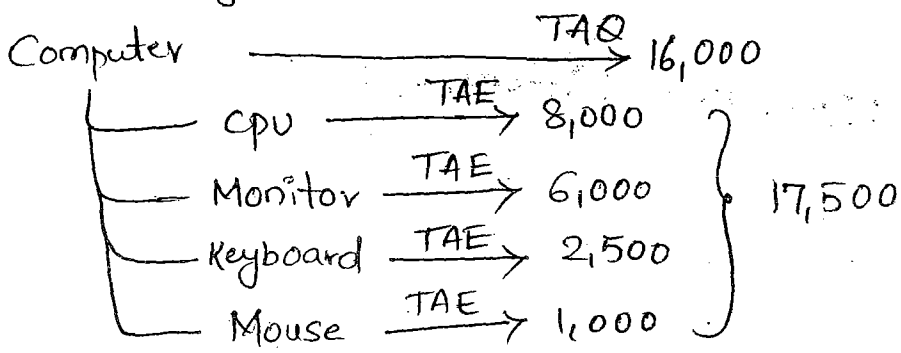
* We maintain Cash Discount Percentage in Terms of Payment. This Percentage will be determined into Sales document with the help of SKTO condition type.
* Place SKTO condition type in Pricing procedure.

NO	cond. type	Statistical	From	Reqt.	Base type formula
210	SKTO	☑	130 ↓ (Net value)	9	11

* Save it and check cash Discounts check box in Sales org 1 view.

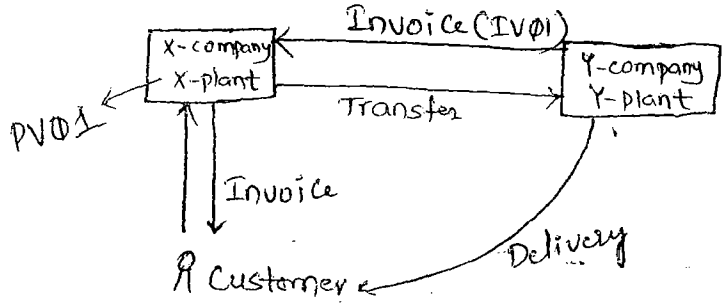
③ KUMU condition Type (cumilation condition):

* We use KUMU condition type in BOM concept.
* KUMU condition type will be used to Cumilate the values of components and display it in Main item.



④ Inter company condition Type: (PIØ1 & IVØ1).

* PIØ1 condition type determines in Intercompany Sales order.
* IVØ1 condition type determines in Intercompany Invoice.



(5) Rebate condition Type:

* BO01 → Group Rebate.
* BO02 → Material Rebate.
* BO03 → Customer Rebate.

(6) EDI1 and EDI2 :

* EDI1 → EDI → Electronic Data Interchange.
* EDI tool is a tool which will help to Transfer the document from Non SAP to SAP. or SAP to Non SAP.
* EDI1 → Customer Expected price
  EDI2 → Customer Expected value.

(7) AMIW and AMIZ Condition Types:

* If minimum order value is 2,00,000 and if you create sales order with 1,90,000 then it will take Surcharge as +10,000.

AMIW — Minimum order value.
AMIZ — Minimum Value Surcharge.

(8) DIFF (Rounding Difference): It will make the Rounding for Decimal order values. Ex: 1000.49 to 1000.

(9) Header Freight: The Standard condition type for Header Freight is HD00.

(10) HM00 (Order Value): HM00 is a order value condition type and which will be used to change the Total document Value Manually.

* Place it in Pricing Procedure.

NO	cond. type	Manual	Reqt.	Acct. Key
210	HM00	☑	2	ERL

Class (6) 15/06/14

① **Condition class:** condition class controls the type of price component. That is whether it is Base price or Discount or surcharge or Tax etc.

* Condition class for Base Price is "B".
* Condition class for Discount or surcharge is "A".
* Condition class for Tax is "D".
* condition class for Rebates is "C". (Expense Reimbursement)

Q: Where is the control that system will not activate Multiple Base prices?

A: Condition class "B".

Q: Where is the control that Tax amount will be displayed Seperately in Tax coloumn?

A: condition class "D".

② **Plus/Minus:** We use plus/minus only for condition class "A" (Discount or Surcharge). This field controls whether to deduct the condition type value or whether to add the condition type value.

* If you want to deduct then maintain "X" (Negative).
* If you want to add then maintain "A" (positive).

③ **Calculation Type:** Calculation type converts the condition type amount to condition type value.

* For Base Price the calculation type is "C" (Quantity).
* For Discounts the calculation type is A or B or C.

A ⟶ Percentage.

B ⟶ Fixed Amount.

C ⟶ Quantity.

* For freight the calculation type is "D" (Gross weight).

④ **Condition category:** condition category is a sub classification of condition class.

* The condition category for cost is "G".
* The condition category for Freight is "F".
* The condition category for Tax is "D".
* The condition category for EK01 and EK02 is "Q".
* This field will have relationship with pricing type field in copy control.
* Pricing type controls how the Pricing should be copied from Source document to Target document.

Pricing type 'B' (carry out new pricing): If pricing type is "B" then system will redetermine the new Prices into Target document.

(order) 01.06.14 (IN)

PR00	10,000
K005	500
KF00	7%
ZMAN	400

Manual pricing element.

IN 10.06.14 (New prices)

PR00	12,000
K005	750
KF00	10%

PR00	12,000
K005	750
KF00	10%

Pricing type "C": copy Manual pricing elements and redetermine others.

Pricing type "D": copy Pricing elements Unchanged.

Pricing type "G": copy Pricing elements Unchanged and redetermine Taxes.

Pricing type 'H': Redetermine only Freight conditions.

⑤ **Rounding Rule:** This field controls whether to Perform commercial Rounding or Rounding Up or Rounding Down.

* Structure condition will help to Cumilate the values of Components and display it in main item.

* The Standard condition type for Cumilation is "KUMU".

(7) **Group condition:** If you check Group condition then the Group condition amount will be distributed among all the Line items in proportionale to the value of the Line item.

* We use the Group condition if the client's requirement is if the total document value reaches to 1,00,000 then they want to Propose a discount of 20,000.

(8) **Group Condition Routine:** Group condition cocept is for Total document value or Group of Materials value.

* Group condition Routine controls whether to consider total document value or Group of Material value.

* If you want to consider total document value then maintain Group condition Routine 1.

* If you want to consider Group of materials value then maintain Group condition Routine as 3.

* To Group the Materials for Group condition concept we will use the field material Pricing group in Material master Sales org 2. view.

(9) **Rounding Diff comp:** If you check this then while distributing the Group condition amount among all the Line items if there is any Left ~~amo~~ out amount that will be added to the Largest value item in the form of value.

) Group Condition:

Class (62) 14/06/14

* We will check Group condition if client's requirement is to consider the Total document value or Group of Materials value to Propose Discount. The Group condition amount will be distributed among all the Line items in proportionale to the value of the Line item.

Group condition configuration for Total document value:

* Client's requirement is if total document value reaches to 100,000 then they want to Propose 20,000 discount.

A: ① Create condition Table (V/03) with Sales organization.

* For Group condition Total document value we do not take material combination.

Condition Table → 579

Fields → Sales organization.

② Create new Access sequence (V/07)

Group Condition → AGRP → Acc. sequence

* And place Table in Access sequence.

③ Create Condition Type (V/06).

* Copy Standard condition type for material K004 and create your own.

condition Type → AGRP → condition Group discount.

* Assign Access sequence to condition Type.

* And for Group condition maintain calculation type as "B" and check Group condition.

* Maintain Group condition Routine as 1 and checking Rounding Difference comparison.

* Go to Scale Basis and mention scale Basis as "value scale (B)". And Remove Unit of Measure and save it.

Step	condition type	From	Requirement	Account Key
35	AGRP	20	2	ERL

(5) Maintain condition Records for Group condition in VK11.

Sales org.	Amount	Unit
ZDOM	20,000	INR.

* And go to scales and mention the scale value which is 100,0000 And save it.

(6) create order and check Result.

Group condition configuration for Group of Materials:

* Client's Requirement is any Customer if he purchase A, B and C materials of 10,00,000 then they want to offer 20,000 discount.

(1) create condition Table (V/03).

condition Table ⟶ 580

Field ⟶ Material Pricing Group.

* For this Scenario we will create condition Table with the combination of Material Pricing Group. (Material master → Sales org. view2).

(2) Create Access Sequence (V/07).

Access sequence ⟶ AGRM → New GRM Acc. Seq.

* Place condition Table in Access sequence.

(3) create condition Type (V/06).

* copy condition Type K004 and create your own.

condition Type → AGRM → condition Type GRM.

* And assign Access sequence to condition Type.
* Maintain calculation type as "B" and check Group condition.
* And mention Group condition Routine as "3" and check Rounding Difference Comparison.

* And maintain Scale Basis as Value Scale (B) and Remove unit of Measure. And save it.

(4) Place the condition type in Pricing Procedure (V/08) and save it.

Step	condition Type	From	Requirement	Account Key
45	AGRM	20	2	ERL

(5) Go to the Materials which are in the Group for Group condition Discount and maintain material Pricing Group.

Material	Material pricing Group → Material Master
A	01
B	01
C	01

(6) Maintain condition Records (VK11).

Material pricing Group	Amount	
01	20,000	INR

* Select the above and go to scales and scale value is 10,00,000.
* We can have the Discount every the value of the any line item from Group condition (A or B or C) reaches to 10,00,000.
* And a Customer can have both the Discounts which are Group condition Total document value and Group condition for Group of Materials if the Customer reach the condition value.

(10) <u>Manual Entries:</u> This field controls whether to change the condition type amount or value in sales document Pricing.

* If you want to change the condition type amount or value then maintain Manual entries as "Blank" or "C".
* If you do not want to change condition type amount or value then maintain Manual entries as "D".

Calculation Type:

* If Manual entries is "Blank" or "C" then further we have control whether to change amount or value or to delete. And if you want to change amount or value then check it and do not want to change Uncheck.

Q: Client's Requirement is there is a Manual condition type which user enter manually into Sales document. But after entering the condition type system should not allow to change amount or value. Where is the control?

A: Uncheck Amount and Uncheck value.

if you want to change then check. if you dont want to change uncheck.

- ☐ delete
- ☐ amount
- ☐ value
- ☐ Qty relation
- ☐ Calculation type

Q: Can I change calculation Type in Sales document?

A: Yes. check Calculation Type.

Class (63) 16/06/14.

Header condition: Header condition is a condition which is applicable to all the Line items in the sales document.

* Header condition should always be processed Manually.
* Header condition Does not have access sequence.
* The standard Header conditions are HA00, HB00, HD00 and HM00.
* HA00 — Percentage, HB00 — Fixed, HD00 — Header Freight
* HM00 — order value.
* HA00, HB00, HM00 conditions are both Header and Group.
* Any condition type if you check both Header and Group then the condition type value will be distributed among all the Line items in proportionate to the value of the Line item.

Item condition: It is a condition which is applicable to a Particular line item in the Sales document.

Master Data:

① **Valid from and valid to:** If you maintain valid from, valid to here then it will be determined while creating conditions Records.

** Condition Records is the Master Data of Pricing.

② **Pricing Procedure:** This field in condition type controls will be used for condition Supplement concept.

* condition Supplement is adding one condition Record to another condition Record.

* If the main condition Record determines then only the Supplement condition Record will be determined.

Ex: condition Supplement.

* offering 2% Discount to those customers who are being charged Maximum Price.

* Charging 2% extra Surcharge to those customers who are being charged the Least price.

Condition Supplement Configuration:

① Create condition type a copy of K004.

* condition type — ASUP.

* No need of Access sequence.

* Change the calculation type to A from above example.

② Place the condition type in your pricing Procedure.

Step	condition Type	From	Reqt	Acct. Key
45	ASUP	20	2	ERS

main condition type and the Supplement condition type in the pricing procedure.

ASUPP1 Supplement Pricing procedure.

* Select pricing procedure and double click on control.
* Go to new entries

10	AR00
20	ASUP

* No need to maintain anything else. And save it.

(4) Go to the main condition type (V/06) and assign supplement pricing procedure in the field pricing procedure (ASUPP1).

* And save it.

(5) Go to change mode of Material combination condition Record and assign Supplement condition Record. (VK12).

* Condition Type AR00.
* Select the condition Record and click on condition Supplement.
* And add supplement condition Record.
* ASUP 2%. And save it.

(6) <u>Delete from Database</u>: This field controls whether to delete the condition Records permenantly from Data base or not.

Condition Index:

Class (64) 17/06/14.

* Condition Index will help to List out all the combinations of Prices in a Single Window. It will also help to change all the combinations of Prices in a single window.

Configuration for Condition Index:

(1) check condition Index in condition Type.

(2) Go to the path. SPRO → Sales and distribution → Basic functions → pricing → Maintain Condition Index.

* Double click on maintain condition Table for Index.

* And create one New condition Table with only material combination. And click on generate and save.

(3) Then go back and double click on Activation of condition Index.

* And check if Activation check box is checked or not. If not then check it.

(4) The path for Executing condition Index.

* Easy Access → Logistics → Sales & Distribution → Master Data → conditions → Select using Index → V/I5 change condition.

V/I5 — Change
V/I6 — Display
V_I7 — create.

* The condition Records which we already created will not be updated in condition Index cause which we maintained before we create condition Index. So the condition Records which we maintain after creating condition Index will be updated in condition Index. So we have to create the condition Index at the begening (At Implementation).

* T. code to change condition Records is VK32 (Fast entry)

Condition Update: Restricting the condition, results up to a Particular quantity or Value or Number of orders.

Ex: When ever we Launching new product the management will announce the Discount on First 50,000 quantity. That is the Customers who will place an order up to 50,000 quantity then they will get a Discount of 40%.

* SAP Restricts Number of orders to 3.
* If client's Requirement is to announce discount on First 100 orders then it is a Gap from SAP.
* A Gap means any client's requirement for which there is no solution From SAP.

Q: How system Cumilates the quantity in condition update?

A: Based on Info Structure S071.

* The T.code to See the Info Structure is OM01.

Configuration for Condition Update:

1. Create New discount condition Type a copy of K004.
   * And check condition update and Save it.
2. Place the condition type in Pricing Procedure.

Step	cond. type	From	Reqt.	Acct. Key
55	AUPP	20	2	ERS

   * And Save it.
3. Maintain condition Records for condition update (VK11).

Material	Amount
Vaxine 1500	4000

* Select condition Record and click on addition data and maintain the below.

Maximum cond. base value 1,000.

* And Save it. Now create order and see the Result.

Reference Condition Type: If pricing is same for Multiple condition Types then instead of maintaining condition Records for each and every condition type we maintain condition Records for one condition type and we assign this condition type as Reference condition type for other condition Types.

* This concept we use for Intercompany condition Types.
* In Intercompany Process we have two condition types one is PI01 and IV01.
* The pricing for both the condition types (PI01 and IV01) is same but we maintain condition Records only for PI01 and assign this condition type as Reference condition type in IV01.

Class (65) 18/06/14.

Scales: Maintaining the Prices in slab system.

* Scales is of two types.

(1) Normal scales (2) Graduated scales.

From Quantity	—	Amount
0	—	10,000
101	—	9,900
201	—	9,800
301	—	9,700
501	—	9,600

TO Quantity	—	Amount
100	—	10,000
200	—	9,900
300	—	9,800
500	—	9,700
1000	—	9,600

Sales order

350 × 9700

Qty Amount

Qty 350 Upto

100 - 10,000

100 - 9,900

100 - 9,800

50 - 9,700

Sales order.

* In Normal Scales System calculates directly that particular Slab Price based on Order Quantity.
* But in Graduated Scales System considers each Slab Price upto the order Quantity.

Q: What Scenarios System activates Multiple Base Prices?

A: Graduated Scales.

Scale Basis: This field controls on What basis you want to maintain Slab price. That is based on Quantity or Value.

Check Value: This field controls whether the Scale Price should be in Ascending or Descending order.

* If it is Base Price then it should be in Descending order. A
* If it is Discount then it should be in Ascending order. B

Scale Type: This field controls whether Scale is Normal scale or Graduated scale.

* If it is Scale Normal scale then maintain "Blank".
* If it is Graduated scale then maintain "D".

Exclusion: If you maintain Exclusion for any condition type and if that condition type determine then system eliminates the below condition types for which you have same pricing Requirement.

* Exclusion can be maintained in 2 places.

1. Condition Type Level.
2. Condition Records Level.

Maintaining Exclusion in condition Records:

* Go to the T. code VK12 and go to the combination of customer and Material.
* 100213 and Vaxine1500 and go to Details. Exclusion [X]
* Exclusion concept will not work on Supplement condition.

Exclusion Groups: If client's Requirement is grouping of Multiple condition types into one and offering the Best or Least condition types is called as Exclusion Group.

Configuration for Exclusion Groups: Class (66) 19/06/14.

* Spro → S&D → Basic functions → pricing → condition Exclusion → condition Exclusion for Groups of conditions.
* Double click on Define condition Exclusion Groups.
* Go to new entries.

  A001 Group1.
* And save it.
* Go back and double click on Assign condition types to the Exclusion Groups.
* Go to New entries.

A001	A007
A001	A005
A001	A004
A001	A032
A001	A100

And save it.

Dis adv 19e

* Go back and double click on Maintain Condition Exclusion for Pricing Procedures.
* Select your Pricing Procedure and double click on Exclusion.
* Go to New entries.

  10 A A001. And save it.

Exclusion Procedure: This field controls whether to Propose the Best condition, Records or Least condition Records.

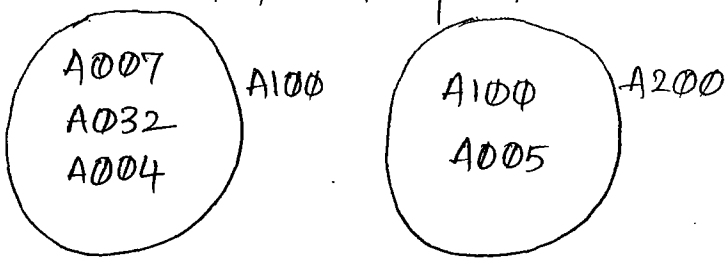
* Create one order and check the Result.

A - Best

, least.

Exclusion between two Groups: Sales and Distribution

→ Basic functions → Pricing → condition Exclusion → condition Exclusion for Group of conditions.



① Create Exclusion Group.

② Assign condition types to the Exclusion Groups.

* Delete A100 and A005 from A100 Exclusion Group.

* Create one more Exclusion Group for A100 and A005 which is A200 and assign.

③ Maintain condition Exclusion for pricing procedure and double click on Exclusion.

S.NO			
10	C	A100	A200

Exclusive(D): We use 'D' if you want to Exclusive concept for Group condition.

Condition Exclusion Procedure 'D': Exclusion concept will not work for Group conditions. If you want Exclusion concept for Group condition then maintain condition Exclusion procedure as 'D' in Exclusion Groups.

D will work to group the group condition

16 Fields of Pricing Procedure (V/08):

ep	counter	cond. type	Descri.	From	To	Manual	Required	Statistical	Print	Subtotal	Requirement	Alt. Cal. type	Alternate Base type	ACC. Key	Accru
10		AR00									2			ERL	
15		PR00				☑					2			ERL	
30			Base Value	10				☑							
40		A007		20							2			ERS	
50		A005		20							2			ERS	
55		A100		20							2			ERS	
60		A032		20							2			ERS	
70		A004		20							2			ERS	
80			Gross value	20	70										
70			Total Dis.	~~130~~ 150	70						10				
100		AINS		80							2			AIW	
110		APAC		80							2			APC	
120		ALOD		80							2			ALO	
130		AF00		80							2			ERF	
140			Copy of Gross Val	80				☑							
150			Net value	100	140			☑							

(1) **STEP:** Step specifies the sequence of the condition type in Pricing Procedure.

* Step Number will be used in "From" and "To" to determine the Base value.

(2) **COUNTER:** We use Counter if there is no space between the steps to add one more condition type.

Ex:

Steps	Steps	counter
1	1	
2	2	
3	3	1
4	3	2
	3	3
	⋮	
	4	
	5	

(3) **CONDITION TYPE:** Condition Type controls the type of price component or price elements.

* You have to specify Condition Type in Pricing Procedure.

(4) **DESCRIPTION:** Description will help to describe the condition type in Sales document Pricing.

* Description will also be used to Bifurcate the Pricing Structure.

Ex: Base value, Gross value, Net value, Total value, Total Discounts etc.

* And all Bifurcation steps are Statistical.

Class (67) 20/06/14.

(5) **FROM:** From is the standard Base.

* From will help to determine the Base value to calculate the condition value type. Value

* If you have one manual condition type then leave the From for Base value empty because the system will take the above value.

10	AR00	2	ERL	
15	PR00	2	ERL	☑ Manual
20	Base Value.			

(1) → If step 15 is Active, system determines Base Price from PR00 when you leave From for Base Price Empty.

(2) → If step 15 is not active, system determines Base Price from AR00.

(6) **TO**: To will be used to cumilate the values of multiple steps which are in a sequence.

(7) **MANUAL**: Any condition type if you check Manual then System will not determine that condition type automatically into Sales document. User has to enter it Manually.

* In standard all Header conditions are Manual conditions.

Q: Client's Requirement is there is a Manual condition type which user enters Manually into Sales document. But after entering the condition type system should not allow to change the amount or value. Where is the control?

A: Uncheck Amount and Uncheck value fields in condition Type Controls.

(8) **REQUIRED**: Any condition type if you check Required and if that condition type is missing in Sales document then system will not allow to save the Sales document.

Required → Mandatory.

(9) **STATISTICAL**: If you check Statistical

(1) Then the ~~condition type~~ Sub value does not have any effect on Net Value. And

(2) The condition type value will not be Posted into Accounting.

* In standard the below condition types are statistical.

(1) VPRS (cost) (2) SKTO (Discount) (3) PI01 (4) KUMU

(5) EK01 (6) EK02.

* All Bifurcation Steps should be statistical.

(10) **PRINT**: This field controls whether Print the condition Type into outputs or not.

* If you want to Print then maintain "X" (item Level). And if you want to Print at Header Level then maintain "S".

* And if you do not want to Print the condition type then maintain "Blank".

* Generally all Header conditions we will maintain Print as "S".

(11) **SUB TOTAL**: Sub Total will be used to store the values of condition Types in Some Temporary Tables and Fields for the Purpose of Further calculations.

* We do Further calculations in Alternate calculation type and Alternate Base Type.

* Alternate calculation type and Base type are Formulas.

EX: (1) Cost: The Subtotal for cost is "B".

"B" Means KOMP – WAVWR. → KOMP → Table A B; → WAVWR → Field.

* And We assign Subtotal "B" for VPRS condition Type.

* The Sub Total "B" we use in formula for Profit Margin. That is 11 (profit margin) and the formula is

$$\underbrace{(KOMP-NetWR)}_{\text{Net Value}} - \underbrace{(KOMP-WAVWR)}_{\text{Cost}} = \text{Profit Margin}.$$

Ex (2):

Class (68) 21/06/14.

* If the calculation Part of the condition type is not standard then we need to use formulas. Ex: Alternate calculation type or Alternate Base type.

* While calculating the formulas if you want to determine the value of condition type in formula then we have to store the condition type value in SubTotal and use that SubTotal in the Formula.

Ex: (3): Subtotal will be used to update the Sales document values into Credit Management. The Subtotal for credit Management is "A".

* Subtotal will also be used to update the Billing document values into Rebate agreements.

* The Subtotal for Rebate Agreement is "7".

(12) **REQUIREMENT:** A Requirement is a condition, which system will check everytime while determining the condition type into Sales document.

* If the Requirement Fulfills then only the condition type will be determined into Sales document.

* If the Requirement is not Fulfilling then System will not determine the condition type into sales document.

(1) The standard Requirement is "2".

* Requirement "2" checks that the Pricing field in item Category should be "X" or "B".

* Requirement "2" also checks the condition Exclusion should be "Blank".

(2) The Requirement for VPKS is 1.

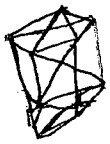
* Requirement "4" checks that if Determine cost field is checked or not in Item category controls.

(3) The Requirement for SKTO is "9".

* Requirement "9" checks that the Cash Discount field in Material Master (Sales org.1) should be checked.

(4) The Requirement for R100 condition type is "55".

* Requirement "55" checks that the Pricing field in Item category should be only "B". That is the Reason R100 condition type appears only for Free goods (TANN)



X → 1000 X 100 $\xrightarrow{TAN}$ "X" 1,00,000

Y → 20X100 $\xrightarrow{TANN}$ "B" 2,000

Inter company condition type. - 22

(5) The Requirement for PI01 condition type is "22".

* Requirement "22" checks that the ordering company and the Delivering company should be different.

(6) The Requirement type for Rebate conditions is "24".

* Requirement "24" checks that the document should be Billing Document. (that is the reason rebate will determine only in Billing Document.)

(7) The Requirement for NRAB condition type is "59".

* NRAB condition type determines in free goods with out item Generation.

* The T.code to develop new Requirement is **VOFM**.

* The User defined Requirements should be 900 or Above 900.

(13) Alternate calculation type:

Class (69) 23/06/14.

* Alternate calculation type is a Formula.
* We use Alternate calculation type if the calculation part of the condition type value is not standard.
* If you maintain formula in Alternate calculation type then system calculates and proposes the total value of the condition type.
* If you maintain formula in Alternate calculation type then no need to maintain condition Records because system directly proposes condition value.

EX:

1st Method

Step	condition Type	Description	From	Subtotal
10	AR00			
20		Base value	10	(1)
30	A007 (10%)		20	(2)
40	A005 (5%)		20	(2)
50	A004 (3%)		20	(2)
60	A100		20	
200		VPRS		(B)

AR00 = 2,00,000, A007 = −20,000, A005 = −10,000, A004 = −6,000

VPRS = 40,000, A100 = ?

$$\text{formula for A100} = \frac{(\text{Base} - \text{Discount}) - \text{cost}}{5} \times 90\%$$

$$= \frac{(\text{KOMP} - \text{KZWI1}) - (\text{KOMP} - \text{KZWI2}) - (\text{KOMP} - \text{WAVWR})}{5} \times 90\%$$

$$= \frac{(2{,}00{,}000 - 36{,}000) - 40{,}000}{5} \times 90\% = 22{,}320.$$

EX: 2 Method.

Step	cond. type	Description	From	To	Subtotal
10	AR00				
20		Base value	10		
30	A007 (10%)		20		
40	A005 (5%)		20		
50	A004 (3%)		20		
55		Base-dis.	20	50	(1)
60	A100		20		

Formula for A100 = $\frac{\quad}{5}$ × 90%

(14) ALTERNATE BASE TYPE:

* The standard Base is "FROM".
* FROM will help to Determine the Base value.
* Alternate Base type is a formula. We use Alternate base type if the Calculation part of the Base value is not standard.
* If you maintain formula in Alternate base type then system calculate and proposes only the base value.
* If you maintain formula in Alternate base type then you have to maintain condition Records to convert the base value into condition value.

EX: Same Example. $\frac{(\text{Base} - \text{discount}) - \text{cost}}{5}$

$$= \frac{(\text{KOMP} - \text{KZWI1}) - (\text{KOMP} - \text{WAVWR})}{5}$$

$$= \frac{1{,}64{,}000 - 40{,}000}{5} = 24{,}800$$

A100 = 24,800 × 90% = 22,320.

Alternate calculation type	Alternate base type
(1) We use Alternate calculation type if the cal. part of condition type value is not standard.	(1) We use Alternate base type if the calculation part of the base value is not standard.
(2) If you maintain formula in Alt. cal. type then system calculates and proposes the condition value	(2) If you maintain formula in Alternate base type they system calculates and proposes only the base value.
(3) If you maintain formula in Alt. cal. type they no need to maintain condition Records.	(3) If you maintain formula in Alt. base type they you have to maintain condition Records to convert the base value into condition value.
* For Fixed.	* You change the condition Records

(15) **ACCOUNT KEY:** Account Key is one of the parameter to determine Revenue G/L accounts while posting Invoice Values into Accounting.

* The Standard Account Key is "ERL".
* Discounts Account Key is "ERS".
* Freight Account Key is "ERF".
* The Standard Account Key for Tax is "MWS" or "MW3".
* The Standard Account Key for Rebates "ERB".
* The Standard Account Key for Accruals is "ERU".
* If you do not Assign Account Key then system will not post the condition type Values into Accounting.

Q: There is a condition type which is statistical and we assigned Account Key for that condition type. Will it post the values into Accounting or not?

A: No. It does not have any effect.

(16) **ACCRUALS:** We use Accruals in Rebate concept.

* Accruals is a provisional account which will help to keep some money aside from each transactions to meet the Future Requirement of Rebate settlement.
* The Account Key for Accruals is "ERU".

Q: There is a condition type which is statistical but i want to post the values into some G/L Accounts. Where is the control?

A: Any condition type if condition Class is "C" (Expense Reimbursement) even if it is statistical we can post it into some G/L accounts with the help of Accruals "ERU".

REVERSE PRICING

CMSD(10) 24/06/12

all cement companys - Medicem Xeron will follow reverse pricing

① Forward Pricing

Slip	cond. type	Description	from	
10	PR00			→ 1,00,000
20		base value	10	→ 1,00,000
30	JVAT (4%)		20	→ 4,000
40	Total		20 30	→ 1,04,000

Reverse Pricing

		Man	Sub total	Alt. cal. type	Alt. Base type
10	ZPRO	☑	1	→	→ 1,04,000
20	JVAT (4%)		2	→	→ 4,000
30	Base value			→	1,00,000
40	PR00	30		→	1,00,000

Formula for Subtotal ① $= ((KOMP-KZWI1) - (KOMP-KZWI2))$

$= 1,04,000 - 4,000$

$= 1,00,000.$

Formula for Subtotal ② $= \frac{(KOMP-KZWI1) \times 100}{100+4} = \frac{\cancel{1,04,000}^{1,000} \times 100}{\cancel{104}} = 1,00,000$

② Forward Pricing

10	PR00		1,00,000
20	Base value	10	1,00,000
30	BED (10%)	20	10,000
40	ECS (2%)	30	200
50	SECS (1%)	30	100
60	Base+Exise	20 50	1,10,300
70	JVAT (4%)	60	4,412
80	Total	60 70	1,14,712

Reverse Pricing

		Man	Stati	Sub total	Alt. cal. type	Alt. base type	
10	ZPRO	☑	☑	1	→	→	→ 1,14,712
20	JVAT			2		$\frac{(KOMP-KZWI1) \times 100}{100+4}$	4,412
30	Base+EXISE	☑		3	$(KOMP-KZWI1) - (KOMP-KZWI2)$	→	→ 1,10,300
40	Base value	☑			$\frac{(KOMP-KZWI3) \times 100}{100+10.3}$	→	→ 1,00,00
50	BED (10%)	From 40			→		→ 10,000
60	ECS (2%)	50			→		→ 200
70	SECS (1%)	50			→		→ 100
80	PR00	40			→		→ 1,00,000

Q: How Pricing Procedure determines in to Sales documents?

VA01

Doc. type	OR
Sales org.	K100
Distri.	K1
Division	K1

① K100, K1, K1, A, 1 = AVAA01

AVAA01 (pricing Procedure)

Slip	C. type	Req.
10	AR00	2 (Full Fills)

Access Sequence

③ AR00 (V106) → AR00

④ AR00 (V107)

10	510 – cust/mat.
20	511 – PL/mat
30	512 – Mat

⑤ VK50 (Condition Record)

Customer	10219	XXXX
Material	Qty	Quantity
Vaxine/1500	10	TAN

XXXX

* First system determines Pricing Procedure based on sales Area, document Pricing Procedure and customer Pricing Procedure. And System will go inside the Pricing procedure and go to First step and take the condition type and checks whether Requirement is Full Filling or Not. If Requirement Full Fills then system will go inside the condition type and take the Access sequence. Then system will go inside the Access sequence and takes the condition Table and go to the condition Records and check whether the condition Record exist or not. If condition Record exist then System will determine it in to Sales document. Like this the Process will continue for all the steps in Pricing Procedure.

Q: Out of the 16 fields of Pricing Procedure what sequence System Follows while determining the Price into Sales document.

A: Step (1) → Counter (2) → condition type (3) → Requirement (4) → Subtotal (5) → Alternate Base type (6) → Alternate calculation type (7) → After Remaining fields of the Pricing procedure.

* System will follow the below standard Procedure while determining Price into Sales Document. (Important).

1. Step
2. Counter
3. condition Type
4. Requirement
5. Subtotal
6. Alternate Base type
7. Alternate calculation type.

Forward

10 HRCC 200000

20 Base value [illegible] 200000

30. SVAT(4%) [20] 8000

4. Total value [20] [30] 2-08000

20 SVAT(4%) 2-00000 (Base value)

30. Base value

$$\left(\frac{2000 \times 100}{100+4}\right) = 8000$$

$$\frac{(\text{KOMP} - \text{KZWT})1) \times 100}{100+4} = 500$$

$$(\text{KOMP} - \text{KZWT}) - (\text{KOMP} - \text{KZWT})$$

200000

40. HRCC (100%)(30) 2000000

PRICING REPORT:

Class (11) 25/06/14

* The Pricing Report consists of the information of all the Prices which we maintain in SAP and which will help for Analysis Purpose.
* Spro → Sales and distribution → Basic functions → Pricing → Maintain Pricing Report.
* Double click on create Pricing Report.
* Mention some name A1 — New Pricing Report. Press enter.
* click on Fields.
* Select the fields for which combination you maintained condition Records in Pricing. Customer / Material, Price List / Material, Customer price Group, sales organization, Material Pricing group, Incoterms.
* Click on OR and select your condition Tables.
* After selecting condition Tables click on Customize to structure.
* And mention the follow.

Customer	—	Page Header
Price List	—	Item Header
Material	—	Item Header
Incoterms	—	Group Header
Sales org.	—	Group Header

* And save the Report.
* The T. code to excute the Pricing Report **V/LD**.
* Mention the Report Number and click on Excute.

* Client's Requirement is any customer if he Purchase slow moving items then client wants to offer 20 days extra Credit Period.

Configuration: (1) create a new condition type a copy of KP04.

(2) Place the condition type in Pricing Procedure (V/08).

* Place it in Last Position.

* 250 ACRE ☑
  ↓ ↓ ↓
  Step cond.type Statistical.

* Save it.

(3) Maintain condition Records (VK11).

* enter condition type ACRE and enter Sales organization, Distribution channel

* Select the above and click on Additional data.

* Go to Additional value days — [20] and Save it.

* Create Sales order and double click on item and go to Billing Tab

Q: How to maintain Lower limit and Upper limit for Manual condition or Header condition?

A: The Lower limit and Upper limit in condition Records will help to decrease or increase the Pricing with Some Limitations.

* We can maintain it in condition Records but for Manual condition and Header conditions we do not have condition Records so we will follow the below Path to maintain Upper limit and Lower limit.

* SPRO → Sales & distribution → Basic functions → Pricing → Pricing control → Define condition types → Define upper limit and lower limit for condition types.

* The T-code is **OVB2**.

Q: If condition type is not determined into Sales document as a consultant what would you do?

* Go to Analysis (click on Analysis) in Pricing.

Q: Client's Requirement is they want to update the new Price into already created open order?

A: Go to Sales document Pricing maintain 'C'.

C – update Pricing.

* C means copy manual Pricing elements and redetermine others.

Class (72) 26/06/14.

* Client's requirement is they want to introduce new Discount condition type in existing pricing procedure. And this new discount condition type should be automatically determines while creating Invoice to the already created sales orders.

A: Go to the new condition type which you wanted to process while creating Invoice and maintain condition category field as "L".

L → Generally New when copying.

* client's requirement is the Freight condition type should be determine based on below requirement.

Total Document Weight >1000(kg), 10,000/-

X, Y, Z	Weight >400(kg), 5000/-
	Weight <400(kg), 3000/-
A, B, C	Weight >400 (kg), 3000/-
	Weight <400 (kg), 2000/-

Total document Weight <200(kg), 1500/-

Tables in Pricing:

* Pricing Table = KONV.
* Pricing Structures = KOMV, KOMK, KOMP.

Table will store the Data but structure does not have data.

Structure will help to carry the data while doing Transactions.

* The T.code to see Table entries is "SE16".
* The T.code to see Technical Name of fields "SE11".
* To see the Table entries goto "VBAK" Table first and copy the Number in "KNUMV" and then go to "KONV" Table and paste the Number you copied in "KNUMV" field then you will be able to see the entries.
* Structures KOMK, KOMP will be used in Requirement. And in fields in Field catalog (V/03).

Questions on Pricing?

Info 5071
Header

1. What is condition Technique?
2. What is condition Table?
3. User defined condition Table Numbers should be — ?
4. What happens if I save condition Table in Local object?
5. Condition Table will be stored in which Request?
6. What is field catalog?
7. If the field is not available in Field catalog as a consultant what you do? Package consists of Group of Enhancement
8. What is Access Sequence?
9. What happens if I Uncheck Exclusive in Access sequence?

(10) What happens if I check Exclusive in Access Sequence?

(11) Access sequence will be Stored in which Request?

(12) Why we assign condition type in OVKK?

(13) What is condition Index?

(14) What is condition Update?

(15) What is the Info Structure S071

(16) What is Group condition?

(17) What is Group condition Routine? (controls Total doc. value or Group of mats)

(18) What is Rounding difference comparision?

(19) What is common T.code for Pricing?

(20) What is the Purpose of Exclusion Indication?

(21) client's Requirement is they do not want to change price in Sales document. Where is the control?

(22) client's Requirement is there is Manual condition type which user enters manually into sales document but after entering the condition type system should not allow to change the Price. where is the control?

(23) If you have both Exclusion and condition supplement they which concept will work?

(24) What is condition Supplement?

(25) What is Exclusion Group?

(26) What is Cumilate condition?

(27) In what scenarios system will activate multiple Base price condition Type?

(28) What is Header condition?

*(29) How to [illegible]

condition?

(30) How many places we can maintain Exclusion and where?

(31) What is the difference b/w Normal scale and Graduated scale?

*(32) What is the T.code to develop new Pricing Requirements?

(33) What is the T.code to develop new Formulas? (VOFM).

* User defined requirements and formulas should be 900 and above

(34) What is Standard Base?

(35) When we use counter?

(36) What happens if I check statistical?

(37) What is the purpose of Subtotal?

(38) What is the Subtotal for cost?

(39) What is the Purpose of Requirement? and what is standard Requirement and what it checks?

(40) What is the Requirement for R100 and what it checks?

(41) What is the difference between Alternate calculation type and Alternate Base type?

(42) What is Accruals?

(43) There is a condition type which is statistical and if you assign Account Key. what happens?

(44) There is a condition type which is statistical but i want to Post it into Some G/L accounts. How to do this?

(45) What is T.code to Execute Pricing Reports?

(46) client's Requirement is if any customer if they purchase slow moving item if the purchase they want to offer 20 days credit management?

FREE GOODS:

Class (73) 27/06/13

* Offering the Goods free of cost in Relation to the Main item is called as Free Goods.

* Free Goods are classified into two types.

(1) Inclusive Free Goods.

(2) Exclusive Free Goods.

Inclusive Free Goods	Exclusive Free Goods
(1) In Inclusive the Free Goods Quantity is included in the ordered Quantity. Ex: (offer is if customer purchase X material of 100 Qty then he will get 20 Qty for free.) For the above offer if customer places order for 200 Qty then main item Qty becomes 160 and Free goods Qty becomes 40.	(1) In Exclusive the Free goods Quantity is Excluded from ordered quantity. That is for the above example if customer places order for 200 Quantity then the main item quantity remains 200 and Free goods quantity becomes 40.
(2) In Inclusive you can offer only Same material as Free Goods.	(2) In Exclusive you can offer Same material or different material as Free goods.

* Inclusive free goods is further classified into two types.

(1) Inclusive with Item generation.

(2) Inclusive with out Item generation.

Inclusive with Item generation	Inclusive W/O Item generation.
(1) 10 X = 160 TAN 1,60,000 (1X=1000)	(1) 10 X = 200 = 20,00,000
" X = 40 TANN 40,000	(1X=1000) NRAB = -40,000
R100 -40,000	Qty 200 = 1,60,000
200 Qty = 1,60,000	

(2) If Inclusive with Item generation the Free goods item will be determined as sub item. Here "R100" condition type determines and makes the Free good item value "Zero."	(2) If Inclusive with Item generation the Free goods item will not be determined as sub item. Here "NRAB" condition type determines and deducts the value of Free goods from main item value

Item category Determination for Free Goods:

(1) **Manual Free Goods:** We enter Free goods Manually into Free Goods. sales documents. Enter your Free good item maintain Higher Level item Number as main item Number (10). VOV4

OR → Document type

NORM → Item category Group

— → Item Usage

TAN → Higher Level Item Category

TANN → Default Item category.

* System does not consider Item Usage in Manual Free goods item category determination.

(2) **Automatic Free Goods:**

OR → Document type

NORM → Item category group

FREE → Item usage.

TAN → Higher Level Item Category.

TANN → Default Item Category.

* Free Goods is based on Condition Technique.
* Condition Technique is process of determining condition Records into Sales document.
* Condition Technique consists of condition Records, condition Records will be stored in condition Tables, condition Tables

will be placed in Access Sequence from Most specific to most general. Access sequence will be assigned to condition types and condition Types will be placed in Pricing Procedure or Free goods procedure.

<u>Configuration for Free goods:</u> Spro → Sales and distribution → basic functions → free goods → condition Technique for Free goods → Maintain condition Tables.

* Any condition Table Number should be 500 and above.

* ① create condition Table with Customer and Material combination.

610	customer	Sales Org.
	Material.	Sales Org

* Create one condition Table with the combination of Sales organization and material.

611	Sales organization
	Material.

② Maintain Access Sequence (cross-client).

* The Standard Access sequence is NA00.

* Create New Access sequence.

AA00 New Access sequence for Free goods.

* Select the Acc. seq. and double click on Accesses. And go to new entries and maintain condition Tables in New entries.

10	610	customer / material
20	611	Sales org. / Material.

* Select above Steps and double click on Fields.

(3) Create condition type.

* The Standard condition type is NA00.
* Go to New entries and define your own and Assign Acc. Seq.

AA00	New Free goods condition type	Access sequence. AA00

(4) Maintain Pricing Procedures (Free goods procedures).

* The Standard Free goods procedure is "NA0001".
* Go to New entries and define your own procedure.

AAA001 New Freegoods Procedure.

* Select the procedure and double click on control Data.
* Go to New entries and assign your condition type.

10	AA00
Step	cond. Type

* And save it.

<u>Activate Free Goods Determination</u>: We will assign Free goods procedure to the combination of Sales Area, Document pricing procedure and Customer pricing Procedure.

* Go to New entries and assign Free goods procedure as.

Sales org.	Distribution ch.	Division	Doc. pri. proc.	cust. pric. proc
ZDOM	Z2	Z2	A	1

* And save it.

<u>Determine Item category for Free goods item</u>: Same Path and check.

Control Free Goods Pricing:

Control pricing for Free goods Item category:

* In this configuration step go to "TANN" item category and maintain Pricing field as "B". (B – Free goods pricing).

Item cat.	Pricing
TANN	B

Maintain condition type for 100% Discount:

* The standard condition type for 100% Discount is "R100."
* If you want to create then you can copy "R100" and create ur own.

no need create

* In

Maintain Pricing Procedure for Free goods (pricing):

* In this configuration step we place R100 condition type in pricing procedure.

previous last step

Step	cond. type	From	Requirement	~~Alt.~~ base type
200	R100	80 (Net value)	55	28

Acc. Key ERS

* Place the above in Normal pricing procedure.
* Requirement "55" checks that the Pricing field in Item category should be only "B".
* Base type formula "28" will deduct the Net value and make the Net value "zero".

Set Transfer of costs to Main item:

This configuration step will help to transfer the costs of Free goods item to main item.

* Go to change mode and enter Billing type F2, Delivery type LF.
* Select the combination and double click on item and go to Standard free good item category TANN. And go to details and check the [illegible] → In this [illegible] cumulate cost

* The T. code maintain free goods "VBN1". → Condition Records.
* Mention Free Goods condition type AA00. And press enter.
* Select Sales org. /material table and click on continue.
* Mention your Sales organization. S/M
* When you maintain free goods condition Records system by defaut inclusive proposes Inclusive. If you want Exclusive then click on Exclusive

Minimum Quantity: It is the Quantity which customer has to place order to get eligibility for Free Goods.

* Maintain Minimum Qty as "100".

From Quantity: From Quantity is the Base quantity to calculate Free Goods.

* Maintain From Quantity as "30".
* Maintain Unit of Measure "EA". BT

Are Free Goods: It is the Number of Free goods we offering. BT

Calculation Rule: which will help to calculate the Free Goods Quantity. We have 3 types of calculation Rules.

1. Pro rata
2. Unit reference
3. Whole units

1. Pro rata: In this calculation Rule system will calculate the Free Goods based on From Quantity and ordered Quantity.

Material	Min Qty	From Qty	are Free goods
X	100	30	4

for 30 = 4 and for 200 = ?

$$= \frac{200 \times 4}{30} = 27.$$

② **Unit Reference**: In Unit reference from Quantity will be considered as 1 unit. And customer has to place the order for ~~from~~ multiples of From Quantity.

$$\frac{100 \times 4}{30} = 13.32$$

for 30 = 4

200 = ?

6 units 200 Qty so 6 X 4 = 24.

③ **Whole Units**: If order Quantity exactly Divisible with from Quantity then only System will Propose free goods.

for 30 = 4

200 = ?

for 200 = 0.

~~for 30 = 4~~

120 = ?

for 120 = $\frac{120}{30} = 4 \times 4 = 16$.

Free Goods Category: This field controls whether the Free goods is Inclusive or Exclusive. And it also controls whether it with Item generation or with out Item generation. (Inclusive).

Free goods Delivery control: This field controls that the Free goods item delivery should be in Relation to the main item.

* Maintain Free goods delivery controls as E.

Exclusive Free Goods: Free Goods category will be 2 and we have to maintain Additional Free goods item. (Y).

* In Free goods Exclusive you can have different material as Free goods if Quantity increases.

100	Y
200	Z
300	W

① Place "NRAB" condition type in Pricing Procedure above "R100".

Step	condition type	From	Requirement	Alt. base type	Acc. Key
255	NRAB	Net value	59	29	ERS

② Requirement "59" checks that the Free goods category as "3".

3 → Inclusive without Item generation.

③ Base type formula "29" will deduct the value of Free goods from main item value.

Class (75) 30/06/14.

Questions on Free Goods:

① What is the Difference between Inclusive and Exclusive Free Goods?

② What is the Difference between Free Goods with item generation and with out Item generation?

③ How many calculation Rules we have and explain them?

④ Where is the control that the Free Goods Delivery should be in relation to the Main item?

⑤ Can I determine Automatic Free Goods in Quotation, contracts and Returns? No. You can determine free Goods only in orders (Document category "C").

⑥ I want to Transfer the cost of free Goods to item to main item?

A: In copy controls check Cumilati cost.

(7) Can I determine Multiple Free Goods? No. It's a GAP. But you can have Manually.

(8) What is the Requirement for R100 and what it checks?

(9) What is the Requirement for NRAB and what it checks?

(10) What is the Base type for R100 and what it will do?

(11) What is the Base type for NRAB and what it will do?

(12) Can I determine different materials as Free Goods if Quantity increases?

(13) How you determine Free Goods item category in third party process?

X → TAS
Y → TASS

copying TAS to TASS with the change of Pricing field "B".

OR	OR
BANS	BANS
—	FREE
—	TAS
TAS	TASS.

(*) Material Determination

* It is the Process of Substituting One Product in place of Other Product. The below scenarios we do Material determination.

(1) If stock is not available.

(2) Stop manufacturing the Old product.

(3) Combo Pack. (Rice Bag = Rice Bag + Oil can)

* Material determination is also based on condition Technique.

* Material determination is of two types.

(1) Manual

(2) Automatic.

→ In Manual Material determination user has to determine it Manually.

→ In Automatic Material determination system will determines it automatically. Automatic Material determination classified into two types.

(1) Auto Replacement.

(2) Substituted item will be displayed as Sub item.

→ In Auto Replacement the main item will be Replaced with Substituted item.

→ In Substituted item willbe displayed as sub item, the main item will be displayed as it is but the substituted item will be displayed as Sub item.

* Substituted item will be displayed as sub item will be further classified into two types.

(1) Header Pricing.

(2) Item Pricing.

<u>Item category determination for Header Pricing</u>:

	For main item X	For Substituted item Y
X ⟶ TAX	OR	OR
Y ⟶ TAPS	NORM	NORM
	PSHP	~~PSHP~~ PSEL
	—	TAX
	TAX.	TAPS.

Item category determination for Item Pricing:

	for main item X	for substituted item Y
X → TAPA	OR	OR
Y → TAN	NORM	NORM
	PSA1	PSA2
	—	TAPA
	TAPA	TAN

Examples:

Header Pricing

Crocin (No stock) → Rs. 1000/CAR

Paracetamal (stock) → Rs. 1050/CAR

Crocin 200 CAR	→ Rs. 1000/CAR
paracetamal 200 CAR	→ Rs. 0

1. If stock is not available
2. Combo Pack

Item Pricing

Swift Old → Rs. 7.90L

Swift New → Rs. 8.95L

Swift old	→ Rs. 0
Swift New	→ Rs. 8.95L

1. Stopped Manufacturing Old Product.

Path for Material Determination:

* SPRO → Sales & distribution → Basic functions → Material Determination → Maintain Prerequisites for Material determination.

*(1) Create condition Tables,

* In Material Determination instead of Material we take "Material entered" combination (field) to create condition Table.

* If Material determination is common for all products or Customers then we go for Sales org. and Mat. entered combination.

Table 710 → Sales org.

(2) Maintain Access Sequence.

* Go to new entries and create your own Access sequence.
* Standard Access Sequence for Material determination is "A001".

AAA1 — New Access sequence.

* Select Access Sequence and double click on Accesses and go to new entries.

10 — 710

* Select the Table and double click on Fields and save it.

(3) Define condition type.

* The standard condition type is "A001".
* Go to new entries create condition type and assign Access Sequence.

CON. Typ	Name	Acc. seq.
AAA1	new cond. type	AAA1.

* And save it.

(4) Maintain Procedure.

* The standard Procedure is "A00001".
* Go to new entries and define your own.

Procedure	Name
AAAAA1	New Pri. Proc.

* Select it double click on controls and place your condition type

Step	condition type
10	AAA1.

(5) Assign Procedures to sales document types.

* Go to your document type (OR) and assign your Procedure.

OR Standard order — AAAAA1.

⑥ Define Substitution Reasons.

* Go to new entries and enter Some Subtitule Reason.

Sbst Reason	Name
AAA1	New substitute reason.

*
*Entry: This field controls whether to print the main item or
*
Substituted item in to the Print outs.

* If you check this then System will print the main item into the Print outs.

* If you Uncheck this then system will Print the Subtituted item into the Print outs.

Warning: We use warning in Auto Replacement Material determination

* If you check this then before material determination system will give Warning message.

**
Strategy: Strategy controls whether to Substitute Manually or Automatically.

* A → ~~Substituted Products~~ You will get a Pop up to choose displayed ~~as sub item~~.

***
Outcome: Outcome controls whether to replace the substituted item or whether to display substituted item as Sub item. And it also controls if Substituted item displayed as sub item then whether to go for Header Pricing or item Pricing.

* "Blank" means Auto Replacement.

* A = Substituted item will be displayed as sub item with Header pricing.

* B = Substituted item will be displayed as sub item with Item Pricing.

(1) Maintain condition records for material determination.

* T. code is **VB11**.
* Mention your Material determination type (AAA1) and enter.
* Mention your Sales org. — ZDOM.

→ Proposed Reason — AAA1 (Substituted Reason).

→ Mention Main item in Material Entered — A

Material — B (which you want Substitute with)

* And save it.
* Create Sales order and check the Result.
* Try and check warning.
* Try with Entry field (in Print outs).
* If you maintaining something in outcome (A or B) then you have to Uncheck the Warning.

** MRP Indicator : We have this field in Material determination Master data (VB11 → Double click on main item).

* If you check this then while substituting the material system will check the stock of that Particular material. If stock is not available then system will substitute other Material as substituted item.
* We can maintain multiple material as substituted items but you can determine only one at a time. And this would be controlled by MRP indicator as per the availability of the stock.
* If you want to see the Result of MRP indicator then go to the T. code **OVZ9** and select the combination of ~~MRP~~ availability check field option and A. Go to the details and check with out RLT.

Questions on Material Determination:

1. What is the Purpose of Entry field?
2. What is the Purpose of Strategy?
3. What is the Purpose of Outcome?
4. What is the Purpose of MRP Indicator?

LISTING / EXCLUSION

Class (77) 02/07/14

* Listing is allowing some materials to customers for sales.
* Exclusion → Restricting some materials to customers for sales.
* Listing / Exclusion is also based on Condition Technique.
* Spro → Sales & distribution → Basic functions → Listing / Exclusion.
* Double click on maintain condition Tables for Listing/Exclusion.
* Create condition Table with combination of Customer and Material combination.
* Every condition type will have Seperate Tables.
* Go to create mode & Select the combination of Customer / Material.

504 → condition Table → Customer
Material

(2) Maintain Access sequence for Listing/Exclusion.

* The Standard Access sequence for Listing is A001.
* The standard Access sequence for Exclusion is B001.

AAA1 → Listing → 10 504

AAA2 → Exclusion → 10 504.

* Select the Access sequences, double click on Fields.

③ Maintain Listing/Exclusion types.

* The Standard Listing type is A001.
* The Standard Exclusion type is B001.
* Go to new entries and create your own.

AAA1 ⟶ Listing type ⟶ AAA1
AAA2 ⟶ Exclusion type → AAA2 } Access sequence

④ Procedures for maintaining Listing/Exclusion.

* The standard Procedure for Listing is A00001.
* The standard procedure for Exclusion is B00001.
* Go to new entries and create your own.

AAAAA1 ⟶ Listing Procedure ⟶ AAA1
AAAAA2 ⟶ Exclusion Procedure → AAA2 } condition types

⑤ Activate Listing/Exclusion by Sales document type.

* Go to the document type (OR) and assign Listing Procedure (AAAAA1) and Exclusion Procedure (AAAAA2) and save it.

⑥ Optimize Accesses.

* Go to new entries and mention your condition types and assign relevant Tables.

AAA1 ⟶ 10
AAA2 ⟶ 10

* If you have more than one table then you have to maintain them from Most specific to most general as we have no Exclusive.

⑥ Maintain Listing/Exclusion condition Records.

* The T. code is VB01.

* Exclusion ⟶ Customer → 100214 | Listing → Customer → 100215
Materials → X and Y. | Material → A

Cross Selling:

* Selling additional Products along with the main Products is called as Cross selling.
* Cross Selling is also based on Condition Technique.
* Spro → Sales & distribution → Basic functions → Cross selling → Define determination Procedure for Cross selling.

(1) Double click on Create Condition Table.

* If Cross selling is common for all customer then create the condition Table with the combination of Sales org. and material.

505 → Sales org.
Material

(2) Maintain Access sequences.

* The standard Access Sequence for cross selling is C001.
* Go to new entries and create your own.

A001 → Acc. Seq. for Cross selling → Step 10 Table 505

(3) Define condition Types.

* The standard condition type for cross selling is CS01.
* Go to new entries and create your own.

AS01 → New cond. type → A001 → Acc. seq.

(4) Maintain Procedure.

* The standard Procedure for Cross selling is CS0001.
* Go to new entries and create your own.

AS0001 → New Proc. for Cross selling → AS01 → cond. type.

(5) Maintain customer / document Procedures for Cross selling.

(i) Define Customer Procedure for Cross selling.

* The standard is "B". if you want you can create your own.

(ii) Define document procedure for cross-selling.

* The standard "B" but if you want to you can create your own.

(iii) Assign document procedure for cross-selling to sales document type.

* Go to your document type (OR) and assign PP document procedure "B"

OR Standard order → "B"

* And save it.

(6) Define and assign cross-selling profile.

* Double click on define cross-selling profile.

* The standard cross-selling profile is CS0001.

* Go to new entries and define your own.

A0001 → Cross-selling profile

* And assign cross-selling ~~selling~~ pricing procedure (AS0001).

(7) Assign cross-selling profile.

* We assign cross-selling profile to the combination of sales area, cross-selling customer procedure and cross-selling document procedure.

ZDOM Z2 Z2 B B AS0001. → Cross selling profile.

(8) Maintain condition records for cross-selling.

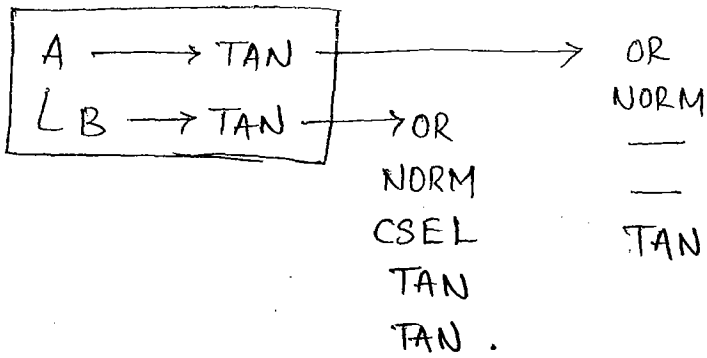
* The T.code is $\boxed{VB41}$

Material determination type [AS01] → Nothing but cross-selling type.

Material	Material
A	B
↓	↓
Main Product	Addition Product (cross selling).

(9) Go to customer master and maintain PP customer procedure as "B".

* The Item category for cross-selling item is also TAN.
* And it determines based on below scenario.



<u>Item Proposal</u>: Listing of Materials which Customer Regularly orders and calling that List while creating Sales Order. Which will save the time of End users.

* The T. Code to create Item Proposal is **VA51**.
* Enter Item Proposal type as 'PV'.
* Enter and give some description and mention valid from and valid to and mention Materials which you want to List.

X	10	EA
Y	50	EA
Z	90	EA
⋮		

* And save it. Make a note of Item Proposal Number (50000039).
* And go to Customer master (XD02) and assign item Proposal Number there. (50000039).
* Create Sales order and click on **Propose items** to get the Item Proposal.
* You can either select Materials or materials with quantity or Selection List based on your requirement.

Incompletion Log (Log of Incompleteness):

* This configuration will help to Propose the message if any of the mandatory field is missing. And it will also controls if any of the mandatory field is missing then which further transaction should be blocked.

Incompletion Procedure: It is a Procedure which consist of List of Mandatory fields which user has to enter mandatorily while creating Sales order. If any of the mandatory field is missing then either system will not allow to save the sales document or even if the system will allow to save the sales document the status of the Sales document will be Incomplete. And You can not Process Incomplete documents.

Path for Incomplete Log: Spro → Sales & distribution → Basic functions → Log of Incomplete items → Define Incompleteness Procedures.

* Select the group. if Incompletion Procedure for Header data then Select "A".
* If Incompletion Procedure for Item data then Select "B".
* If Incompletion Procedure for schedule line data then Select "C".
* Select "A" (Sales-Header) and double click on Procedure then go to change mode and go to new entries and creati your own Incomplete Procedure.

A1 — Incompletion Procedure.

* Select the Procedure and double click on fields and go to new entries.
* Get the Table name and field name for each and every field.

	Field name	Table name
Payment Terms →	ZTERM →	VBKD
Incoterms1 →	Inco1 →	VBKD
Incoterms2 →	Inco2 →	VBKD
Sales district →	BZIRK →	VBKD
PO Number →	BSTKD →	VBKD
Customer Group →	KDGRP →	VBKD.

* Mention the Table name and field name.

Table	Field Name	Screen	Status (After Last step)
VBKD	ZTERM	KDE3	A1
VBKD	INCO1	KDE3	A2
VBKD	INCO2	KDE3	A3
VBKD	BZIRK	KKAU	A2
VBKD	BSTKD	KBE5	A1

Status: Status controls if any of the mandatory fields is missing then which transaction should be blocked.

(2) Assign Incompleteness Procedure.

* Double click on Assign Procedure to the Sales document type.
* If Incompletion procedure for Header data then we assign it to Sales document type.
* If Incompletion Procedure is for Item data then we assign it to Item categories.
* Go to your document type and assign your Incompletion Procedure.

(3) Define status groups.

* Status Group controls which further transaction should be blocked if the field is missing.

* Go to new entries.

A1 → Billing document ☑

A2 → Delivery document ☑

A3 → All (☑, ☑, ☑)

* Go back to Incomplete Procedure and assign relevant status group.

* Double click on your Procedure and go to change mode.

* Incomplete Messages check box in sales document types controls whether to save incomplete document or not.

Revenue Account Determination:

* It is the Process of determining Revenue G/L accounts while Posting Invoice values into accounting.

* When ever we create Invoice system generates accounting document. And the accounting entry is → Customer a/c Dr.
To
Revenue a/c Cr.

* For the Customer account system determines G/L accounts from Reconcillation account.

* For the Revenue account system determines G/L account from "Revenue account determination".

* Revenue account determination is an Integration between SD and FI.

* Revenue account determination is also based on condition Technique.

<u>Path:</u> Procedure (KOFI00) <u>Standard</u>

↑

Condition type (KOFI – w/o CO / KOFK – with CO) CO-controlling.

↑

Access Sequence (KOFI) – [1, 2, 3, 5, 4]

↑

Condition Table [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]

↑

Condition Records.

* We assign account determination Procedure to Billing types.
* Table 1 consists of Sales organization, Account assignment group of customers, Account assignment group of Material and Account Key.
* Condition Table 2 consists of Sales organization, Account assignment Group of customer and Account Key.
* Condition Table 3 consists of Sales organization, Account assignment ~~of~~ group of Materials and Account Key.
* condition Table 5 consists of Sales organization and Account Key.
* Condition Table 4 consists of Sales organization.

<u>Q</u>: In standard which combination Revenue G/L account determines?

<u>A</u>: Sales organization, Account assignment group of customers, Account assignment group of Materials and Account Key.

Class (79) 04/07/14.

Configuration for Revenue account determination:

* configuration for Revenue Account determination is also based on condition Technique.

Path: Spro → Sales and distribution → Basic functions → Account assignment / costing → Revenue Account determination → check Master data relevant for account assignment.

* In this configuration step you can define new account assignment group of customers and account assignment group of Materials.

① * Double click on Materials: Account assignment group.

B1 – Trading goods
B3 – Finished goods

* Go back and double click on Customers: Account assignment group.

B1 – Domestic Revenue
B2 – foreign Revenue.

② * Go back and click on Define dependencies of Revenue account determination. (Condition → Tables)

* Double click on Create Tables.

① Condition Table 700 → Sales org., Acct. ass. grp of customers Acct. ass. grp of material, Account Key

② Condition Table 701 → Sales org, Acct. ass. grp of Customer Account.

③ condition Table 702 → Sales org., Acct. ass. grp of materials Account Key.

④ condition Table 703 → Sales org., Account Key

⑤ condition Table 704 → Sales organization.

Q: Client's Requirement is their Revenue G/L accounts should be determine based on Plant also?

A: For the above Requirement we have to create new Table with the combination of Sales organization, Plant, Account assignment of Customer, Account assignment group of Material and Account Key.

(6) condition Table — 705 → Sales org., Plant, Acct.ass. grp of customer, Acct.ass.grp of Material and Account Key.

(3) Define access sequences and Account determination types.

* Double click on Maintain Access sequence for Account determination.

* The standard Access sequence for. Revenue account determination is KOFI.

* Go to new entries and create your own.

BOFI — New Access Sequence.

most specific to most general.

* Select Acc. seq. and double click on Access.

* Go to new entries and place the condition Tables.

10	705
20	700
30	701
40	702
50	703
60	704

Select ~~condition Table~~ Access Sequence and double click on Accesses.

* Go back and double click on define account determination types.

* The standard account determination types are KOFI (w/o CO) and KOFK (with CO). CO → Controlling.

determines KOFK condition type.

* If the Transaction is not related to controlling then system determines KOFI condition type.

* Go to new entries and define your own Account determination type.

			Acc. seq.
BOFI	without	CO	BOFI
BOFK	with	CO	BOFI

* And save it.

(4) Define and assign account determination Procedure.

* Double click on Define account determination Procedure.
* The standard account determination Procedure is KOFI00.
* Go to new entries and define your own Procedure

BOFI00 → New Procedure.

* Then select the Procedure and double click on control data.
* Go to new entries.

Step	Cond. type	Requirement
10	BOFI	3
20	BOFK	2

Requirement : The Requirement in Procedure controls whether to determine KOFI or KOFK. (with CO or with out CO)

* Go back and double click on Assign acct. determination Procedure
* Go to Billing type (standard F2). and assign account determination Procedure.

F2 → BOFI00.

(5) Define and Assign Account Keys.

* In this configuration Step we can define new Account Keys and assign it to condition Types in Pricing Procedure.
* Double click on Define Account Key.
* Go to new entries and define your own Account Keys.
* Go back and double click on Assign Account Keys.

(6) Assign G/L accounts.

* In this configuration step we will assign G/L accounts.
* The T. code is **VKOA**.
* In standard we will assign G/L accounts to the combination of Sales organization, Account assignment group of Customers, Account assignment group of Material and Account Key.
* But in our case we will assign G/L accounts to the combination of Sales org., Account assignment group of Customer, Account assignment group of Materials and Account Key.

Q: How you Integrate with FI consultant while configuring Revenue account determination?

A: First we will list out all the combinations in **VKOA**. And take the List into XL file and send the XL file FI consultant. Then FI consultant will create all the G/L accounts and place it in XL and send it back to SD consultant. Then SD consultant will go to VKOA and assign all the G/L accounts.

(1) Sales org.	(2) plants	A.A.G.C	A.A.G.M	Account Keys
ZDOM	ZMUM	B1	B1	ERL, ERS, ERF, ERB,
	ZVAPI	B2	B3	ERU, AIN, APC, ALO.

1 X 2 X 2 X 2 X 8 = 64

* Double click on condition table

Condition Table → 705

* Go to new entries and mention the below.

Application	cond. Type	chart of Accounts	S. org.	Plant
V	BOFI	INT	ZDOM	ZMUM
A.A.G.C	A.A.G.M	Account Key		
B1	B1	ERL		

to take it to xcel go to table view and print. click on local.

* Like that maintain 64 combination.

* After maintaining all the combination click on View Table and click on Print → Local File → Spread sheet → Continue.

* Save it some where and click on Generate.

* After saving it into XL file insert some Rows to describe the codes to let FI consultant know.

B1 — Domestic	B1 — Trading	AIN — Insurance
B2 — Foreign	B3 — Finished	⋮
		ERF — Freight.

Class (80) 05/07/14.

* Go to the standard condition Table 1 and go to the combination of Application — V, condition type — KOFI, chart of Accounts = IN Sales org. = 1000, Acct Assg gr of customer = 1, Acct assg gr of Material = 0 Account Key = ERL.

* Take the Standard G/L account (80,0000) and go to the T. code FS00 mention the Standard G/L accounts and mention the standard company code (1000) and click on Block (🔒) and Uncheck all the Blocks and Save it.

* Mention some G/L accounts (999100) and maintain your

company code and click on with Template.

* In the Reference mention the standard G/L accounts and Standard company code.

* click on continue.

* change the Description

Short Text —— Insurance (999100)

G/L Account Long Text — Insurance

* And save it. And mention the G/L account Number in the XL Sheet.

* Do the Same for all the Account Keys by either copying your G/L account which you already created for Insurance or you can copy it from Standard every time.

* After creating G/L accounts (FI user) then SD consultant will go back to VKOA and assign G/L Accounts there.

* But only for Accruals (ERU) maintain and should be assigned in Provision Account.

							G/L Account	Provision
V	BOFI	INT	ZDOM	ZVAP	B2	B1	ERU	999800	999800
V	BOFI	INT	ZDOM	ZVAP	B2	B1	AIN	999100	

⋮

* Go to customer master and assign your account assignment group (Sales Area data Billing Tab). —— B1 or B2

* And go to Material master and assign your account assignment group (Sales org2 View). —— B1 or B3

* Create Sales order and check if system determining your own defined G/L account.

* Assigning G/L accounts for Sales Tax condition types.

* Go to the T. code OB40.

* Before Assigning G/L accounts check the Account Key for Sales Tax condition type and check the Tax code (T1).

* Go to OB40 and double click on Sales Tax account Key and mention your chart of Accounts. And click on continue.

* Mention your Taxcode and G/L account.

Tax code	G/L Account
T1	1,75,000 (Standard)

* If you want to copy G/L accounts to your company code just follow the above steps in FS00.

Q: How you Integrate with CO consultant in Implementation Project?

A: CO consultant will ask the List of condition types to SD consultant and SD consultant will prepare the List of all the condition types which we are created for this client in a XL file along with the Description. And send this XL file to CO consultant then CO consultant will create Value Fields based on Our condition types. Value fields will help to generate Profitability analysis document.

Mass change: Doing the changes in master data collectively is called as Mass change.

* The T. code for Mass change is MASS.

* EX: I want to do Mass change for Account assignment group of customer.

* To do Mass change for any field go to that field and take the Technique Technical Information (Table and field Name).
* Take the Table name and field name and go to MASS and Select KNA1 if you want to change customer master field. And if you want to do Mass change for Material then select object as BUS1001.
* Mention KNA1 and click on Execute.
* Select the Table (KNVV) and click on fields.
* Mention the field name and Press enter in Find option.
* Select the field and click on Execute.
* Maintain Sales organization, click on Execute. Then you get all the Customers.
* And enter the new value (B1) and click on Carry out Mass Change.

<u>Mass change for Material Master</u>: For Material Master mention object type as BUS1001 and click on Execute.

* Then select Table MVKE and click on fields. KTGRM
* The field for account assignment group of material is KTGRM
* search directly and select the KTGRM and execute.
* and mention sales org. click on execute

same above.

- [illegible] the values to security manually VF x 3

If security doesn't is not invoked go to modifying (Tcode, account)

(1) we can change bet 9 au security fully due (1) au group of cust. (2) au A. Mate (3) tax (5) pricing

[illegible] we can change matly

Reconcillation Account Determination: In standard process when we create Invoice system generates Accounting Document. And the Accounting entry is Customer a/c Dr.

To

Revenue a/c Cr.

* For the Customer Account system determines G/L Account from Reconcillation Account (Customer Master).

KPDU 101 1 50 000
KPCU 102 1 60 000

* If client's requirement is Reconcillation Account should be not determined from Customer Master, it should be determined based on Some other combinations like Plant and Division etc.

Path: Reconcillation Account determination is an Integration b/w SD and FI.

* SPRO → Sales & distribution → Basic functions → Account assignment / costing → Reconcillation Account determination. (create mode.)

(1) Maintain condition Tables

* As per our client's requirement create condition Table with the combination of Planet and division.

* Go to create mode.

Condition Table 741 → Plant
Division.

(2) Maintain Access sequence.

* The standard Access sequence for Reconcillation Account determination is KOAB

* Go to new entries and create your own.

AS	Des	NO	Table
BOAB	New Acc. seq.	10	741

③ Maintain Condition Types.

* The standard condition Type for Reconcillation Account determination is KOAB.

* Go to new entries and create your own.

cond. type	Acc. seq.
BOAB	BOAB

④ Maintain Account determination Procedure.

* The standard Account determination Procedure for Reconcillation Account is KOFIAB.

* Go to new entries create your own.

BOFIAB — New Procedure.

⑤ Assign Account determination Procedure.

* Go to the Billing type F2 and assign Reconcillation Account Procedure.

F2 — BOFIAB.

⑥ Assign G/L Accounts.

* Double click on your condition Table (741) and go to new entries.

* Select Application as VB and maintain the below.

App.	cond. type	ch. of Acc	Plant	GL Account	Division
VB	BOAB	INT	ZMUM	140111	Z2

* Copy Standar GL Account 1,40,000 to Some Others.

⑦ Define Alternative Reconcillation Account.

* In this configuration step Assign the originatReconcillation Account and the Alternate Account.

* Go to new entries,

G/L Acct.	Alt. G/L Acct.
140 000	140 111
140 000	140 222
140 000	140 333
140 000	140 444.

Class (82) 08/07/14.

Cash Account Determination: We use this only for Cash Sale Process. In cash sales Process when ever we create Invoice System generates Accounting Document and the Accounting entry is Cash Settlement a/c Dr.

To

Revenue a/c Cr.

* System Determines G/L accounts for Cash settlement account based on cash Account Determination.

Path: SPRO → Sales & distribution → Basic functions → Account Assignment / costing → cash Account determination.

(1) Maintain condition Tables.

* Create a condition Table with the field sales organization.

Table 726 → Sales organization.

(2) Maintain Access sequence.

* The standard Access sequence is "CASH".

* Create your own Access sequence

BASH → New Acc. seq.

* Select Acc. seq. and double click on Accesses.

③ Maintain condition types.

* The Standard condition type is "CASH".
* Create your own condition Type and assign Access Sequence

BASH ⟶ New condition type (BASH).

④ Maintain Account determination Procedure.

* The Standard Account determination Procedure for cash Sale is "KOFIAC".
* Create your own Procedure and assign condition type.

⑤ Assign Account determination Procedure

* Go to "BV" billing type and assign your Procedure.
* And Save it.

⑥ Assign G/L accounts.

* Double click on your Table. 800000 standard
* Go to FS00 and your G/L account for "BV" to be created.
* And assign your G/L account.

Application	cond. type	ch.Ac.	Sales org.	G/L Account
VC	BASH	INT	ZDOM	908000

* Check the Result by creating Cash sale Process.
* Assign Procedure in "BV" again. (Revenue Account)

Determination of Cash settlement Account based on Account Key.

* The Account Key for Cash settlement account is "EVV". We assign this account Key only for BV billing type.
* Go to "VKOA" and go the combination of Sales organization and Account Key. And go to new entries.

V BOFI INT 908000 EVV.

* Create a cash Sales Process and check the Result.

Questions:

1. What is the Accounting entry when you create Invoice?
2. What is the Accounting entry when we create Return Invoice
3. What is the Accounting entry when we create Profarma Invoice?
4. What is the Accounting entry when you create Cash Sale Invoice?
5. What is the Accounting entry when you create credit Memo?
6. What is the Accounting entry when we create Debit Memo?
7. Where is the control that system will not generate Accounting document for Profarma Invoice?
8. What is the T.code post the Invoice values into Accounting Manually? (VFX3)
9. What is the document type for FI Accounting document? (RV
10. How system Identifies whether to determine KOFI or KOFK?
11. client's requirement is they want to assign G/L accounts along with Plant also. How to do this?
12. What are the fields I can change in Invoice before Accounting document generates?

A: (1) Billing Date (2) Account assignment group of customer (3) Acct. ass. grp of Material (4) Tax classification (5) Pricing.

13. What are the fields I can change in Invoice after Accounting document generates? Nothing.
14. If Accounting document not generated as a consultant what you do? (Revenue Accounts → Analysis).

(15) In what Scenarios Accounting document will not generate?

A: If Account ass. grp. of customer Missing.

(2) If Acct. ass. grp. of Material Missing.

(3) If Account Key missing.

(4) If G/L account is missing.

(5) Business Area Missing.

(6) Profit center missing

(7) Cost center missing.

(16) How you Integrate with FI consultant in Revenue a/c Determination?

(17) How you Integrate with CO consultant?

(18) What are the documents system generates when we create Invoice?

(19) What is the T.code to Cancel Invoice? VF11

(20) What is the T.code for Reverse PGI? VL09

(21) What is the Accounting entry when we do PGI?

(22) client's Requirement is Reconcillation Account should be determined based on Plant and Division - How to configure this?

(23) How System determines G/L account for cash settlement Account?

(24) What combination System determines Revenue G/L account in Standard?

(25)

Delivery Scheduling

* It is the Process of determining Delivery dates and confirm Quantities. To perform Delivery scheduling system will consider the below parameters.

(1) Pick/Pack Time → We maintain this in shipping Point.

(*) Pick/Pack time is the Time taken to Pick the material from Storage Location to Pack it.

(2) Loading Time

* We maintain this in Shipping Point.

→ It is the Time taken to do the Process of Loading the Goods.

(3) RLT (Replenishment Lead time).

* We maintain this in Material Master MRP3 View.

→ It is the Total Time taken to Manufacture the finished Goods.

system will consider factory calender while performing delivery scheduling.

(4) Transportation Lead Time

* We maintain this in Route.

→ It is the Time taken to Arrange the Vehicle (Trucks).

(5) Transit Time

* We maintain this in Route.

→ It is the Time taken to Deliver the Goods from Plant to Customer.

* System considers RLT only if stock is not available.

* Factory Calendar which we assign to Plant and shipping Point will also Plays an Important Role in Delivery scheduling.

* Pick/Pack Time and RLT = Plant calendar.

* Transit Time = Customer Calendar, Loading Time = Shipping Point Cale.

Process or Working of Delivery Scheduling:

Stock

X=100

Order 10/07

X = 100
Cust. Req. del. date 13/07

Pick/Pack Time = 3
Loading Time = 2
RLT = 10

① BACKWARD SCHEDULING

8 —(-3)— 11 —(-2)— 13 Req. Del. Date

8: Date is beyond the Today's date
11: Pick/Pack
11: After Loading
8: delivery creation date

② FORWARD SCHEDULING.

10 —(3)→ 13 —(2)→ 15 post date

* First System will perform Backward scheduling. If Backward Scheduling fails then system Performs forward Scheduling.
* Backward Scheduling fails if the Proposed date going beyond today's date.
* System will perform Backward scheduling based on Customer Requested Delivery date. And system will Perform Forward Scheduling based on Today's date.
* If Backward scheduling fails then you get Multiple schedule lines. If Backward scheduling is Success then you will get only one schedule line.

fails { 8/07/14 — confirm quantity — 0
15/07/14 — confirm quantity — 100

Success { 15/07/14 — confirm quantity — 100

* System considers RLT only if stock is not available.

5 —(-10)— 15 —(-3)— 18 —(-2)— 20 Backward scheduling

Scenario (1): Pick Pack Time = 3 days

Loading Time = 2 days

RLT = 10 days.

Stock $\boxed{X=100}$

Today's date 10/07

Sales orders (1) $\boxed{X = 10 \text{ Qty}, \text{ Cust. Req. Del. date } 18/07}$

Backward Scheduling Success

13 $\xrightarrow{-3}$ 16 $\xrightarrow{-2}$ 18

13 → Delivery creation date

18 → PGI date

18 → Cust. Req. del. date

* First enter Requested Delivery date then only enter your material and Quantity.

* If you want to see the Delivery creation date then select the schedule line and click on shipping.

Scenario (2): forward scheduling will be based on ordered date. delivery creation date is the date of the material available date or transportation planning date

Stock $\boxed{X=100}$

Today's date 10/07

Sales order $\boxed{X = 60 \text{ Qty}, \text{ Cus. Req. del. date } 13/07}$

Backward scheduling Fail

8 $\xrightarrow{-3}$ 11 $\xrightarrow{-2}$ 13 (fails)

Forward scheduling

10 $\xrightarrow{+3}$ 13 $\xrightarrow{+2}$ 15

10 → Today's date Delivery creation date

15 → PGI date.

Scenario (3)

Stock $\boxed{Y=0}$

10/07

Sales order $\boxed{Y = 60 \text{ qty}, \text{ Cus. Req. del. date } 23/07}$

Backward scheduling (fails)

8 $\xrightarrow{-10}$ 18 $\xrightarrow{-3}$ 21 $\xrightarrow{-2}$ 23

8 → date went beyond Today's date

23 → cust. Req.

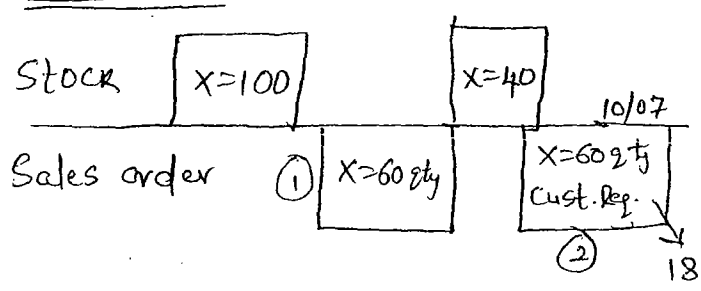
Forward scheduling

10 $\xrightarrow{+10}$ 20 $\xrightarrow{+3}$ 23 $\xrightarrow{+2}$ 25

23 → Delivery creation date

25 → PGI date

Scenario (4):



Backward scheduling

3 —(−10)— 13 —(−3)— 16 —(−2)— 18 (40 Qty)

for the Rest of 20 Qty the date is going beyond Today's date so system will perform forward scheduling.

40 Qty has confirmed

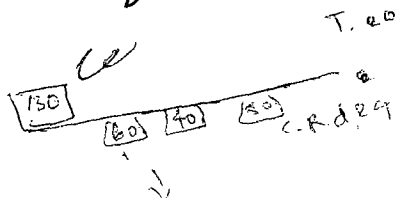
Forward scheduling

10 —(+10)— 20 —(+3)— 23 —(+2)— 25

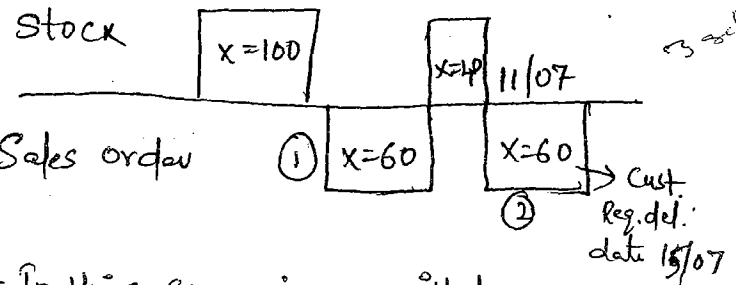
Confirm Qty 20.

* To check the Stock Requirement then go to T. code **MD04**.

Scenario (5):



Class (84) 11/07/14



Fails
Backward Scheduling

10 —(−3)— 13 —(−2)— 15

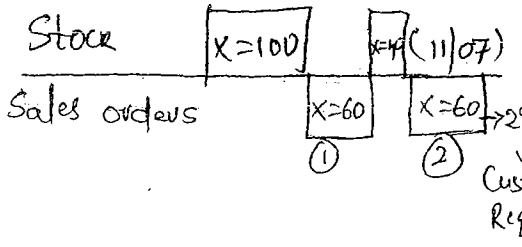
* In this scenario we will have 3 schedule lines one for Backward scheduling (fails) and two for (Forward scheduling (40 Qty and 20 Qty).

Forward scheduling

11 —(+3)— 14 —(+2)— 16 (40 Qty)

11 —(+10)— 21 —(+3)— 24 —(+2)— 26 (20 Qty)

Scenario (6):

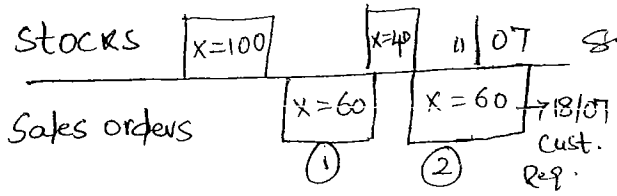


(Success)
Backward scheduling

14 —(−10)— (40) 24 —(−3)— 27 —(−2)— 29

* If stock is available and you have time system will consider Backward

Complete Delivery Required by Law ☑



Backward scheduling (Fails)

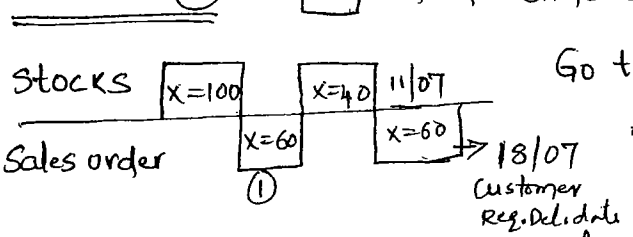
13 —3— 16 —2— 18 (Fails because complete delivery Required by Law)

Forward Scheduling

11 —+10— 21 —+3— 24 —+2— 26 (60 Qty)

* When you get the Pop up click on complete delivery while creating Sales order.

Scenario (8): ☑ check without RLT (T.code OVZ9 - Availability check)



Go to OVZ9 and Maintain

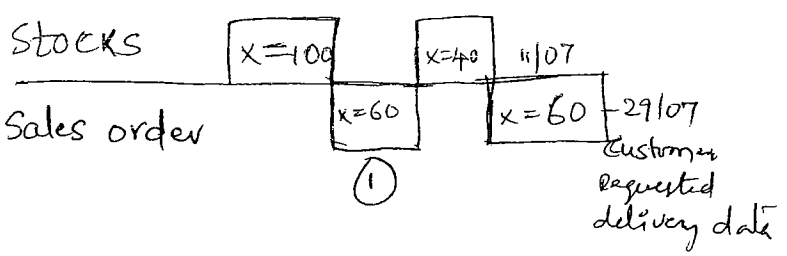
Availability check	checking Route
02 (As per Material Master)	A

* In this Scenario system confirms only 40 Qty because we checked check without RLT in OVZ9 and System will not confirm the Remaining Qty of 20 as we do not know when we manufacture. But we deliver the Remaining 20 Qty to Customer when the Goods ready but we can not Promise any date to customer.

Backward scheduling

13 —3— 16 —2— 18 (40 Qty)

Scenario (9): check without RLT ☑



Backward scheduling

24 —3— 27 —2— 29 (40 Qty)

* In this Scenario you have enough time to do Manufacture of the Goods (Remaining 20 Qty) but system will not confirm that 20 Qty as we checked check without RLT OVZ9.

Route Determination

* Spro → Logistics Execution → Transportation → Basic Transportation functions → Routes → Define Routes → Define Routes and Stages. (1)
* Go to new entries and mention Some Route.

Description → B-Route , Route → BRoute.
Transit Time → 5 days
Transportation Lead Time → 7 days

* And save it.

Route Determination: Route Determination → (Maintain Country (and Transportation Zone for shipping Point) → Define Transportation Zones. (2)

* Go to New entries and mention the below.

Coutry	Transportation zone	Description
IN	B000000001	Departure Zone
IN	B000000002	Destination Zone.

(3) Go back and click on Maintain country and Transportation Zone for shipping Point.

* Go to your shipping Point and assign country (IN) and Departure Zone (B000000001).
* Go to Customer Master, Address Tab and assign Destination Transportation Zone (B000000002).

(4) Maintain Route Determination.

* Go back and click on Maintain Route Determination and Go to new entries maintain the below

Departure country	Dep. zone	Dest. ctry.	Destination zone
IN	B000000001	IN	B000000002

* Select the above and double click on Route Determination with out weight Group (order). Destination = Receiving.

* Then go to new entries and maintain the below.

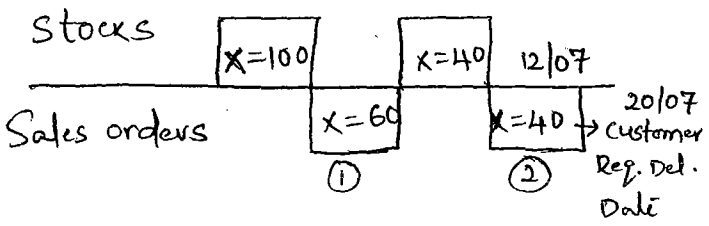
Shipping condition	Transportation Group	Proposed Route
01 (check for yours)	0001 (check for yours MM.)	BRoute.

* Create Sales order and check Route by double clicking on Item data (Line item) and go to shipping Tab.

Scenario (10): Pick/Pack = 3 days
Loading Time = 2 days
RLT = 10 days
TLT = 7 days
Transit Time = 5 days

Class (85) 12/07/14.

* Change Pick/Pack time to 10 days and check the scenario again.



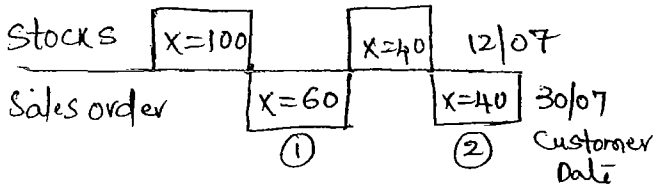
Fails
Backward scheduling
6 —7— 13 —2— 15 —5— 20 X

Forward scheduling
PGI
customer Receiving date
12 +7 19 +2 21 +5 26 ✓

* If you have Both Transportation Lead time and Pick/Pack time and if Stock is available then system considers either of Transportation Lead time or Pick/pack Time which ever is Higher. Because we do the Process of Picking and Packing by the time Truck reaches otherwise we will wastes another 3 days for Picking and Packing if you start Picking and Packing after the Truck reaches. And in the same way if Pick/pack time is Higher then system considers Pick/Pack time and we arrange the Vehicle by the Time we do Picking and Packing.

* Uncheck check with out RLT for this scenario.

Scenario (11):



Success

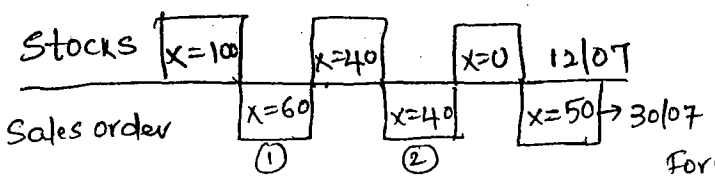
Backward Scheduling ←

16 —7— 23 —2— 25 —5— 30

25 ↓ PGI date

30 ↓ Customer receiving date

Scenario (12):



Fails

Backward Scheduling ←

10 —10 (RLT)— 20 —3 (PP)— 23 —2— 25 —5— 30

Forward scheduling →

12 —+10— 22 —+3— 25 —+2— 27 —+5— 01/08. ✓

* If you have Transportation Lead time and if Stock is not available then System considers either of RLT + Pick/Pack time or Transportation Lead Time which ever is Higher.
* change the TLT to 15 days in Route and check the Scenario again.

Configuration for Delivery Scheduling:

* SPRO → Sales and distribution → Basic functions → Delivery Scheduling and Transportation Scheduling → Define Scheduling by Sales document Type.
* Go to your Document type and mention Delivery scheduling as "X"

  X → Perform Delivery scheduling.
* This field control whether to Perform Delivery Scheduling or not. If you do not want to Perform Delivery Scheduling then maintain Blank.
* Define Scheduling by Shipping Point.
* In this configuration step we maintain Pick/Pack and Loading Time in Shipping Point.

Q: Can I maintain Pick/Pack Time and Loading Time other than Shipping Point?

A: Yes. Route Dependant.

* Go to shipping Point and maintain Determine Load time and Determine Pick/Pack time as A. And save it.

(3) Go to Maintain Duration to maintain Pick/Pack and Loading time with Route Dependant.

* Select your shipping point and double click on Pick/Pack time and then go to new entries.

* Mention your shipping and other details.

Shipping point	Route	Pick/pack
ZMAN	BRoute	5days.

* Select the above and click on Loading Time and maintain your Loading Time.

Loading Time
4 days.

* Create Sales order and check the Scenario.

Questions:

(1) How system Performs Delivery scheduling?

(2) When Backward scheduling fails?

(3) If I check without RLT then what is the Result in Delivery Scheduling?

(4) Can I maintain Pick/Pack time and Loading time Other than shipping Point?

(5) What are the Parameters system consider while doing Delivery Scheduling?

the Sales order Requirements to MRP.

* The Criteria to determine Requirement type into sales document is ① strategy group ② MRP Group ③ Item category + MRP type.

* The standard Requirement is 041 or $\boxed{011}$.

* Requirement type for Make to order is $\boxed{KE}$.

* Requirement type for IPO is $\boxed{KEB}$.

<u>Path</u>: Spro → Sales and distribution → Basic functions → Availability check and Transfer of Requirements → Availability check → Availability check with ATP Logic or Against Planning → Define checking groups.

ATP → Available to Promise.

* We have 3 type of Availability checks.

① Availability check with ATP Logic.

② Availability check against Product allocation.

③ Rule-based Availability check.

① <u>Define checking Groups</u>: In this configuration step we can define New checking groups. (Availability check).

* In define checking groups the total sales fields will actually controls how the sales order quantities should be updated in MRP.

Q: Where is the control that for KP system will not Perform Availability check?

② Define Material block for Other Users:

* This configuration step will help if multiple users are accessing availability check for the Same Material at the Same time, then system will perform availability check for the first user and block availability for other users.
* In this configuration step check Block with the combination of Availability check and Initiator.

<u>Initiator</u>: Initiator specifies which transaction should be Blocked order or Delivery.

* To block order, maintain Initiator as "A".
* To block delivery maintain Initiator as "B".

Aval. check	Initiator	Block
Q1	A	☑
Q1	B	☑
Q2	A	☑
Q2	B	☑

③ Define checking Groups Default value.

* This configuration step will help to determine Availability check field in Material Master automatically (by default).

Material	Plant	Availabity check
FERT	ZMUM	Q2

④ Carry out control for Availability check.

* We will also call it as Scope of check. ev 29
* We configure Carry out control for availability check with the combination of availability check (checking Group) and

* Checking Group is nothing but Availability check field.
* checking Rule Specifies in which Transaction we configure Availability check is, Order or Delivery.
* Checking Rule for Order is "A".
* Checking Rule for Delivery is "B".
* Go to new entries and maintain the below combinations.

Availability check — Q1, Q1, Q2, Q2

checking Rule — A, B, A, B.

add stock, reduce stock

STOCKS:

DVZ9 Controls

Class (87) 15/07/14.

① Include Safety stock

② Stock in Transfer

③ Include Quality inspection stock

④ Include Blocked stock.

☐ check without RLT.

Inward/outward movements.

☐ Include Purchase Requisition

☐ Include Purchase orders } in ward

☐ Include sales Requirements

☐ Include Deliveries } out ward

Inward

Include Planned order ☐

Include Production orders ☐

* Availability check is an Integration between SD, MM and PP.

① Include safety stock: Saftey stock is the minimum stock which company has to maintain to meet the future emergency requirements.

* We have this field in Material Master MRP 2 view.
* If you Uncheck this then system will not consider saftey stock while Performing Availability check.
* If you check this then system will consider Saftey stock also while performing availability check.

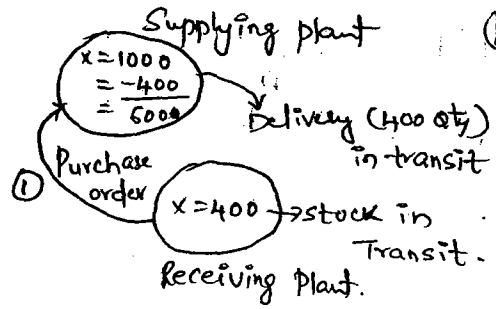
* Go Item data → Environment → Availability inorder to check on what quantity system is Performing Availability check.

* Go to same Item data inorder to see the Scope of check.

X = 1000
Saftey stock = 600
Remaining = 400

② **Stock in Transfer:** This field can be used in STO Process. In STO Process if you create delivery in Supplying Plant then stock will be Reduced from supplying Plant and stock will be displayed as Stock in Transit in recieving Plant.

* If you check this then system will consider the stock in Transit also while Performing Availability check.



65400 6245

③ **Include Quality Inspection stock:**

* After Manufacturing the goods we will Perform quality check. And during that Period the stock will displayed as Quality Inspection stock.

* If you check this then system will consider the Quality Inspection stock also while Performing Availability check.

* The Movement type for Quality stock is 503. So Post the stock by using this Movement type (503).

④ **Include Blocked stock:** Generally expired stock or damaged stock will be stored in Blocked stock. If you want to sell the Blocked stock then we have to check this.

* If you check this then system will consider Blocked stock also while Performing Availability check.

* The Movement type for Blocked stock is 505.

(5) Check without RLT: If you check this then if stock is not available then system will not confirm the Quantities.

* If you Uncheck this and if stock is not available still system will confirm the Quantities in future date by considering RLT time.

Inward/Outward Moments: (6) Class (88) 16/07/14.

Include Purchase orders: If you check this then the Purchase order Quantities will be updated in MRP along with Purchase order Number and Delivery date. ↳ (In MD04 (stock requirements).

* The T. code for Purchase order is ME21N.

* While creating sales order system will consider PO quantity also. while Performing Availability check.

(7) Include Purchase Requisition: Purchase Requisition is a Request to purchase the Goods. And after Purchase Requisition Management will decide whether to purchase the Goods or Not. After deciding they will create PO for that Purchase Requisition.

* We should not check because Purchase Requisition is not final and if you check this then Purchase Requisitions will also be updated in MRP as a inward movement. That is why we Uncheck this because all PR may not be converted to PO.

** (8) Include Sales Requirements: (outward Movement)

BAVL5		stock = 100
300150	-7	93
300151	-25	68
300152	-30	38
8001450	-13	25

order (300150) BAVL5 = 20 ↓ 12 delivery

300151 BAVL5 = 25

300152 BAVL5 = 30

Availability Qty = (Stock - (open order Qty + open Delivery Qty))

= 100 - (7+13)

= 100 - 20

= 80.

* If you check this then system will consider open order quantities while performing Availability check. That is system will consider open order quantities while calculating Available Quantity.

Available Quantity = (stock - (open order qty + open Delivery Qty)).

* If you Uncheck sales requirements then system will not consider open order quantities while Performing Availability check. That is system will not consider open order quantities while calculating Available Quantity.

** Include Deliveries (outward Movement):

* If you check this then system will consider open delivery quantities while Performing Availability check. That is system will consider open delivery quantities while calculating Available Quantity.

* If you uncheck include deliveries then system will not consider open delivery quantities while Performing Availability check. That is system will not consider open delivery Qty while calculating Available Qty.

Include Planned orders and Include Production orders : These planned orders and Production orders are inward movements.

* If you maintain this then the Planned orders and Production orders will be updated in MRP as inward movement.

Q: Client's Requirement is they have two Plants and they manufacture all the ~~Plant~~ products both the Plants but in one plant if stock is not Available then system should not confirm quantities in other Plant even if stock is not available system should confirm the quantities in future dates?

A: Define New checking Groups.

~~Back orders configuration~~ Class (89) 18/07/14.

(5) Define Procedure by Requirement class: In this configuration step we will check Requirements and Availability in Requirement class.

* Go to standard Requirement class 041 and 011 and check Requirement and Availability.

(6) Define Procedure for each schedule line category: In this configuration step we will check Availability and Requirements in Schedule line Category.

* Go to standard schedule line category CP and check Requirements and Availability.

(7) Determine Procedure for each Delivery Item category:

This configuration step controls whether to perform Availability Check or not for delivery Line item.

* Go to Standard Delivery item category TAN and make sure the Availability check off is Blank.

** The Below scenarios we will Perform Availability check in Deliveries. (1) Delivery without order reference. (2) Adding new Line item Deliveries (3) Increasing the Quantities in Delivery (4) STO Delivery

(8) Define Default checking: In this configuration step maintain Availability check Rule for your Sales Area. This configuration step (Availability check Rule) will help to propose Pop Ups in case of stock shortages.

* Fixed date and Quantity: If you check then system will not allow to change Delivery dates and confirm Quantities. If you check Fixed date and Quantity then Back order Process is not possible.

* (9) checking Rule for Updating Back orders: In this configuration step go to your plants and assign checking Rule as BO.

check Rule — BO.

* If you want to process Back orders then you have to do the Below configurations.

(1) Assign checking Rule BO to Plant (step 9).

(2) Carry out control for Availability check and maintain the combination of Availability check and checking Rule BO.

Availability check — Q2

checking Rule — BO

* If you want to know the Result better then, you better check the field check without RLT.

* If your plant is not appearing in Updating Backorders then we have to maintain Plant Parameters in Production plan.

* SPRO → Production → Materials Requirement planning → Plant parameters → Carry out overall maintainance of plant Parameters.

* click on copy and mention the below.

From Plant — 1000 (Standard)

To Plant — A100 (Your plant).

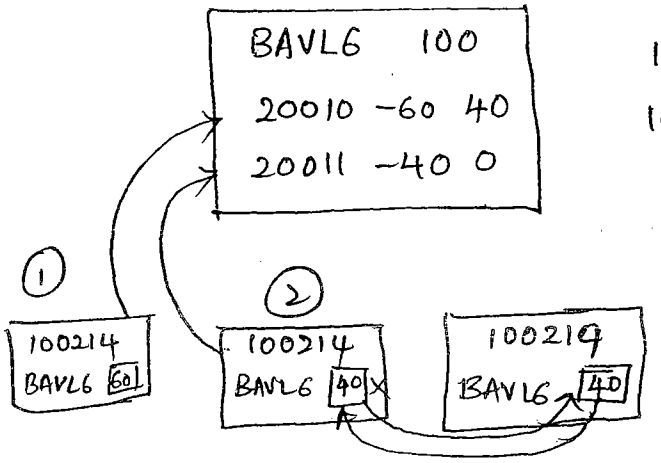
* Press enter and click on copy and save it.

* The Below Scenarios Back order Process in not Possible.

① If Availability check 01 (Daily Requirements).

② If you check Fixed date and Quantity in Define Default checking configuration step.

<u>Back order Process:</u> When ever High delivery Priority Customer Places order and if stock is not Available ~~then~~ we go back to the open orders of Low Priority delivery customers and cancel the confirmations and assign that stock to High Delivery priority customers. V_RA



100219 — High Priority

100214 — Low Delivery Priority

* If the order Qty is less than or more than a open order Qty System ~~SAPR~~ will do Back order process if the ~~Store~~ order Qty is not greater than the open orders Qty.

* Create two customers and create Sales orders and check the Result take the Above example.

* If Stock is 100 Qty available and create two orders for low delivery priority of 60 and 40 Qty. The when you create order for High delivery Priority Customer System will not Confirm Qty so

Save the Sales order and do Backorder Process.

* The T.code to Process Back order Process is **V-RA**.
* Go to the T.code V-RA and mention your Plant and Material.
* Select the orders which you want to Process.
* Click on Back orders. Double click on the Sales order which you want to cancel the confirmation and remove the committed.
* And click on copy ☑. And goto that order double click which you want to confirm you have to maintain commited Quantity.

Rescheduling: Doing the Back order Process Automatically by the system is called as Rescheduling.

* The T.code for Rescheduling is **V-V2**.
* Go to V-V2 and mention material and Plant and Uncheck Simulation and click on Execute. Say Yes.

Class (90) 19/07/14

Questions on Availability check:

1. What are the Prerequisite for Availability check?
2. What availability check field controls?
3. What is the difference b/w Availability check 01 and 02?
4. Where is the control that for checking Group KP system will not Perform Availability check?
5. What combination you configure Availability check?
6. What is checking Rule?
7. What happens if I check Saftey stock in Availability check?
8. What happens if I check without RLT?
9. What happens if I Uncheck Sales Requirements?

(10) What happens if Uncheck Deliveries?

(11) System should not allow the users to change Delivery dates and confirm quantities. where is the control?

(12) Where is the control that system will Propose Pop up incase of shortages? (Availability check Rule).

(13) What scenarios Back orders Process is not ~~Avail~~ Possible?

(14) What is the configuration Required for Back order Process?

(15) Back order Process?

(16) What is the T.code for Back order Process?

(17) What is Rescheduling?

(18) What is the T.code for Rescheduling?

(19) How many types of Availability check we have?

(20) What is Product Allocation?

(21) What happens if multiple users are Accessing Availability check?

(22) client is having two plants, in one Plant if stock is not available then system should not confirm quantities. in another plant even if stock is not available then system should confirm in the quantities in future dates. How to do this?

<u>Transfer of Requirements</u>: It is the Process of Transfering the Sales order Requirement to MRP.

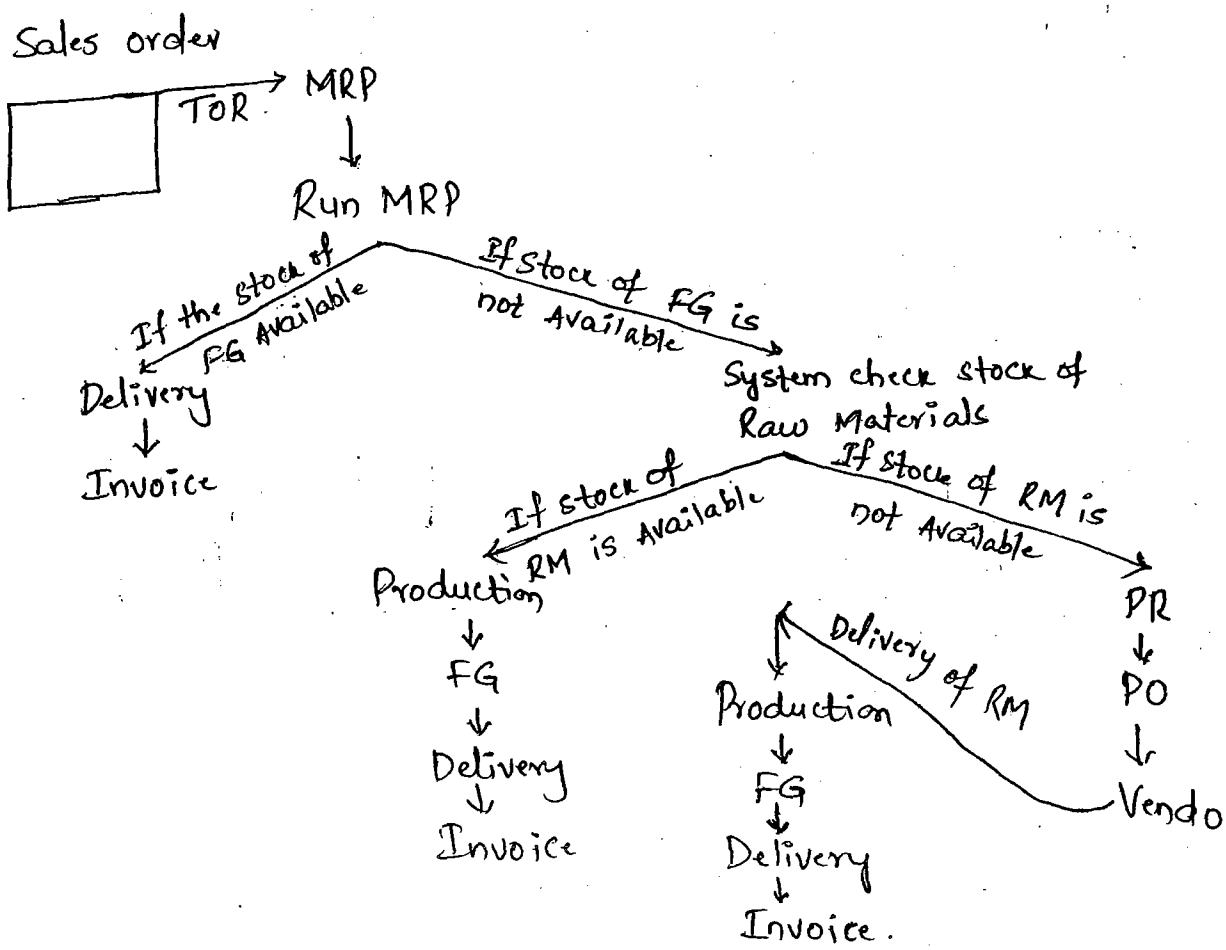
* When ever we create the Sales order in the Background system will Transfer the Sales order Requirements to MRP.

MD04 — Stock Requirements

MD02 / MD01 — MRP Run

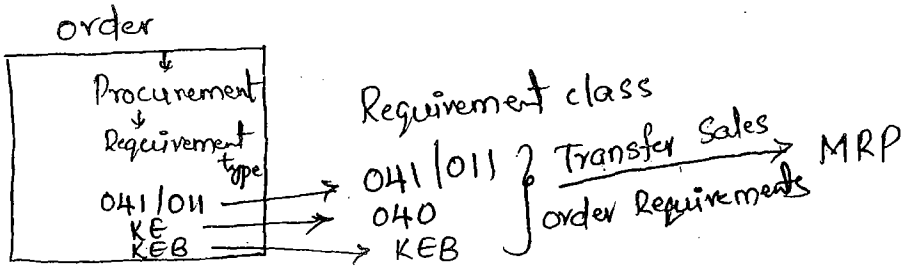
* The Result we can see in the T.code $\boxed{\text{MD04}}$.

* The T.code to Run MRP is MD01 or MD02



* <u>Prerequisites for Transfer of Requirements:</u>

1. In schedule line category check Requirements and Availability.
2. In Requirement class check Requirements and Availability.
3. Requirement type should be determined into Sales Document.



* Whenever we create sales Order system determines Requirement type in Procurements Tab. The criteria to determine ~~Procurement~~ Requirement type into sales document is

① Strategy Group ② MRP Group ③ Item category + MRP Type.

* The Purpose of Requirement Type is it will help to Determine Requirement class and the Requirement class actually controls how to Transfer the sales order Requirements to MRP.

* The Standard Requirement type is 041 and 011.
* The Requirement type for Make to order is KE.
* The Requirement type for IPO is KEB.
* The Standard Requirement class is 041 and 011
* The Requirement class for Make to order is 040.
* The Requirement class for IPO is KEB.
* The Transfer of Requirements is an Integration between SD, MM and PP, CO.

Path: Spro → Sales and distribution → Basic functions → Availability check and Transfer of Requirement → Transfer of Requirements → Define Requirement Types.

① Define Requirement Types.

* In this configuration step we will assign Requirement class to Requirement Type.
* The Requirement type determination based on strategy group and MRP Group is in PP configuration.
* Requirement Type determination based on Item category + MRP type is in SD configuration.
* If you want to define Requirement Type do it here and assign Requirement class.

② Define Requirement class.

* Requirement class actually controls how the Transfer the Sales order Requirements to MRP.

** The special stock indicator "E" in Requirement class controls that when you manufacture the Finished Goods in Make to order or when you receive the Finished Goods in IPO the stock will be reserved to that Particular sales order Number.

* We maintain Special stock indicator "E" in Requirement class 040 and KEB.

Class (91) 21/07/14.

③ Determination of Requirement Types using Transaction.

* This configuration step will help to determine Requirement type based on Item category and MRP type.

Item category → TAN
MRP type → PD
Requirement type → 041

Q: Client's Requirement is while determining Requirement type into sales document system should give first preference to Item category and MRP type while determining Requirement type into sales document. where is the control?

A: Maintain "Origin of Requirements" as "1".

* If Item category and MRP type combination is missing in Requirement type determination then you have to maintain this combination in Schedule line category determination (VOV5).

④ Define Procedure for each schedule line category.

* In this configuration step we will check Requirements and Availability in schedule line category.

⑤ Block Quantity confirmation in Delivery Blocks.

* Double click on Blocking Reasons/criteria.

* In this configuration step for Delivery Blocks we check confirm-ation. The control is while creating sales order if you assign Delivery Block then the confirm quantities will become zero '0' (system will cancel the confirm quantities.

Q: Client's requirement is if they assign Delivery Block then system should cancel the confirm quantities. where is the control?

A: In Blocking Reasons/criteria uncheck confirmation.

⑥ Maintain Requirement for Transfer of Requirements.

* The standard Requirement Number for Transfer of Requirements is 101.

* 101 Requirement checks that if order is Blocked for credit then system will cancel the confirmation.

Q: client's Requirement is if order is Blocked for credit then system should cancel the confirmation. where is the control?

A: Transfer of Requirement the Requirement Number 101.

⑦ Maintain Requirements for Purchase and Assembly orders.

* Requirement Number 102 controls that while creating Sales order in third party process and IPO process if order is Blocked for credit then system will cancel the confirmations.

PP configuration for Requirement type Determination.

Path: SPRO → Production → Production Planning → Demand Management → Planned independant Requirements → Planning Strategy → Define strategy.

Q: In what scenario the Availability and TOR will happen given below?

A:

Schedule line category	Requirement class
☑ AVA ☑ REQ	☑ AVA ☑ REQ.

* If you want to perform Availability check then all four (4) should be checked.
* If you want to Transfer the Requirements and if you check Requirements in schedule line category and Requirement class is enough.

☐ AVA ☑ REQ	☐ AVA ☑ REQ

Questions on Transfer of Requirements.

Class (92) 22/07/14

(1) What is the criteria to determine Requirement type into sales document?

(2) What is the purpose of Requirement Type?

(3) system should give first preference to Item category and MRP type combination while determining Requirement Type into sales document?

(4) What are the Prerequisites for Transfer of Requirements?

(5) What is the Requirement type for IPO?

(6) What is the Requirement class for IPO?

(7) What is the Requirement type for Make to order?

(8) What is the Requirement class for Make to order?

(9) What is the T. code to Run MRP?

(10) What is the T. code for stock Requirements?

(11) If I assign Delivery Block then system should cancel the confirm quantities, where is the control?

(12) If order is Blocked for credit then system should not confirm the quantities where is the control?

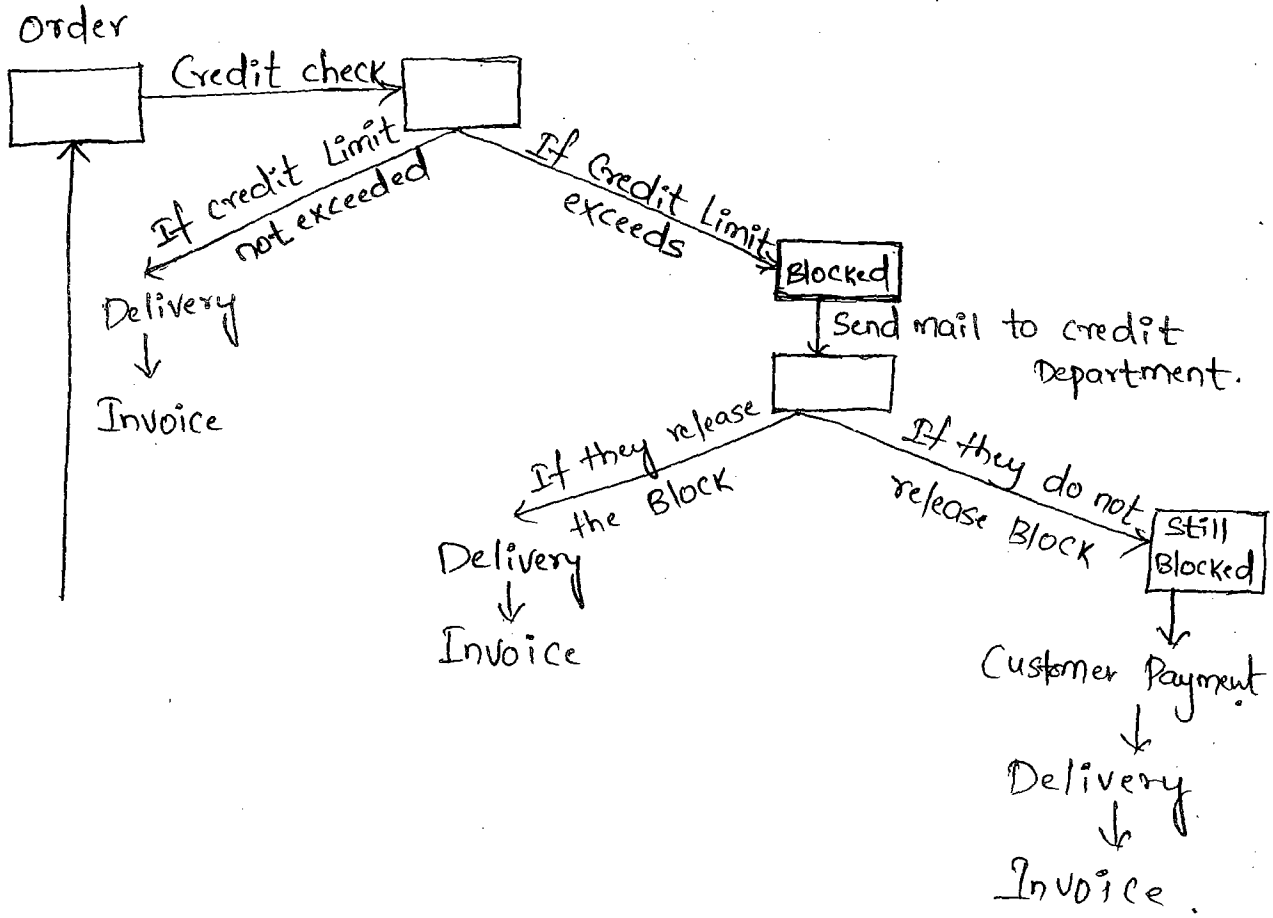
(13) In third party process and IPO process if order is Blocked for credit then system should not generate Purchase Requisition. where is the control?

CREDIT MANAGEMENT

* It is the Process of Managing the credit Limits of the Customers.
* Whenever Customer's Credit Limits exceeds the credit department will Block the Transactions.
* The Managing of Credit Limits will be done by credit Department.

Roles and Responsibilities of Credit Department

1. Fixing the Credit Limits of the Customers.
2. Reviewing the Credit Limits of the Customers.
3. Blocking the Transactions if Customer's credit Limit exceeds.
4. Classifying the Customers into High Risk, Medium Risk and Low Risk.
5. Releasing the orders Blocked for credit.



* Credit Management is of Two types.

① Simple Credit check.

② Automatic Credit check.

Simple Credit check	Automatic Credit check
① In Simple Credit check you can Block the Customer at order Level.	① In Automatic Credit if Customer credit Limit exceeds you block at order Level or Delivery Level or PGI Level.
② In Simple Credit check there is no concept of Risk Categories.	② In Automatic Credit check we have Risk categories. High Risk — (Order Level) Medium Risk — Delivery Level. Low Risk — (PGI Level)
③ In Simple Credit check System Considers receivables only while performing credit check. Receivables means open Items. open Item means Invoice raised and Accounting Document generated but not yet Paid.	③ In Automatic Credit check System will consider open order values, open Delivery values open Invoice values and open Item values while Performing credit check.

Credit Limit = 5L

Receivables 3L
Sales value 3L
Credit Exposure

(0) → When Customer paid.

when Customer places order

when Accounting document generates

Sales order 3L.

* So Here system only considers Receivables (Receivables will be updated after A/c doc. generates) so system will allow for 3L S.O.

Credit limit = 5L

	①	②	③
open order	3L	1.5L	1.5L
open Delivery	0	1.5L	0
open Invoice	0	0	1.5L

Receivables
Sales value
Credit Exposure

Sales order
3L ①

Delivery = 1.5L (NO PGI)

② So open order = 1.5L

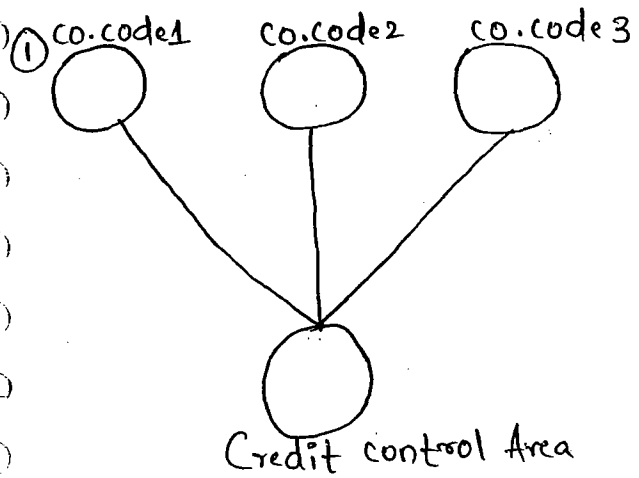
Invoice = 1.5L (NO A/c DOC.)

③ open order = 1.5L

Centralized and Decentralized Credit Process

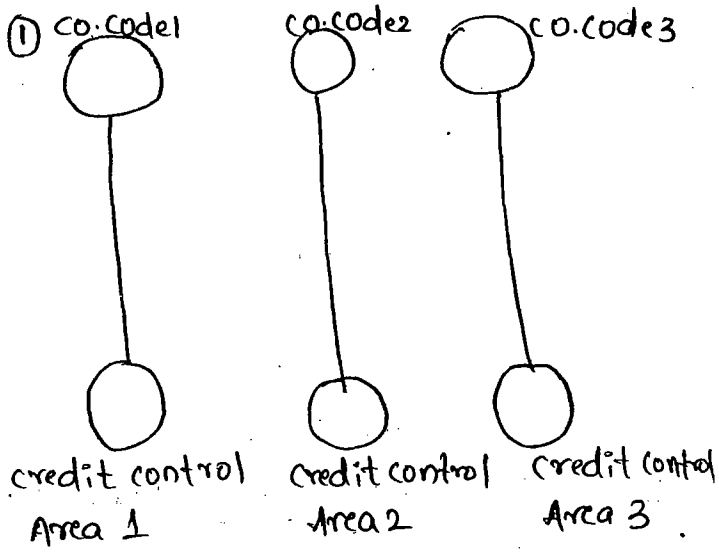
Class (93) 23/07/14.

Centralized credit Process



* If Multiple company codes is having Single Credit control Area then we call it as centralized Credit Process.

Decentralised credit Process.



* If Every company code is having Seperate credit control Area then we call it as Decentralized Credit process.

* Credit Management is an Integration between SD and FI.

(1) Simple Credit check configuration:

(1) Define Credit control Area.

* FI consultant is Responsible to define Credit control Area.
* Group of People responsible to Perform Credit Activities is called as credit control Area. (Credit Department).

Spro: SPRO → ~~Sales and Distribution~~ → Enterprise Structure → Definition → Financial Accounting → Define Credit control Area.

* Go to new entries and define new credit control Area and mention the Currency.

Credit control Area — B001

Currency — INR.

Imp ****

Update Group: Update Group controls which sales documents should be updated into Credit Management. That is whether to update Sales documents, Delivery documents or Billing documents etc.

* We have three (3) types of Update Rules.

① 000012 ② 000015 ③ 000018

000012: 000012 Updates all ~~Sales~~ open Sales order values, open Delivery values, open Invoice values and open Item values into Credit Management.

000015: It updates all ~~open-order values~~, open Delivery values open Invoice values and open Item values. (Delivery w/o order ref)

000018: It updates all open order values, open Invoice values and open Item values into Credit Management.

* We use 000018 in Service Item and Third Party. (There is no Delivery).

Update — 000012

FY variant — V3

Default data for automatically creating new customers.

* In this configuration step we will maintain credit limits for new customers. If you maintain credit limit here then system automatically creates FD32 while creating Customer Master.

* The T.code to create credit limit is FD32.

* Go back and mention some description.

② Assign company code to credit control Area.

* FI consultant is Responsible to do this Assignment.

SPRO: SPRO → Enterprise structure → Financial Accounting → Assignment.

Assign company code to credit control Area.

* Go to your company code and assign credit control Area.

Co. code	credit control Area.
ZALK	B001

* The Relationship between credit control Area and company code is **One to Many**. That is one credit control Area can have multiple (many) company codes but one company code should be assigned to single Credit control Area.

SD configuration for Simple Credit check:

Path: Spro → Sales and Distribution → Basic functions → Credit Management/Risk Management → Simple Credit limit check.

* Go to your Document type and maintain check credit limit as A or B or C.
* A → Run Simple Credit check and give warning message.
* B → Run Simple Credit check and give error message.
* C → Run Simple Credit check and Assign Delivery Block.
* And Remove Credit Group because credit group is applicable only for Automatic Credit check.
* And Save it.

(2) * Go item category check Credit Active.

(3) Go to the Pricing Procedure and go to the step for which you want to update the value into credit Management.

* Go to Netvalue (usually) and maintain Subtotal as "A".
* And Save it.

(4) * The T. code to maintain Credit Limits is **FD32**

* For this step create new Customer.

Customer — 100760

Credit control Area — B001

* And check all the fields. And press enter.
* If you want to change Credit Limits then go to <u>Status View</u> and change by Keep pressing Enter.
* And Save it.
* Create one order and check if it updates in Credit Management.
* We maintain Credit Limit for every **PAYER** only.

Class (94) 24/07/14.

* Create delivery

* The T.code to Receive Payments **F-26**.
* Mention the G/L account Number (some), Mention the Date and Press enter.

Bank Account — 113329 (G/L Account)

Date — 24/07/14

* Mention the Customer Number and Amount.

Customer — 100760

Amount — 250000 (INR)

Value Date — 24/07/14.

* And Press enter.
* Double click on INR Gross (2,50,000). And Save it.
* Go Back to FD32 and check Receivables if it is "0".
* Change credit limit check in VOV8 to A, B and C and check the Scenarios.

Automatic Credit check

Configuration for Automatic Credit check:

Step① : Define Credit control Area.

* Which we already created for Simple Credit check — B001.

② Assign company code to credit control Area.

* Which we already did.

③ Define Risk Categories.

* FI consultant is responsible to define Risk categories.

* Generally we define 3 Risk categories.

① High Risk ② Medium Risk ③ Low Risk.

Path: Spro → Financial Accounting (New) → Accounts Receivable and Accounts Payable → Credit Management → Credit control Account → Define Risk Categories.

* Go to new entries and define your own Risk categories.

Risk category	Credit control Area	Name
B01	B001	High Risk
B02	B001	Medium Risk
B03	B001	Low Risk

* And save it.

④ Define Credit Groups.

* Credit Group Specifies which Transaction to Block that is whether to Block at order or Delivery or PGI.

* SD consultant is responsible to define credit Groups.

Path: Spro → Sales and distribution → Basic functions → Credit Management / Risk Management → Credit Management → Define Credit Groups.

* Go to new entries and Define your own credit Groups.

Credit Group	Document Credit Group.
B1	Block AT order Level
B2	Block at Delivery Level
B3	Block at PGI level

(5) Assign Sales documents and Delivery Documents.

* Document Type OR → B1, Delivery → B2 and B3.

* In this configuration step we will assign Credit Groups to order type and Delivery types.

* Double click on Credit Limit check for order types.

* Go to document type OR, maintain check credit limit as "D" and Assign Credit Group (B1).

Document Type	check credit	credit Group
OR	D	B1

* And save it.

* Go back and double click on credit limit check for Delivery types.

* Go to your Delivery type (LF) and assign the below.

Delivery Type	Delivery credit Group	PGI credit Group
LF	B2	B3.

(6) Define Automatic credit control.

* We Define Automatic credit control with the combination of Credit control Area, Risk category and credit Groups.

*New entry / Credit control Area	Risk category	credit Group
B001	B01	B1
B001	B02	B2
B001	B03	B3

(Give some Description)

Controls:

(a) Item check: If you check this then system will perform Credit Check for each and every line item. If you Uncheck this then System will Perform Credit check while Saving the Sales document.

* Generally we check this and it will save the Time of end users.

(b) Released documents are Still Unchecked.

Deviation in % : This field controls after releasing the order which is Blocked for credit and if user is increasing the value in that order then system will again Block the order for credit. (even a single Rupee).

* But if you maintain Some Percentage here then system will allow to increase the value upto that Percentage. If the that Percentage exceeds then system will again block the order for Credit.

* T. code to Release the Block VKM3.

Class (95) 25/07/14.

* Go to credit control Area and maintain risk category for new Customers. (High Risk).

(c) Number of Days: If you mention Number of days here then after Releasing the order which is Blocked for credit if there is no further Process with in that number of days mentioned then System will again Block the order for Credit.

(c) Credit Limit Seasonal Factor: This will help to increase or decrease the Credit limits to all the Customers during a Particular Season.

* In FD32 Status view maintain Risk Category. If you maintain it Risk category in credit control Area even which will be enough.

* Create new customer and maintain credit limit in FD32 and check all the scenarios discussed above.

** In automatic credit check if order is Blocked for credit then that order value will not be updated into credit Management (even after saving the Sales order).

To Release block: Go to VKM3 and mention the Sales order Number and click on Excute. And select the item and click on Release and save it.

Checks

** (a) Static: If you check this then system ~~considers~~ updates all open order values, open delivery values, open Invoice values and open Item values into credit Management.

(b) Reaction: This field controls how system should respond if Customer's credit Limit exceeds that is whether to give warning message or error message or No message.

(c) Status / Block: Class (16) 26/07/14

* If you check this then the Customer's Credit limit exceeds then System will block the order for Credit. If you Uncheck this even if customer's Credit limit exceeds system will not Block the order for credit.

** (d) Dynamic: If you check this then system updates all open order values, open delivery values, open Invoice values and open Item values into credit Management. But any open order if delivery creation date is exceeding Horizon date then that order value will not be updated into credit management.

* If customer's requested to get a delivery after 2 months and he is asking to create order (customer's credit limit already has exceeded then we can not block the order because we do not if customer make Payment or not.

* Imp.

Q: Can I change the Horizon Period from months to date or Days to months?

A: Yes. In Infostructure S066. T.code - OM01.

* Double click on S066 and change:

(e) Document Value: If you check this and if you maintain maximum document value then while creating sales order if sales order value exceeds maximum document value then system will block the order for credit even though customer is having enough credit Balance.

(f) Critical fields: If you check this then while creating sales order if user changes any of the critical fields then system will block the order for credit. Even though the customer is having enough credit balance. (In change mode of order also).

* The critical fields are
  1. Payment Terms
  2. Additional value days
  3. Fixed value date

Class (96) 30/07/14.

Next Review Date: If you check Next review date then while creating sales order if order date exceeds Next review date then system will block the order for credit eventhough customer is having enough Credit Balance. We maintain Next review date in FD32 in status view and also we maintain Last review date as well.

* In FD32 Status View we maintain Last Review date and Next Review date.

<u>Number of Days</u>: The Number of days if in Next review date is Grace days (Additional days).

<u>Open Items</u>: The T. code to make the Invoice over due forcely is **FBL5N** Mention customer Number and company code click on Excute.

Customer Number — 100762

Company code — 2100.

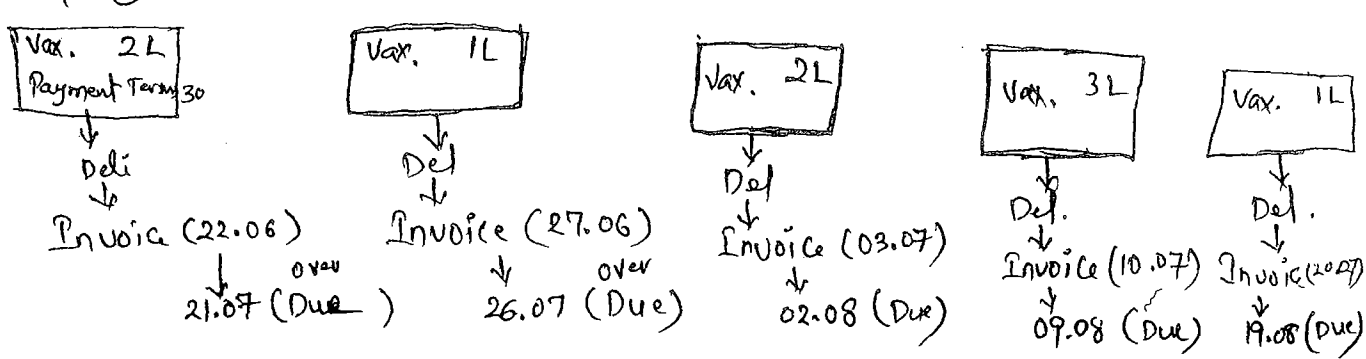
* Double click on the item which you want make it over due then change the Base Line date and save it.

* To See if it is whether over due or not "Select layout". Then double click on Terms of Payment.

* If you check open items then while creating sales order system cumilates the values of all the open items and system cumilates the values of over due items and calculates the over due item percentage if the over due item percentage exceeds maximum open item percentage then system will block the order for credit, even though the customer is having enough credit balance. <u>Go to **OBA4** and go to new entries co.co.& save.</u>

Customer — 100762, Payment Terms = 30 days, Credit limit = 10L

Order (1)



Oldest open item: Oldest open item is Overdue item.

* If you check oldest open item then while Creating Sales order even if one Invoice is Overdue for that customer then system will block the Next Transaction.

Highest Dunning Level: If you check Highest Dunning Level and if you mention Highest dunning Level and if that Dunning Level reaches then system will block the next Transactions of the customers.

* Dunning means Sending Reminders to the Customers for making payment.

User1, User2, User3: We use these for User exits. If client's requirement replied to Credit Management is not fulfilling with Standard configurations then we use User exits. And SAP has provided 3 User exits for Credit Management. If you are using first user then check User1, if you're using second user then check User 2 and if you are using third user they check User 3.

Path to find User exit:

SPRO → Sales and distribution → System modifications → User exits → User exit for Credit Management.

1. USER_CREDIT_CHECK1
2. USER_CREDIT_CHECK2
3. USER_CREDIT_CHECK3.

Payer Check:

Class (97) 31/07/14

* We user Payer check if customer is having Multiple Payers.
* Payer check will be used while Performing "open item check" and "Oldest open item check".
* If you check payer then system considers the Invoices of all the Payers who are in a group while performing open item check and oldest open item check.
* If you Check this then System considers the Invoices of only that particular payer while performing open item check and Oldest open item check.
* To check this Scenario Create One customer with Multiple payers.
* first Create a Sold to party Customer. (100769)
* And create Second Payer — 100770.
* Create third Payer — 100771.
* Go to sold to party and assign other two Payers. (100770 & 771)

Grouping of Multiple payers into Single Credit Limit:

* Go to FD32, mention your sold to party and maintain Credit Limit for 100769 Payer. — 1,000,000.
* Go to FD32 for other payers (100770 and 100771) and go to Status view and go to menu edit and click on change Credit account.
* Maintain the Payer for whom we maintain Credit Limit as Credit Account. (100769).
* Do the Same for other payer (100771).
* Create Sales order and check Result. check the result by checking the field Oldest open Item. Select the payer in the Pop up.

* Create first order for 100771 Payer of 3L.
* Create Second order for 100769 Payer of 2L.
* Create third order for 100770 Payer of 2.5L.
* Create Fourth order for 100771 Payer of 1.5L.

*Client's requirement is for Dealers and they want static check and open items check and for Distributors they want Dynamic and oldest open Item check, for Institution they want Dynamic and critical fields check. How to do this?

A: For the Above Scenario we need to define 9 Risk categories.

Dealers	Distributors	Institutions
☑ Static	☑ Dynamic	☑ Dynamic
☑ open item	☑ oldest open	☑ Critical field

B001 DE1 B1 (High Risk)
B001 DE2 B2 (Medium Risk)
B001 DE3 B3 (Low Risk)

Class (98) 1/08/14.

* Client's requirement is that they want to maintain credit limits?

A: If client is asking this Requirement means client will take orders from customers Division specific.

Configuration: (1) Define Credit control Area.

* Eg: If you have 6 Divisions then define 6+1 Credit control Areas. Last one is the Dummy one. 6 is for actual Divisions and additional one is "Credit control Area."
"Dummy".

* So creati 7 Credit control Areas.

* B001 – New, B000 – Dummy, B002 – Division 1, B003 – Division 2, B005, B007, B008.

(2) Assign CCA to company code. (only Dummy).

* ZALK — B000 (Dummy).

(3) Assign actual credit control Areas to sales Area.

Path: Spro → Enterprise Structure → Assignment → sales and Distribution → Assign Sales Area to Credit control Area

* Go to your sales Area and assign CCA.

ZDOM	Z2	Z2	B001
ZDOM	Z2	Z3	B002
ZDOM	Z2	Z4	B003
ZDOM	Z2	Z5	B004
ZDOM	Z2	Z6	B005
ZDOM	Z2	Z7	B006

* SD responsible to do this Assignment.

* Assign CCA to all possible Sales Areas. (30).

(4) Assign permitted CCAs to company code.

* FI consultant is responsible to do this.

Path: Spro → Financial Accounting (New) → Accounts receivable and accounts payble → Credit Management → Credit control Account → Assign permitted CCAs to company code.

* Go to new entries and assign

ZALK — B001
ZALK — B002
ZALK — B003
ZALK — B004
ZALK — B005
ZALK — B006

(5) Define Risk categories.

* Define 3 Risk categories and assign them to all CCAs.

Risk category	CCA.
B01	B001
B02	B001
⋮	⋮
B01	B006
B02	B006
B03	B006

(6) Create a Customer and Extend to all the Divisions.

* While Creating Customer master enter the Relevant Credit control Area in Billing Tab.

100726 — Z2 — B001
100726 — Z3 — B002
100726 — Z4 — B003
⋮
100726 — Z7 — B005

↳ Divisions ↳ CCAs.

(7) Maintain Credit Limits.

* Mention Different CCAs as per Division.

Z2 { Customer — 100726, CCA — B001 } 1,000,000.00

Z3 { Customer — 100726, CCA — B002 } 1,500,000.00

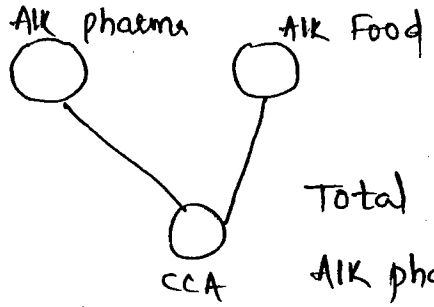
⋮
etc.

(8) create a Sales order for a Division and check if it updated in that particular Credit control Area or not.

* Here the orders must be Division specific that means the Header Division and Item Division must be Same.

* Total Limit and Individual Limit in FD32 :

* We use this if you have multiple company codes, and single Credit Control Area (centralised Process).



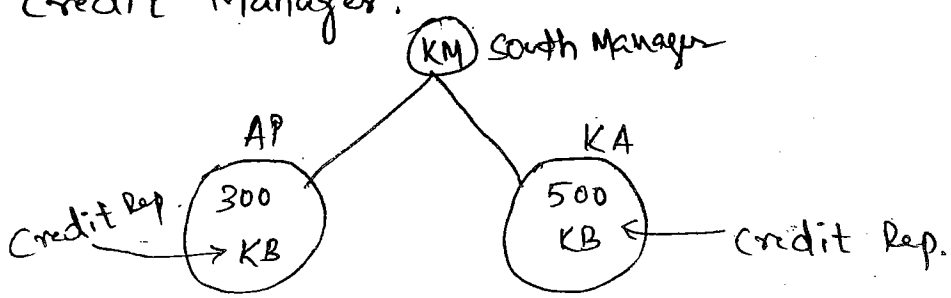
Total Limit = 10L.

AIK pharma = 4L, AIK Food = 6L.

* Partner Functions in Credit Management.

* KB — Credit Representative.

KM — Credit Manager.



Questions on credit Management.

1. What is the Difference between Simple and Automatic credit check?
2. What is the Difference between Centralized and Decentralized Credit process?
3. What is the purpose of Update Group?
4. Explain the various update Groups?
5. Where we maintain Credit limits for New Customers?
6. What is the Relationship b/w CCA and company code?
7. In Simple Credit check what is the Difference between credit check A, B, C?

(8) After releasing the order which is Blocked for Credit if there is no further process with in 2 days then system should block the order again. where is the control?

(9) system is performing Credit check while Saving the Sales document but client's requirement is system should perform Credit check for each and every item. where is the control?

(10) After releasing the order which is Blocked for Credit if user is increasing the value in that order then system should again block the order for credit. where is the control?

(11) What is the Difference b/w static and Dynamic check?

(12) Can I change Horizon period from months to Days?

(13) What happen if I check Credical fields?

(14) What are the critical fields we have in Credit Management?

(15) What happen if you check Next review date?

(16) client's requirement is System should restrict each Sales order value to 5,00,000. where is the control?

(17) Client's requirement is if Customer's previous Invoice is over due then System should block the Next Transaction. where is the control?

(18) What happens if I check open Item?

(19) what is the purpose of User1, User2, User3?

(20) ~~What~~ client's requirement is if customer receives second reminder for payment then System should block the Next transaction. where is the control?

(21) How to group multiple payers into Single Credit limit?

(22) With out configuring Credit Management the order is Blocking for Credit. what could be the Reason?

(23) Client's requirement is they want to maintain Division wise Credit Limits. How do this?

(24) During a particular I want to Decrease the Credit limit to all customers. where is the control?

(25) If order is Blocked for Credit then system should not confirm quantities. where is the control?

(26) Client's requirement is for Dealers they want static check and Distributors they want Dynamic check and for Institutions they want Dynamic and Critical fields?

(27) T.code for release the Blocked orders?

(28) T.code for release the Blocked Deleveries? VKM5

(29) Common T.code for releasing blocks? VKM4 (orders & Delvs)

(30) when System will update the values into Receivables?

(31) What is the purpose of Total Limit and Individual limit in FD32?

(32) What are the Partner functions we have in Credit Management?

(33) Can I See Bifurcation of open order values, open Delivery values and open Item values?

(34) What is the Subtotal we use to update the values into Credit Management?

(35) will Return order updates into Credit Management?

A: NO. Credit Active Uncheck in REN. Because end user will do manupulations and they will Create Return order and order.

(36) will credit Memo Request Updates into Credit Mangement?

A: NO. In Return process and CR system will update the values when you create Return Invoice into Credit Management..

* In Return process and Credit Memo process system will not update values at order Level into credit Management but it will update when we create Invoice.

* Once Accounting document generates they that Invoice values definately updated into Credit Management.

(37) In third party and Ipo process if order is Blocked for Credit. then system should not generate PR?

(38) you got an issue that Values or not updating into credit Management. As a consultant what you check? (check list)?

(39) In Credit Management how you process post dated cheques and demand drafts?

Class (99)

Output Determination:

Class (99) 02/08/14.

* An output is the outcome of the Document.

Eg: Printouts, E-mails, fax etc.

* Output Determination is the process of determining output condition Records into sales document.
* output determination is also based on condition Technique.

Normal process:

Inquiry → NO output (Internal Document).

↓

Quotation —Print out→ AN00 (Standard)
Quotation —E-mail→ ? (We need to define)

↓

Order —Print out→ BA00
Order —order confirmation→ ?
Order —E-mail→ ?

↓

Delivery —Picking List→ Print out ?
Delivery —Packing List→ Print out PL00
Delivery —Delivery challan→ Print out LD00.

↓

Invoice —Printout→ RD00
Invoice —Email→ ?

standard output type for cash sale **RD03**

Return Process:

Return Order —Email→
Return Order —Print out→
Return Order → Return Delivery
Return Order → Return Invoice
Return Invoice —Email→
Return Invoice —Print out→

Credit Memo Request:

Credit Memo Request —Email→
Credit Memo Request —Print out→
Credit Memo Request → Credit Memo
Credit Memo —Email→
Credit Memo —Print out→

Debit Memo Request:

Debit Memo Request —Email→
Debit Memo Request —Print out→
Debit Memo Request → Debit Memo
Debit Memo —Email→
Debit Memo —Print out→

Profarma Invoice:

Profarma Invoice —Email→
Profarma Invoice —Print out→

* The Table for output is **NAST**.

* The common T.code for output configuration is **NACE**.

path for output determination sales documents and billing document

Path: Spro → Sales and Distribution → Basic functions → output control → output Determination → output Determination using condition Technique → Maintain output determination for Sales documents and Maintain output determination for Billing Documents.

* The Above path for output determination for sales and Billing documents only.

9866284334

Path for output determination for Delivery Documents:

* Spro → ~~Sales and distribution~~ → Logistics Execution → Shipping → Basic shipping functions → output control → output determination → Maintain output determination for Delivery.

Output configuration for Sales order:

* ① Maintain condition Tables.

* Double click on Maintain output condition Table for Sales documents.

* Go to create mode and create a condition Table with the combination of sales organization because if output is same for all Customers.

641 → Sales organization.

Dealers, Distributors } → Sales organization, Distribution channel, Passport, Indian } → Sales organization

Customers → Sales organization

Specific Customer → Sales organization, Customer

(2) Maintain Access sequence.

* Go to new entries and create your own Access sequence.

TA10 ⟶ Order confirmation.

* Double click on fields and Accesses.

		Exclusive
10	641	☑

* Save it.

(3) Maintain output types.

* Go to change mode and go to new entries and create your own output type.

* The Standard output type for Order Confirmation is **BA00**.

TA10 order confirmation type — TA10 (Access seq.)

** (1) Access to conditions: If you check this then System will try to Determine output based on condition Technique. If you Uncheck this then system will try to determine output type from Customer master with the help of DB0001 Procedure which we assign to Account Groups.

* We maintain output types in Customer master, "Documents Tab".

(2) Can not be changed: If you check this system will not allow to change the output type in Sales document.

(3) Multiple Issuing: If you check this then system will allow to Issue the Same output multiple Times.

(4) Partner Independant output: If you check this then the output will be Send to all the partner functions irrespective of the Active partner function. If you Uncheck this then the output will be Send to Active Partner functions. Ex: Order confirmation will be send

to Sold to Party, Delivery challen will be send to ship to party and Invoice copy will be send to Bill to party.

(5) Do not write processing Log: If you check this system will not display the processing information in Sales document while Issuing the output.

Class (100) 04/08/14.

(6) Change output: We use this only for mail configuration.

* Whenever changes happen to Sales order if you want to send a different format of mail to customer then we use change output.
* Standard Program is "FM06AEND".
* Standard Form Routine is "CHANGE_FLAG".

(7) Replacement of Text symbols: We use this only for mail

* Replacement of Text symbols will help to send the Subject and Body Text of a mail.
* The standard program for Replacement of Text symbols is "SAPMV45A".
* The standard form Routine is "TEXT_SYMBOL_REPLACE".

Default values Tab: (8) Dispatch Time:

* This field controls when the output should be issued. That is (1) Immediately while saving the Transaction (Imm.)

(2) with some background job. (on a fixed Time based Ex: 7PM).

(3) With your own Transaction. (User choice to send when).

(9) Transmission Medium: This field controls the Type of output. That is Print out, E-mail or Fax. etc.

* Transmission Medium for Print out is 1.
* Fax — 2.
* Mail — 5. (External send).
* EDI — 6.
* ALE — A (Distribution ALE).

ALE (Application Linking and Enabling): ALE is a Tool which will help to Transfer the SAP documents from one SAP to system another SAP system.

* EDI — 6. (Electronic Data Interchange).

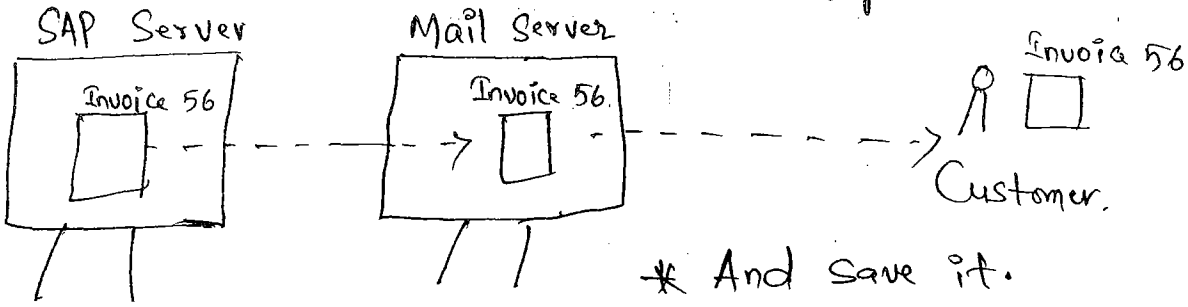
EDI: EDI is a Tool which will help to Transfer the documents from Non SAP system to SAP system or SAP to Non SAP.

(10) Partner function: SP → because order confirmation.

* SH → Delivery challan.
* BP → Invoice.

(11) Communication Stratégy: Communication strategy will help to Integrate SAP server with Mail Server. We use this only for Mail configuration.

* And we maintain Communication stratégy as "CS01".



* And save it.

** Double click on Mail Title and Texts.

* In mail Title and Texts we maintain Subject and Body Text.

* Double click on it and go to new entries.

* Language — EN.

Title (subject) — ORDER NO : & VBAK-VBELN&
CUST NO: & VBAK — KUNNR &

* If you want Print any SAP field (order NO, customer NO, etc then you have to mention that Particular field Table and field Name in between "&".

* Go back, click on Text to maintain Body Text.

Dear Customer,

This is the order confirmation so please find the Attached Document.

* Double click on Processing Routines.

* Go to new entries and Mention the below.

Transmission Medium — 1 Print out.

Program — RVADOR01 (Standard)

form Routine — ENTRY (Standard).

Form — RVORDER01 (Standard)

* Print Program will help to get the data from Data base Tables to print it in the output.

Form Routine: form Routine will help to do the calculations in output. Form Routine will help to check the conditions in output.

Form: We have 3 types of Forms.

1. Script form
2. Smart form
3. Adobe form.

Script form	Smart form.
1. Script form is the old method of Developing form.	1. Smart form is the new method of Delkloping Form.
2. Difficult to Develop.	2. Easy to Develop.
3. Complex designs may not be Possible in Script form.	3. complex designs are possible in Smart form.
4. The T.code SE71.	4. The T-code SMARTFORMS

** And the only Difference between Smart Form and Adobe form is that the Smart form will not convert into PDF automatically. But the Adobe form will automatically converts it into PDF format.

* If it is Script form then we assign it in "Form".

* If it is Smart form or Adobe form they we assign it in "PDF | SmartForm".

Q: How you Integrate with ABAPER to Develop Forms?

A: First we collect requirement from Core user and we Collect the Sample formats of output then we prepare FS and we prepare XL sheet (which consists of Technical Information) and Attach Sample format and XL sheet with FS and Send it to ABAPer. Then ABAPer will prepare TS and Develop the form. And he will send the form name to functional consultant. Then functional consultant will go to output types and assign the form Name.

Processing 1, 2, 3, 4, 5: Processing 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 will help to to take the copies like Original, Duplicate, Triplicate etc.

* And Save it.
* Double click on Partner Functions:
* And go to new entries mention the below.

Medium — 1 print out

Partner Function — SP

* And Save it.

(4) Maintain output Determination Procedure

* The standard output determination for Quotation is V060000.
* For order V10000.
* Go to new entries and define your own.

TA10000 — New output Proc for order Conf.

* Select and double click on Control data and place your cond. Type.

(5) Assign output determination Procedure.

* Double click on Allocate Sales document Header.
* Then go to document type (OR) and assign the output procedure.

OR (if it is order) — TA1000.

* And save it.

(6) Maintain output condition Records.

* The T.code to maintain output condition Records for Sales documents is VV11.
* The T.code to maintain output condition Records for Delivery Documents is VV21.
* The T.code to maintain output condition Records for Billing Documents is VV31.
* VV11 — TA10.
* Mention the Below.

S.org — ZDOM

Language — EN.

* Select it and click on communication. And mention Standard Output Device LP01.

Q: Client's Requirement is whenever we create Invoice the print out should be Issued in Customer's Printer. How to do this?

A: With the help of Output Device (Basis consultant). But each Customer we will define own output Define.

Output Mail configuration:

Class (101) 05/08/14

* Whenever we get a Requirement to configure output mail then we send a mail to BASIS consultant and inform about mail configuration. Then BASIS consultant will send a mail to client's administrator requesting for client's mail server IP address. Then client's administrator will send the information to BASIS consultant. Then BASIS consultant will go to SCOT settings and assign the client's mail server IP address in HOST name.
* The T. code for SCOT setting is **SCOT**.
* Expand Internet and double click on SMTP.

  Mail Host : 190.160.100.10

  Mail Port : 25.
* click on Internet (set) and mention the format as "PDF".
* Do the SD configuration Same as Print out but change the Transmission Medium as 5 (External send).

Transmission Medium — 5.

** From mail ID (company mail ID) will be maintained in Sales organization Address.

** To mail ID (Customer's Mail ID) will be maintained in Customer Master, Address Tab.

* The T. code to Track whether the mail has been sent or not is **SOST**.

SPOOL Request:

* SPOOL Request consists of List of outputs which are Issued.
* The T.code for spool Request is **SP01** or **SP02**.
* By using spool Request you can take collective outputs.
  Ex: Print outs.
* The T.code for collective Processing of Billing outputs is **VF31**.

Questions on output:

1. What is the Purpose of Access conditions?
2. What is the purpose of Replacement of Text Symbols?
3. I want to Send output to all the Partner functions, where is the control?
4. What is the Purpose of change output?
5. Where we maintain maintain Subject and Body Text?
6. What is the purpose of communication strategy?
7. How you Integrate with BASIS consultant to configure mail?
8. How you Integrate with ABAPer to develop forms?
9. What is the difference between script form and Smart Form?
10. what is the difference between Smart forms & Adobe forms?
11. What is the Medium for Mail?
12. What is the Purpose of print Program?
13. What is the purpose of form Routine?

(14) What is the Medium for ~~Mail~~? EDI and ALE?

(15) What is the purpose of Spool Request and what is the T.code?

(16) What is the Table for output?

(17) What is the T.code for collective Processing of Billing outputs?

(18) What is the T.code to Track whether the mail has been Sent or not?

(19) What is the T.code to maintain condition Records for Billing outputs?

(20) What is the purpose of Processing 1,2,3,4,5?

(21) If output is not determined then as a consultant what would you do?

A: Menu → GOTO → Determine Analysis.

(22) If order is Blocked for credit then system should not determine output type. Where is the control?

A: Output Requirement.

TEXT DETERMINATION

Class (102) 06/08/14.

* It is the process of Determining Text Information into Sales Documents.
* Text Determination is also based on condition Technique.
* Every customer will have their own specific Text information.

Ex: Packing Instructions, Payment Instructions, Terms and conditions.

* This Text we maintain in Customer Master. From there we copy it into sales documents then Delivery document they into Invoice.
* The Main purpose of Maintaining Text is to print it in the Relevant outputs.

Path: Spro → Sales and distribution → Basic functions → Text control → Define Text Types.

* The T.code for Text Determination is VOTXN.
* Select customer and Sales & distribution and click on Text Type.
* Go to new entries maintain Text ID's.

BB01 — Packing Instructions.
BB02 — Payment Instructions.
BB03 — Terms and conditions.

* press enter and save it.
* Then go back and click on change and go to new entries.
* And Define New Text Procedure.

L1 — New Text Procedure for SD.

* Select the Text procedure and double click on Text ID's in Text Procedure.
* Go to new entries and define your own.

Seq. NO.	ID
10	BB01
20	BB02
30	BB03

* Press enter and save it.
* Then double click on Text Procedure Assignment.
* Go to your Account group and assign your Text procedure.

Account Group	Text Procedure
0001	L1

* Then go to change mode of Customer Master, sales Area data and go to Extras and Texts.
* In selection mention star (*) and Language "EN" and mention the Text.
* If you want to enter some more Text then double click on Text and enter.
* Do the Same for Payment Instructions and Terms and conditions.

***"To copy the Text from Customer Master to sales documents we need to configure Text determination for sales documents."

* The T. code is **VOTXN**.
* Select Sales document Header and click on Text types.
* And create new Text ID's for Sales documents.

* Go to new entries and define your own.

AA01 — Packing Instructions
AA02 — Payment Instructions
AA03 — Terms and conditions.

* And Save it.

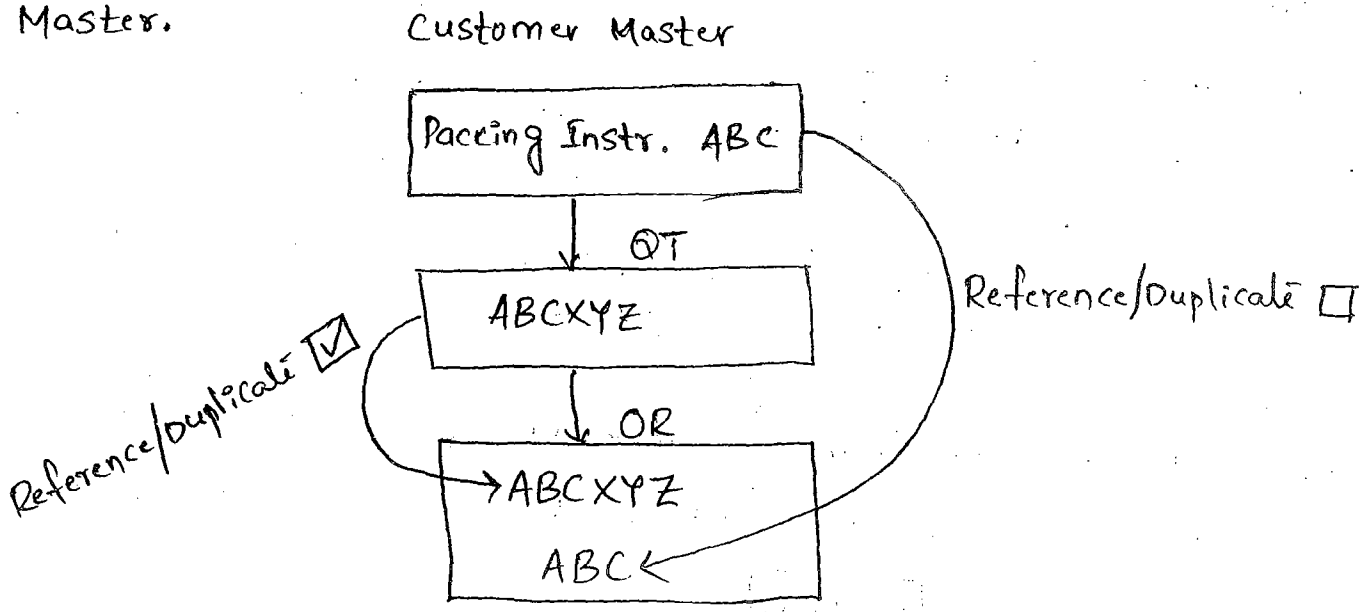
* Go back and go back to main menu and click on change and go to new entries mention the Text procedure (define).

L2 — Text Procedure for Sales documents.

* Select Text procedure and double click on Text ID's in Text procedure and go to new entries and maintain the below.

Seq. NO	ID	Reference/Duplicate	Text is obligatory	Acc. seq.
10	AA01	☐	Y	

<u>Reference/Duplicate</u>: This field controls whether to copy the Text from Reference document or Customer Master. If you check this then system will copy the Text from Reference document and if you Uncheck this then system will copy the Text from customer Master.



<u>Text obligatory</u>: This field controls whether the Text is Mandatory or Not.

Access Sequence: Access Sequence will help to copy the Relevant Text from Customer Master to Sales documents.

* And save it.
* Double click on Access Sequence and go to new entries and create your own.

100 — Packing Instructions.
110 — Payment Instructions.
120 — Terms and conditions.

* Select the Access sequence (each and every) and double click on Access sequence for Text ID's and go to new entries and mention the below.

Seq. NO.	Text object	ID	Partner Function
10	KNVV	BB01	SP

* And save it.
* And go back new Access sequence nothing but 110 and 120.
* Do the Same steps for 110 and 120.

Access sequence — 110 → Payment Instructions.

* Select Access sequence and double click on Access sequence for Text ID's.

Seq.	Text object	ID	Partner function
10	KNVV	BB02	SP

* Then Access sequence → 120 — Terms and conditions.

Seq.	Text object	ID	Partner function.
10	KNVV	BB03	SP.

* Go back to Text ID's in Text Procedure. And mention the Text determination Procedure as — L2.

Seq. NO.	ID	Access sequence
10	AA01	100
20	AA02	110
30	AA03	120.

* Double click on Text procedure Assignment.
* Go to your document type and assign your Text Procedure.

OR — L2.

* And save it.

<u>Text in Overview Screen</u>: If you check this then system will display the Text in Sales document overview screen.

** If you want to copy the Text into Delivery documents then maintain Text determination for Delivery Documents.

* The Same T.code **VOTXN**.
* Go to the T.code and select Delivery Header.
* If you Create Text ID's in Sales documents then that is applicable to Sales documents, Delivery documents and Billing documents.
* Go to change mode then go to new entries and create New Text procedure "L3".
* In Delivery we only need Packing Instructions.
* Select the Text Procedure and double click on Text ID's in Text Procedure and go to new entries.

Seq. NO.	ID	ACC. Seq.
10	AA01	?

* Save and create Acc. seq. and Assign.

* Double click on Access Sequence and create your own.

130 — Packing Instruction Delivery.

* Select Access sequence and double click on Access sequence for Text ID. Then go to new entries.

Seq. NO.	Text object	ID
10	VBBK	AA01

* Press enter and save it.
* Go back and to Text ID's in Text Procedure and assign the Access sequence.

Step	Acc. Seq.
10	130

* Then double click on Text procedure assignment go to your Delivery type and assign Text procedure.

LF — L3.

Text Determination for Billing documents: Same Procedure.

→ Maintain Text for material in Sales Text (MM02) and create sales order and check

Determining the Material Text into Sales documents: Same but Item check

* To get the Text information we will use the function Module $\boxed{\text{READ_TEXT}}$ and mention the Text ID and object in T.code $\boxed{\text{SE37}}$.
* The Table for Text information is $\boxed{\text{STXH}}$.
* Mention the below.

Text ID — AA01

Language — EN.

Name — Sales document Number & Customer Number.

Object — VBBK.

0003000360 $\boxed{0010}$ → Item Number

↳ make it to 10 digit.

COPY CONTROLS

Class (103) 07/08/14.

* Copy controls comes into picture whenever we are creating a Document with Reference to another Document.
* Copy controls controls the below, purpose

(1) It controls whether to create a document with reference to another document or not.

(2) It will help to copy the data from Source document to Target document.

Del-L
SD-A
Bel-F

VTAA	VTLA	VTFL	VTFA
SD - SD	SD - DEL.	DEL-INV	SD - INV.
IN - QT	OR - LF	LF - F2	RE - RE
QT - OR	RE - LR	LO - F2	CS - BV
QC - OR	CS - BV	LF - F8	OR - F5
WK1 - OR	RO - LF	LO - F8	CONR - RE
WK2 - OR	FD - LF	NL - F8	CR - G2
OR - RE	SDF - LF	LF - IV	RK - G2
RE - SDF	CF - LF		DR - L2
	CI - LF		OR - F1
	CONR - LR		OR - F2
	CP - LR		
	DL - LO		
	DL - NL		

VTAF	VTFF
INV - SD	INV - INV
F2 - RE	F2 - S1
F2 - RK	RE - S2
F2 - CR	G2 - S2
F2 - DR	

VOV7
VOV4 deleting
VOV8
VOV6
VOV5 deleting

* The T.code is "VT" common for ALL but SD-A, DEL-L, INV-F and Target document first and Source doc

* copy sales documents like,

QT – QT20
OR – OR20 } And say "Yes" when it ask if it is relevant for copy control.

* And copy Item categories,

AGN – AG20
TAN – TA20 } click on "Yes" for copy controls. msg.

* Create New Schedule line categories.

BT – 20
CP – 22 } click on "Yes" for copy controls msg.

* Do your Item category determination in VOV4.

QT20 — AG20

OR20 — TA20

* Do your Schedule line category determination. VOV5

AG20 — PD – 20

TA20 — PD – 22

* Create one Quotation and check if it determining your Item category and Schedule line category.

* Create one order with reference to your Quotation and check if it copying everything from QT20 to DR20 (copy – Yes to copy contrl)

* Create New document types, New Item categories and new Schedule line categories but for all say "NO" for copy Controls when you get a Pop up while Copying them.

* Now Create one Quotation and create one order with reference to Quotation and check if it is copying the data from QT to OR. ("NO" – because copy controls we said "NO").

Error Msg: Copying from sales document type QT30 to OR33 is not Supported.

*(1) Go to VTAA T.code and goto the standard combination (OR- QT) and copy it to OR30 – QT30. (Delete '+', '-' 30 times).

(2) Select the combination and double click on Item.

* In copy controls always system considers the Source Item Category. (source document here is Quotation (AGN)).

* Select the Item category, click on copy (AGN).

* And change your Item category to AG30 (your Item Category).

* Press enter and save it.

(3) Select the combination and go to schedule line and select the standard (source document (QT-BT)) and click on copy. Change the schedule line category to yours.

* Press enter and save it.

Copy Control Controls:

(1) Copying Requirement: It is a condition for which system will check everytime while creating a document with reference to another document.

* If the Requirement full fills then only system will allow to Create a document with Reference to another document and if Requirement is not full filling then system will not allow to Create a document with Reference to another document.

* The standard copy Requirement is 001.

* The Standar copy Requirement 001 checks that,

(1) Validity Periods

(2) Whether it is completed or not. QT is fully referred or not.

③ Sales Area should be Same.

④ Customer should be Same.

⑤ Currency should be Same.

Q: I want to change the customer in order while creating order with Reference to Quotation. Where is the control?

*: change the copy Requirements from 001 to 002.

* The T.code to Develop new copy Requirements is VOFM.

Class (104) 08/08/14.

subtotal 1) KOMP-KZWI1

2. KOMP-KZWI2

3 KOMP-KZWI3

4 KOMP-KZWI4

5 KOMP-KZWI5

6 KOMP-KZWI6

✓7. KOMP-BONBA. & rebate. ✓

8. KOMP-PREVA preference value

9. KOM-BRTWR brutto value

✓A. KOMP-CMPRE credit price

✓B. KOMP-WAVWR cost

subtotal!

while calculating the formulas if you want to use any condition type value in the formula first state the condition type value in some sub total

(A) subtotal will also be use to update the fully discount values into rebate agreement.

rebate is [7] ✓

(B) it will be also be use to update the sales document value into credit memo

cr [A]

cost [B]

③ Sales Area should be Same.
④ Customer should be Same.
⑤ Currency should be Same.

* Customer change in 002 - warning msg
* Customer change in 001 - error msg.

Q: I want to change the customer in order while creating order with Reference to Quotation. Where is the control?

*: change the copy Requirements from 001 to 002.

* The T.code to Develop new copy Requirements is **VOFM**.

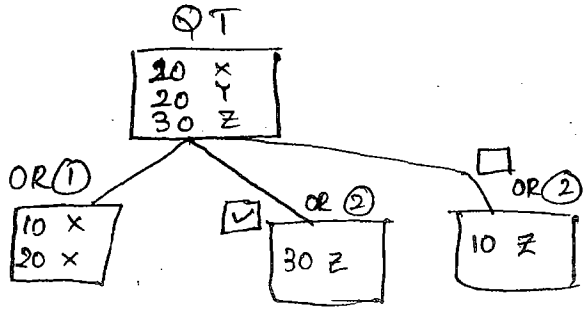
Class (104) 08/08/14.

② **Copy Routines**: Copy Routines will help to copy the data from Source document to Target document.

* The T. code develop New copy Routines is **VOFM**.

③ **Copy Item Number**: If you check this then system will copy the Line Item Number as it is from Source document to Target document.

* If you Uncheck this system will redetermine the Line Item Number in Target document based on Item Number Increment in document type controls.



* If you want to change the Customer in Target document first you go to create mode of Target document and enter Customer Number and click on Sales document to create with Reference to Preceding document.

4) Complete Reference: If you check this then system will not allow to select or Dis select Item in Target document. And system will not allow to Delete the Line Item in Target document.

Item Data controls

Copying Requirement:

sales docu. for SD

: The standard copying Requirement for Item is **301**.

: 301 Requirement checks that "do not copy" Rejected Items or ompleted Items.

2) Item Data Transfer Routines: Item Data Transfer Routines will help to copy the line item data from Source document to Target document.

3) Copy Schedule lines: If you check this the schedule line data will be copied as it is from Source document to Target document. (Delivery Dates and confirm Quantities).

4) Update Document Flow: If you maintain this then whenever e create a document with Reference to another Document the ne Item data will be Updated in **VBFA** Table and the Result Status of the Line Item will be Updated.

Then when you create a Document with reference another document ystem will copy only open Quantity.

If you do not maintain Update document Flow then while reating a document with Reference to another document the ne Item data will not be updated in VBFA Table and the esult is the Status of the Line Item will not be Updated, hat is always the Status will be open. So everytime System ill copy the Total Quantity into Target document.

* Update document flow will have relationship with Positive/Negative Quantity field in copy controls.

(5) **Do Not copy Batch**: If you check this then the Batch Number will not be copied from Source document to Target doc

(6) **Reexplode Structure (BOM/free goods)/Free Goods**: If you check this then system will Redetermine BOM/Free Goods in Target document.

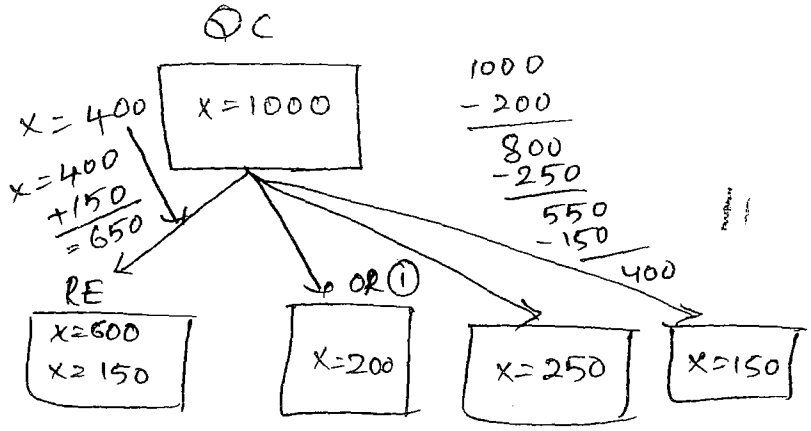
* If you Uncheck this then system will copy the BOM/Free Goods as it is from Source document to Target document.

(7) **Positive/Negative Quantity**: This field is having Relationship with Update document flow in copy controls and completion rule field in Item category.

Positive Effect: Whenever we create a document with Reference to another document the Referred Quantity will be deducted from the open Quantity of the Source document.

* Whenever we create a document with reference to another document system will copy the open Quantity.

Negative Effect: We use Negative effect in contracts (QC) ~~and~~ to Returns (RE).



* While creating Return order with Reference to Quantity contract the Reffered Quantity will be added to the open Quantity of the Source document. (RE)

* while creating Return order with Reference to Quantity contract

No effect ( ) :

Class (105) 11/08/14

* While Creating a document with Reference to another document, the Referred quantity will not be added or deducted to the open quantity of the Source document. Always the open quantity remains Same.

Copy Quantity: This field controls how the quantity should be determined into Target document.

Pricing Type: This field controls how the pricing should be copied from Source document to Target document

Pricing Type "B" (Carry out New pricing): If Pricing type is "B" then System will Redetermine New prices into Target document. And Manual conditions will not be copied.

Pricing Type "C" (copy Manual Pricing elements and Redetermine others): System will copy Manual cond. from Source to Target.

Pricing Type "D": Copy Pricing elements Unchanged.

Pricing Type "G": copy pricing elements Unchanged and Redetermine Taxes. If pricing type is "G" then it will Redetermine

Pricing Type "H": Only those conditions for which the condition category is "D".

Redetermine only Frieght conditions, and copy others Unchanged. If pricing type "H" then it will Redetermine for which condition category is "F".

Order To Delivery copy controls (OR to DEL) : T.code VTLA

Ex: OR – LF.

① copy Requirement : (Order Requirement :) [illegible]

* The standard copy Requirement for order to Delivery is 001

* The standard copy Requirement 001 checks that the Reference document should be an order.

① the order should not be blocked by credit check

1. credit block
2. reference must be order.
3. status (user profile).

② Combination Requirement :

multiple order into single delivery VL10

* The Standard Requirement is 051.

* The Requirement will comes into picture if your combining multiple orders into single delivery.

* 051 Requirement checks that

① Delivery Type should be Same. all the orders which your combining

② Sales organization should be same

③ Billing Type should be Same.

Item Data ① Order Requirement :

OR - Del

* Order to Delivery Item Requirement is 101.

* 101 checks that

① Delivery status.

② Incomplete status.

③ shipping point.

here only positive ebbut.

Delivery to Invoice (VTFL) :

Ex: LF — F2.

① Header : copying Requirement : The standard copying Requirement Delivery to Invoice is 003.

* 003 Requirement checks that ① PGI status

Q: Where is the control that system will not allow to create Invoice without PGI?

A: Copy Requirement 003.

Q: Where is the control that system will allow to create Profarma Invoice without PGI?

A: Copy Requirement 009. (LF – F8).

& It checks ((009) Requirement) only Billing Block.

Q: Client's Requirement is they want to create Invoice without PGI. where is the control?

A: Copying Requirement 011.

& 011 Requirement check all except PGI.

Q: Can I ~~can~~ create Multiple Invoice to Single Delivery?

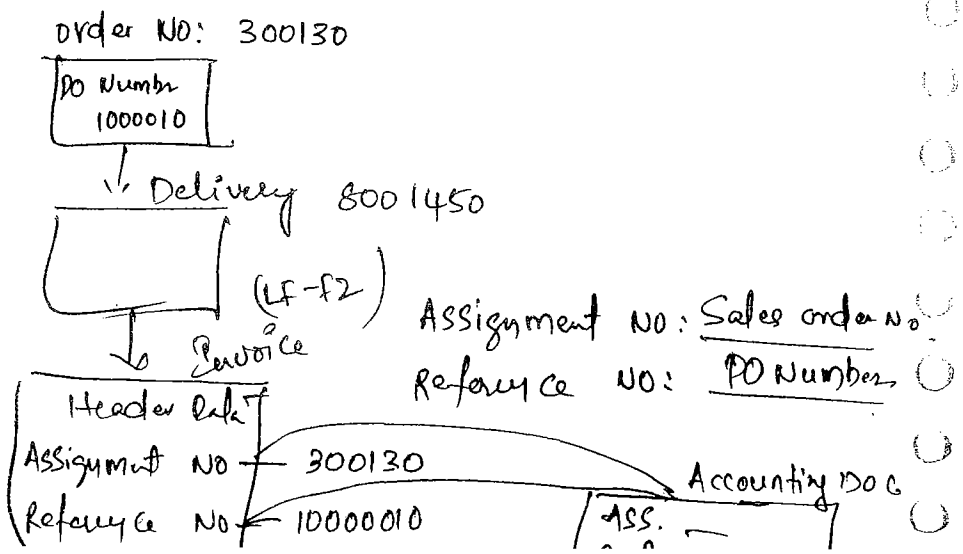
- No. Requirement 003.

Q: Can I create Multiple Profarma Invoices to Single Delivery?

A: Yes. Requirement 009.

2) <u>Assignment Number</u> and <u>Reference Number</u>:

Assignment Number and Reference Number will help to link sales document and finance documents (Invoice to Accounting document).



Class (106) 12/08/14

Q: Eventhough split criteria is Same but still system is splitting the Invoice what could be the Reason?

A: Assignment NO and Reference Number.

Delivery to Invoice Item Data:

it will help to restrict the invoice in before date and next date.

① VBRK/VBRP: Standard is 007.

* We use VBRK/VBRP to control the Billing Dates.

Q: Client's requirement is they want to restrict creating Invoice in future Dates and they want to Restrict creating Invoice in Past Days?

A: These Restrictions we do in VBRK/VBRP.

Restricting Number of Line Items in Invoice:

Path: Spro → Sales and Distribution → Billing → Billing Documents → Country specific features → Maintain Maximum Number of Billing Items.

① Go to Sales organization, mention Number of Items.

ZDOM AIKem Domestic — 2 (Number to Restrict).

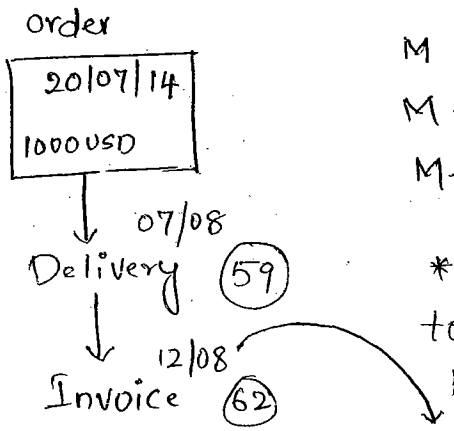
② Go to the copy control Delivery to Invoice and maintain VBRK/VBRP as 006.

Q: Can I Restrict Number of Line Items in Invoice?

A: Yes. maintain Number of Items in Sales Organization and maintain VBRK/VBRP as 006.

Q: Client's Requirement is in Invoice split they want Incoterm also [illegible]

2) **Pricing Exchange Rate Type**: This field controls basing on which date the Exchange Rate should be determined while posting the Invoice values into Accounting. T-code **OC41**.



M → 20/07/14 — 60 Rs.
M → 07/08/14 — 59 Rs.
M → 12/08/14 — 62 Rs.

* System checks which currency to be consider based on Pricing Exchange Rate Type.

Accounting
System converts Customer Currency to Company Code Currency.

3) **Cumulate Cost**: If you check this then system will Transfer the cost of Free Goods Item to Main Item (Means to Add) while generating Profitability Analysis Document.

X ⟶ 1,00,000 (cost = 60,000) = A
Y ⟶ 0 (cost = 18,000) = B.

Profit = 1,00,000 − A = 1,00,000 − 60,000 = 40,000 (Wrong).

Profit = Price − (A+B) = 1,00,000 − (60,000 + 18,000)
= 22,000 (correct).

4) **Price Source**: This field controls from which Document the Price should be copied Into Invoice. That is Order or Delivery or Purchase order or Shipment cost etc

Determining Pricing in Delivery:

Path: Spro → Logistics Execution → shipping → Basic shipping functions → Pricing → Define Pricing procedures for Delivery.

* Go to the Delivery type and assign the Pricing Procedure.

Q: Eventhough we do not have price in Delivery how syste is determining price in Invoice?

A: Based on Price Source field in copying controls.

Order To Billing (VTFA):

* Go to Billing Type (F2) and sales document Type (OR).
* F2 - OR combination we use for Service and Third Party.
* Double click on Item data and go to third party Item category (TAS) and go to details.

① **Copying Requirement**: The standard Item copying Requirement for Third party is [012].

* Copying Requirement 012 checks that without MIRO system will not allow to create Invoice to Customers.

Q: Where is the control that in Third party process withou MIRO system will not allow to create Invoice to customer?

A: Item category Billing Relevance [F] and copy Requirement [012].

② **Billing Quantity**: The Billing Quantity for Third party without shipping Notification is [F].

* Billing Quantity [F] will help to copy the Quantity from MIRO to Invoice while creating Invoice to Customer in third Party process without shipping Notification.
* The Billing Quantity for Third party with shipping Notification is [E].
* Billing Quantity [E] will help to copy the Quantity from MIGO to Invoice while creating Invoice to customer in third party with shipping Notification.

Business Process

Class (107) 13/08/14.

1) What is the Purpose of copying Requirement?
2) What is the purpose of Data Transfer Routines?
3) What is the T.code to Develop New Requirements & Routines?
4) Client's Requirement is they want to Restrict Number of line Items in Invoice? How to do this?
5) I want to Transfer the cost of Free Goods Items to Main Item. where is the control?
6) client's Requirement is while creating order with Reference to to Quotation they want to change the Customer in order. where is the control?
7) While creating Invoice with Reference to Delivery eventhough we do not have price in Delivery how system is Determining the price in Invoice?
8) What is the effect of Positive Quantity!
9) What is the effect of Negative Quantity and what scenarios we use Negative Quantity?
10) What happens if Uncheck Update document flow?
11) I want system to determine New prices into Target document. where is the control?
12) where is the control that system will not allow to create invoice? without PGI. where is the control?
13) Client's want to create Invoice without PGI?
14) where is the control that system will allow to create proforma Invoice without PGI?
15) Where is the control that system will not allow to create multiple Invoices for Single Delivery?

(16) Where is the control that system will allow to create Multiple profarma Invoices to Single Delivery?

(17) Where is the control that in third party process system will not allow to create Invoice to customer with out MIRO?

(18) What is the Billing Quantity for Third party without shippi notification and what its effect?

(19) What is the Billing Quantity for third party with shipping notification and what is its effect?

(20) client's Requirement is system should always determine new BOM into Target document. where is the control?

(21) system should always determine exchange Rate based on current date. where is the control?

(22) Eventhough standard split criteria is same but still system is splitting the Invoice. where is the control? (Assignment & Ref. No

(23) I want to Restrict creating Billing Document in future date. where is the control?

(24) Where is the control for Quotation system will not allow to create Delivery?

(25) where is the control, that In cash sale Process eventhough we create cash sale Invoice with Reference to order system will not allow to create cash sale Invoice without PGI. Where is the control? (CS to BV copy Requirement).

(26) While creating SDF with reference to Return order system will allow to copy only Rejected items. where is the control?

(27) Client's Requirement is system should not allow to delete the line item in Target Document. where is the control?

(28) what is the copy Requirement for third party?

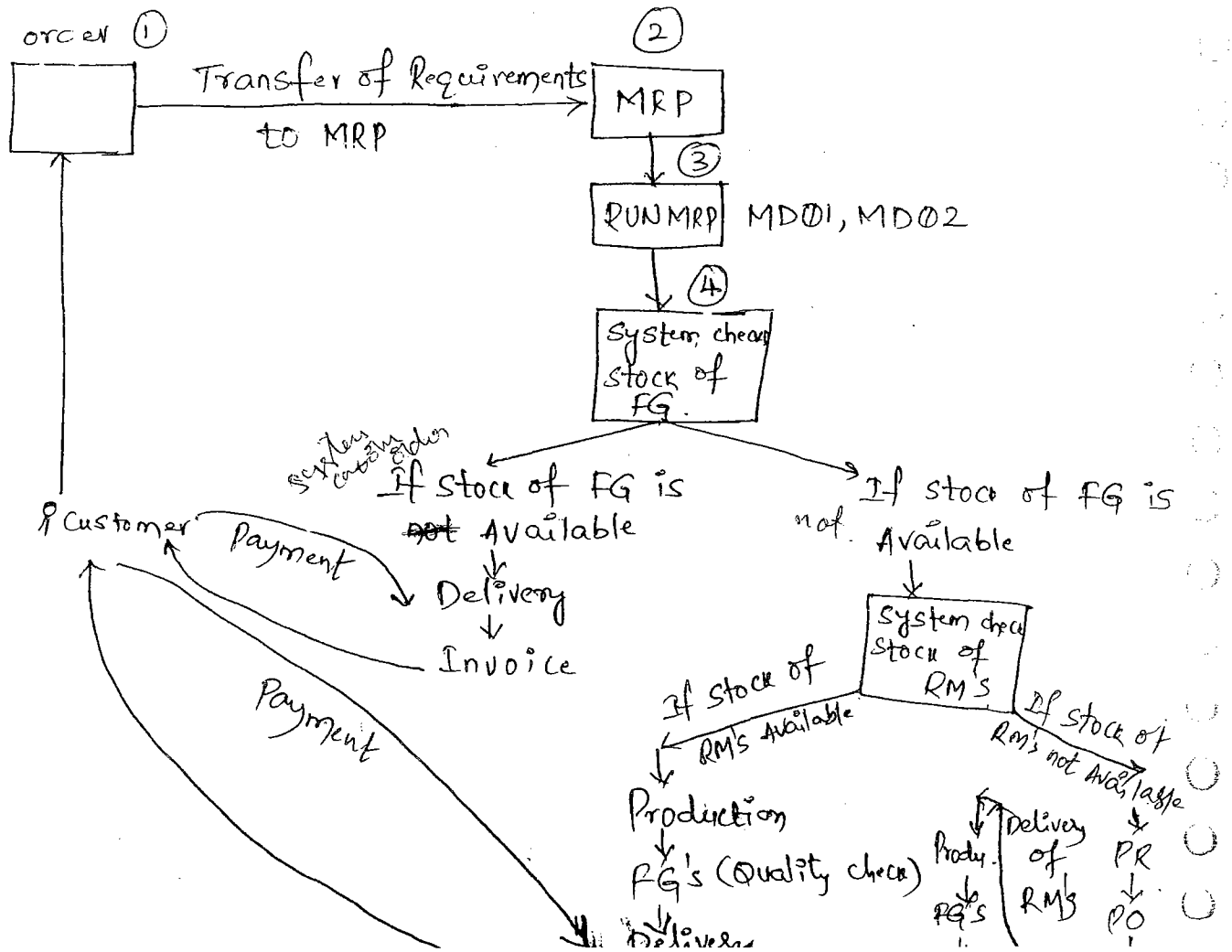
(29) what is the copy Requirement for Delivery to Invoice? (003)

30) what is the copy Requirement for Profarma Invoice?
31) what is the copy Requirement for Order to Delivery?
32) what is the combination Requirement in Delivery?
33) what is the copy Requirement for SD to SD?
34) Where is the control that if customer Relevant for POD then system will not allow to create Invoice without receiving POD?
35) where is the control that system will not allow to create delivery if order is Blocked for Credit?
36)

BUSINESS PROCESS

class (108) 14/08/14.

) Order To cash (OTC):



* In the above Process 5 modules will involve that SD, MM, PP, QM and FI.

② Standard Process:

Inquiry
↓
Quotation
↓
Order
↓
Delivery
↓
Invoice.

* Whenever customer enquires about the Product we create inquiry document in SAP. Inquiry document consists of Customer Details, Material Details, Quantity details. Inquiry is a Internal document and after creating Inquiry we will create Quotation with Reference to Inquiry.

* Quotation document consist of customer details, Quantity details, material details, validity period, pricing and Terms and conditions. After creating Quotation we will send this document to customer. If customer satisfies with the Quotation then he will place order.

* Order is an Agreement between company and the Customer for Supplying the Goods. Order document consists of customer details, Material details, Quantity details, Pricing, Terms and Conditions, Delivery dates and confirmed quantities.

* Then we create Delivery with Reference to order. After Delivery they do Picking activity and Packing activity and then PGI. After PGI they create Invoice with Reference to

Inquiry
↓
Quotation —Sent to→ Customer
↓
Order → ① Partner Determination
② Listing / Exclusion
③ Material Determination
④ Free Goods
⑤ Delivery Scheduling
⑥ Availability check
⑦ Pricing
⑧ Credit Management
⑨ Text Determination
⑩ Output Determination
⑪ TOR.

↓
Delivery
↓
Invoice.

Picking
Packing
PGI
① Stock Updates
② Inventory Accounting doc. generates
COGS a/c Dr.
To
Inventory a/c Cr.
③ Updates in LIS
④ Updates in Credit Management
⑤ Updates in Document Flow
⑥ Updates in Billing due list

Invoice.
① Accounting doc. gen.
Customer a/c Dr.
To
Revenue a/c Cr.
② Profitability Analysis document generates
③ Cost center document generates
④ It updates in LIS
⑤ Updates in Credit Management.
⑥ It updates in Document flow.

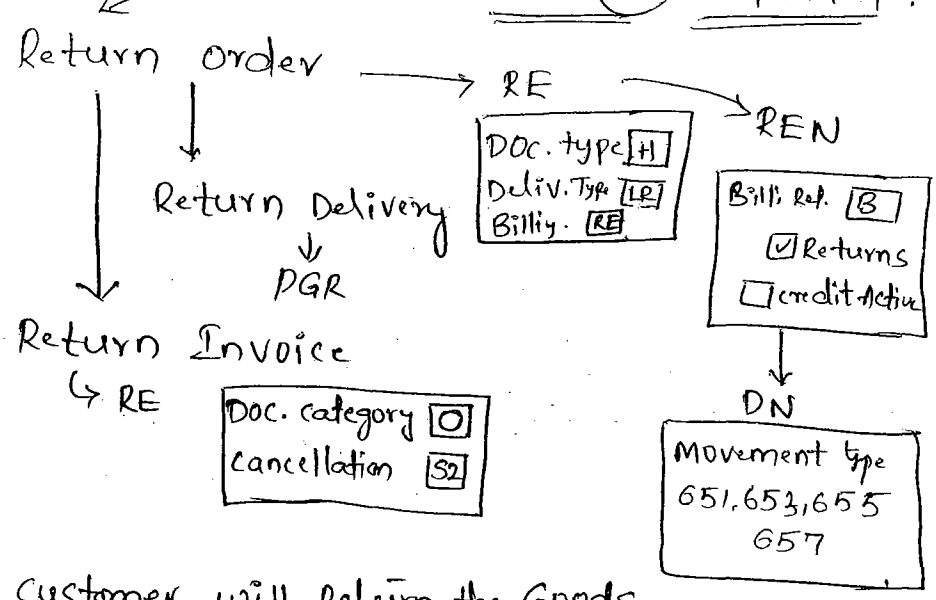
Inquiry → IN (DOC. cat [A]) → AFN (Comp. Rule [A]) → AT
↓
Quotation → QT [B] → AGN (Comp. Rule [B] DOC. cat) → ST
↓
Order → OR (DOC. cat. [C]) → TAN (Bill. Rel. [A]) → CP
movement type 601
[✓] Item Rel. Activ
[✓] Requirement
[✓] Availability
↓
Delivery → LF (DOC. cat. [J]) → TAN
↓
Invoice → F2 (doc. cat [M])

Questions on Standard Business Process: Class (108) 15/08/14

1. While creating order with Reference to Quotation I want to change the Customer Number in order. where is the control?
2. While creating order with reference to quotation can I increase the Quantities in order more than quotation Quantity?
3. While creating order with reference to quotation i want to copy the Pricing as it is from quotation to order. where is the control?
4. While creating order system should determine Bill to party from Ship to party. where is the control?
5. What are the activities System performs when we creati Sales order?
6. How many maximum deliveries partially we can make?
7. What is Invoicing Dates?
8. What is Invoicing List dates?
9. What is the T.code for collective Processing of Deliveries?
10. What is the T.code for Delivery Monitor?
11. What is the T.code for collective processing of PGI? ~~PGC~~
12. What is the T.code for collective Process of Picking?
13. What is the T.code for collective processing of Billing Documents?
14. What is the T.code for List of Billing Documents?
15. What is the T.code for Reverse PGI?
16. What is the T.code for Invoice cancellation?
17. what is the T.code to post the Invoice values into Accounting Manually?
18. what is the T.code for Invoice List?
19. What is the Prerequisite combine Multiple orders into single Delivery?
20. What is Split criteria for Deliveries?

Return Process:

Class (109) 16/08/14.



K The Below Scenarios Customer will Return the Goods.

) Damaged Goods

) Defective Goods

) Expired Goods

) over Delivery

Whenever Customer wants to Return the goods then we will inform ie Same to Sales person or Sales Manager. Then Sales Manager will nd an employee to Customer's place to cross check the goods. Then ployee will cross check the goods and Prepare Return note.

Return Note →

Cust. no —		Invoice no. —	
I. NO	Material	Qty	Reason
employee —		Customer —	

After Preparing Return note employee will Submit it to company. Then user will create Return order with reference to Invoice. And hen we receive the Return Goods from customer then we create turn Delivery and PGR. Then we create Return Invoice with ference to Return order.

In Returns the Standard movement type is 651. The effect of 51 movement type is stock will be added to Return Stock.

Inventory Accounting Document will not generate.

* effects of Movement type 653.

① Stock will be add:d to Unrestricted stock.

② Inventory Accounting document generate. And the Accounting entry is

Inventory A/c Dr.
T Dr.
Cost of Goods Sold A/c Cr.

* effects of Movement type 655.

① Stock will be added to Quality Inspection stock.

② Inventory Accounting document generates. And the Accounting entry is

Inventory A/c Dr.
To
Cost of Goods sold A/c Cr.

* The effects of Movement type 657.

① Stock will be added to Blocked Stock,

② Inventory Accounting document generates. And the Accounti entry is

Inventory A/c Dr.
To
Cost of Goods sold A/c Cr.

* Billing Type RE, document category "O" will help to generate Revenue Accounting Document as

Revenue A/c Dr.
To
Customer A/c Cr.

* Returns Delivery type LR, document category [T] will help to Propose PGR at the time of Return Delivery.

Questions :

1) Explain the Return Process of your client?

2) What Scenarios customer Return the Goods?

3) Why SAP says Return Invoice with reference to Return order?

A: Because how much quantity we certified at customer's place will be copied into Return Invoice but not how much we actually recieved in Return Delivery.

4) What Scenarios document values will be in Negative?

5) While doing return Delivery how System is Proposing PGR?

) What is the Schedule line category for Returns?

) What is the effect of Movement type 651?

) What is the effect of 653 Movement type?

) What is the effect of 655 Movement type?

) What is the effect of 657 Movement type?

) What is the Accounting entry when you do PGR with Movement type 651?

) What is the Accounting entry when you create Return Invoice?

) Where is the control that for Return Invoice accounting entry is Revenue A/c Dr.

To

Customer A/c Cr.

) Can I increase the quantity in Return order more than Invoice quantity? (Yes)

) Will return order updates in Credit Management or not?

) Which transaction of Return Process updates into credit management?

) Can I Explode free Goods in Returns? (NO)

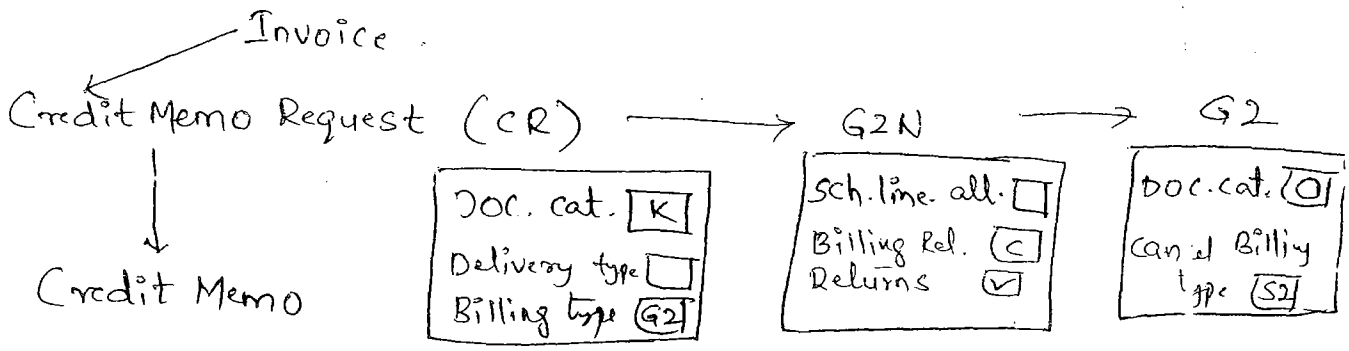
have to ~~R~~ Create Return order with reference to order. And in copy controls Uncheck Reexplode / Free Goods. If you have Free Goods and if customer Returns the goods and we create Return order with reference to Order so that the free Goods will copied from order to Return order.

(18) In Return Process I want to determine Return storage Location automatically. How to do this? (User Exits).

(19) My client's requirement is basing on the type of Returns Some times they take the stock into Return stock, Some times QI Stock, Some times Blocked stock and Some times Unrestricted stock. How to do this Automatically? (Enhancements & User Exits)

Credit Memo Request :

Class (110) 17/08/14.



* We do credit Memo Request if you want to Deduct th. amount from Customer's Outstanding.

RUSH ORDER

Class (III) 18/08/14.

* Rush order is a Immediate delivery order. Whenever Customer ants Delivery immediately then we create Rush order.

Rush order

↓

Delivery (Automatically in the background).

↓

Invoice

= In document type RO we maintain immediate delivery as 'X' or 'A'. Immediate delivery field will help to create delivery automat cally in the background. We maintain here 'X' or 'A'. 'X' means if tock is confirmed then only system will create automatic delivery. 'A' means irrespective of stock confirmation system will create elivery automatically.

RO ⟶ TAN ⟶ CP

Immediate Delivery 'X' or 'A'.

shipping conditions '10'.

hipping conditions: For RO we maintain shipping conditions as 10. Shipping conditions '10' will help to determine immediate shipping oint. The reason for determine immediate shipping point is we do t maintain pick pack time and Loading time in Immediate ipping point.

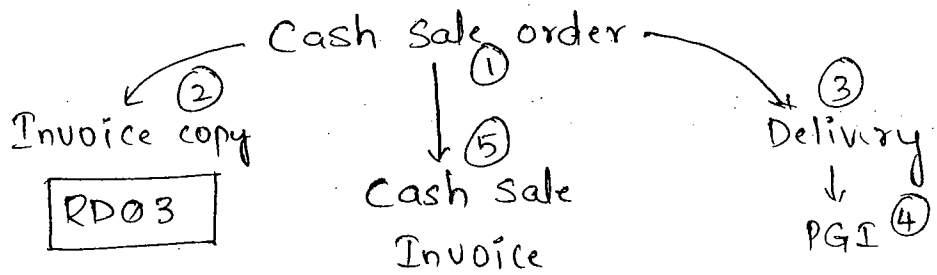
CASH SALES (Counter Sale).

Normally we do not have cash sale process in manufacturing dustries but some companies like Sony and coromandal rtilizers, they may have cash sale process because these companies ill have their own outlet.

Customer will walk into outlet and pick the material go to the

along with the goods. The counter person will create only order in front of customer, then system automatically creates delivery in the background and in order itself we take invoice copy and give it to customer.

* When customer is free then they process P.G.I and Invoice



* When you create cash sale invoice system generates accounting document and the accounting entry is Cash Settlement a/c Dr
to
Revenue a/c Cr.

Immediate Delivery 'X' or 'A'
Shipping conditions 10
Delivery type BV
Billing type BV

Billing Relevance [B]
☐ credit active

Cash settlement procedure [KOFIAC]
Cash Account Key [EVV]

Q: How system Determines G/L account for cash Settlement Account?

A: With the help of cash settlement procedure KOFIAC or with the help of cash a/c Key EVV.

Cash Sales Questions:

1. In cash sale process where we take invoice copy?
2. In cash sales process why we maintain shipping conditions?
3. In cash sale process what is the reason for determining Immediate shipping point?
4. What is the accounting entry when we create cash sale

(5) In cash sale process why SAP says cash sale Invoice should be created with reference to order?

* Cash Sale Process is not relevant for Credit Management.

Class (112) 21/08/14.

FREE OF CHARGE (SAMPLE PROCESS)

* Delivering the goods to customers without charging.

Free of charge (FD) → DOC. cat. [I]
Billing type —

↓

Delivery

↓

Proforma Invoice

Billing Relevance —
Pricing —
☐ credit Active

SUBSEQUENT DELIVERY FREE OF CHARGE

* Requirement of goods, whenever customer returns the goods, nstead of deducting the amount from customer's outstanding we eplace the goods to customers. Subsequent delivery free of charge hould be always created with reference to Return order.

Return Order

Mandatory ↙ ↓

Subsequent Delivery free of charge (SDF) — Return Delivery

↓

Delivery

↓

Proforma Invoice

If you want to create SDF with reference to return order then go , return order and mention reason for rejection for that line item. why SAP says in SDF Process you need to assign reason for

A: ① If you assign reason for rejection and if you do SDF then System will not allow to create return Invoice.

② If you already created return Invoice then system will not allow to assign reason for rejection and without reason for rejection we can not create SDF.

QUANTITY CONTRACT

* It is an Agreement between company and the Customer for supplying the goods of a particular quantity with in a specific validity Period
* Every agreement should have mutual benifits have and here benifits to Customer is discounts or Less price and the benifit to company is assured sales.

Quantity contract
↓
Release order
↓
Delivery
↓
Invoice.

* Any order if you create with reference to contract then we call it as Release order.
* In Quantity contract if customer returns the goods then we create return order with reference to contract.
* For QC to RE the positive/negative quantity is "–".
* The effect of –ve quantity is when you create return order with reference to contract the return order quantity will be added to the open quantity of the contract.
* When you create return order with reference to contract System will copy the Closed Quantity.

VALUE CONTRACT GENERAL

* It is an agreement between company and the customer for supply ing the goods of a particular value within a specific validity eriod.

* Value contract general is not specific to one material it is for roup of Materials. To group the materials for value contract we reate Assortment Module.

The T.code is to create Assortment module is **WSV2**.

Ex: Go to WSV2 or path is easy access → Logistics → Sales and istribution → Master data → Products → Value contract ssortment Module.

Go to WSV2 → press enter → enter materials and Save it. And it will propose Some number. ex: 100218

VA41 → WK1, G100, G1, G1

Target value	Assortment Module
ex: 20,000	100218

Value contract General (WK1)
↓ Assortment Module
Release order
↓
Delivery
↓
Invoice.

- To create value contract general first create ssortment module and assign Assortment Module to value contract eneral. Assortment Module consists of group of materials while creating alue contract general document system will copy Dummy material rom Item category.

- Go to VOV7 → WKN → Assign material in value contract material nd save it.

When you save the WK1 go to or create order and with reference o WK1.

Value contract Material Specific:

* It is an Agreement between company and the Customer for supplying the goods of a particular value within a specific validity Period. This contract is specific to one material.

Value contract material specific (WK2)

↓

Release order

↓

Delivery

↓

Invoice.

SCHEDULING AGREEMENT

* It is an Agreement between company and the customer for Supplying the goods of a particular quantity within a specific validity Period and with predefined Delivery date.

Scheduling Agreement (DS)

30.08.2014
10.09.2014

↓

Delivery

↓

Invoice

Process: VA31 → DS → enter validity Period.

Vaxine1500, 1000 Qty then go to schedule line dates

Dates	Qty
30.08.14	100
10.09.14	200

CONSIGNMENT PROCESS

Class (113) 22/08/14.

* Dumping the stock at customers place and Keeping ownership with the company. If our customer sell the goods to their customers then we raise Invoice to our Customer. and we transferred the ownership to our customers.

* For slow moving items and newly launched products we do consignment process because customers will not show interest to purchase slow moving items or newly launched products. Consignment process is one of the push strategy to push the product into the market.

* Whenever we launch new products then management decides to send the goods on consignment basis, then company will inform the same to the customers. Some customers may accept and some customers may not accept. If customer accepts then we do consignment process.

* The benifit to customer in consignment process is

1) Customer will make the payment when he sell the Goods to their customers.

2) Customer will get discounts or Less price on consignment.

Consignment process is further classified into Four types.

1) Consignment fill up (2) consignment Issue.

3) Consignment Returns (4) consignment Pick up.

* If Customer accepts to take the goods on consignment basis then we start first process. i.e., consignment fill up.

Consignment Fillup is dumping the stock at customers place and keeping ownership with the company and without raising Invoice.

CONSIGNMENT FILLUP

Alkem

x = 10,000
7,000
3,000

Consignment Fillup (CF) → KBN → E1

7,000

Movement type 631

* When you do Delivery in consignment fillup system considers the movement type as 631. The effect of of 631 movement type in

① Stock will be reduced from Unrestricted stock and stock will be added to consignment stock.

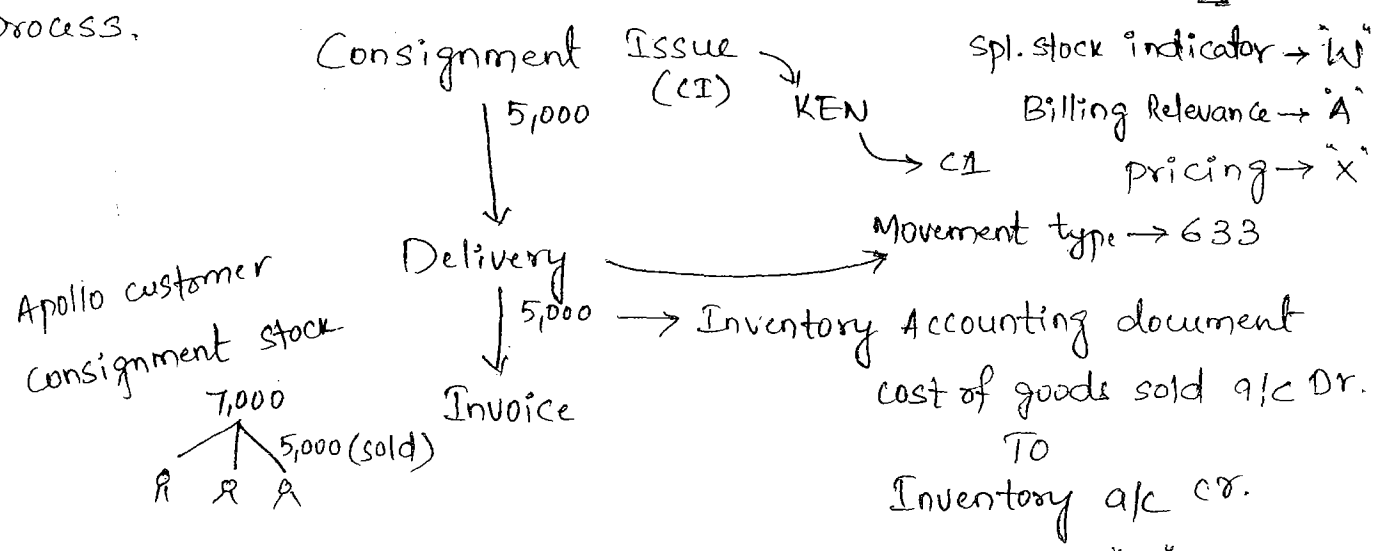
② Inventory Accounting document will not generate.

Because we are not transffering the ownership to the customer.

* Consignment Fill up process is not Relevant for ~~Pricing~~ Invoice.
if you want you can create proforma invoice (only)

CONSIGNMENT ISSUE

* When our customer sell the goods to their customers then our customers will inform the Same to company then we do Consignment issue process.



* for KEN item category we have special stock indicator 'W'. Special Stock indicator 'W' controls that when you do Delivery in consignment issue ~~stock~~ system considers from consignment stock.

* The effect of 633 movement type is

① Stock will be reduced from consignment stock.

② Inventory Accounting document ~~and~~ generates. because we are transffering the ownership to our customer. consignment issue is relevant for Invoice.

we raise invoice to our customers

cost of goods sold a/c Dr

Q: Why we are doing Delivery in consignment Issue as we already delivered the goods to customers in consignment fillup?

A: To Reduce the stock from consignment stock.

& To transfer the ownership i.e., to generate inventory accounting document.

CONSIGNMENT RETURNS

& When end customer return the goods to our customer then our customer will inform the same to company then we do consignment Returns.

Consignment Returns (CONR) → KEN → DO

Return Invoice

Return Delivery

Movement type 634

Special Stock Indicator "W"

we do return delivery and return invoice with ref. SC Bldg

Apollo customer consignment stock

7,000
- 5,000
2,000
+500
2,500

500 Return

R R

- The special stock Indicator "W" in KRN item category controls that when you do return delivery in consignment returns system considers only consignment stock.

when you do return delivery stock will be added to consignment stock

: The effect of 634 movement type is

) stock will be added to consignment stock.

) Inventory accounting document generates and the accounting entry is

because we are taking back the ownership

Inventory a/c Dr.
TO
Cost of goods sold a/c Cr.

Q: Why we are doing Return Delivery in consignment Returns even though we are not taking the goods back?

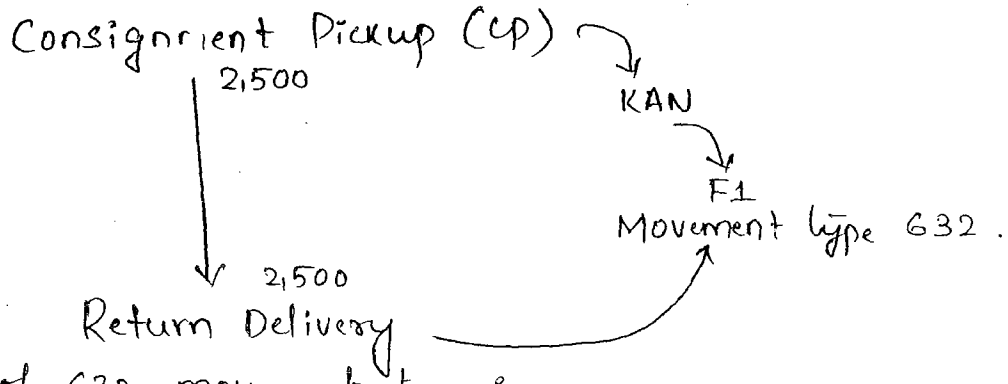
A: ① To add the stock to consignment stock.

② To take back the ownership.

* Consignment Returns process is Relevant for Return Invoice.

CONSIGNMENT PICK UP

* When our Customer requests to take back the consignment goods then we do consignment Pick up.



* The effect of 632 movement type is

① Stock will be reduced from consignment stock will be added to Unrestricted stock.

② Inventory Accounting document will not generate.

* Consignment Pick up is not Relevant for Invoice.

Q: Which process of consignment is not Relevant for Invoic

A: consignment fill up and consignment Returns.

Questions on consignment:

① What Scenarios client will do consignment process?

② Explain consignment Process?

③ In consignment process which process is Relevant for Billing?

5) What is the schedule line category for consignment fill up?

6) Why we are creating Delivery in consignment Issue as we have already delivered the goods to customer in C.F.?

7) What is the purpose of special stock indicator 'W' in C.F.?

8) Why Inventory accounting document will not generate in C.F.?

9) In consignment Issue to whom we create Invoice?

10) Why we are doing return Delivery in consignment returns every though we are not taking the goods?

11) In which process of consignment, system will not perform Availability check?

12) Why CONR is not relevant for Availability check?

13) which process of consignment is relevant for Credit management? Consignment Issue.

14) which process of consignment is relevant for excise invoice? Consignment fill up.

CI, CONR } special stock indicator

Process consignment:

* Create one material ex: aa1 (consignment).

Maintain the stock (MBIC) → aa1 → 10,000 Qty

the price (VK11) → aa1 → 10,000 Rs.

Go to Va01 → CF.

mat.	order quantity	
aa1	7,000	Save it.

* Create Delivery.

aa1 → 7,000 → 7,000 → PGI.
OQ. PQ.

* Create Invoice (proforma).

* When our customer sell the goods to their customers we do CI

* Create order VA01 → CI

aa1 5,000 Save it.

* Create Delivery

aa1 4,500 5,000 (PGI)

* Create Invoice. Go to VL02N and check whether Inventory accounting doc. generate or not.

* Go to MMBE and check the stock.

out of 5000 end customers returns 500 Qty then we do CONR.

Create order → VA01 CONR.

enter order reason remove billing block.

aa1 500 Save it.

* Create Return Delivery VL01N.

aa1 G3 PGR.

* Create Invoice, save it and check the stock in MMBE.

* When our customer return the goods to

Create order (CP)

aa1 2500 Save it.

* Create Delivery PGR

* Not relevant to Invoice.

* Go and check the stock in MMBE.

condition type. manually in to sales document. some rare scenarios they want to change base price with out distributing (ARD00) condition type)

How to give the solution to the client.

A remove from and to. ~~enter (ARD00)~~ copy ARD00 and new maintain (ARD00)

Q. there is a condition type which is standard but still I want to post it in to some GRC accounts. where is the control.

A condition class 'C' class with account ERU.

Q there is condition type which is standard and if you assign account key. what happens.?

A it will not be posted in to accounts.

Q Third party process: customer will place order to company. when we create sales order. system generates PR. the PR will be converted to PO. PO will be sent to vendor. vendor directly delivery the goods to customer. vendor will raise invoice to company (MIRO) we raise invoice to customer.

Q when you save order in TPT system generates PR we can see in Schedul line tab

(Core) Tolerance limits

MIRO 1000 - PC
copy

Steps: tolerance limits for PP - double click on error - and define set tolerance limits - select 1000 - PP - automatic copy - maintain CC

THIRD PARTY BUSINESS PROCESS

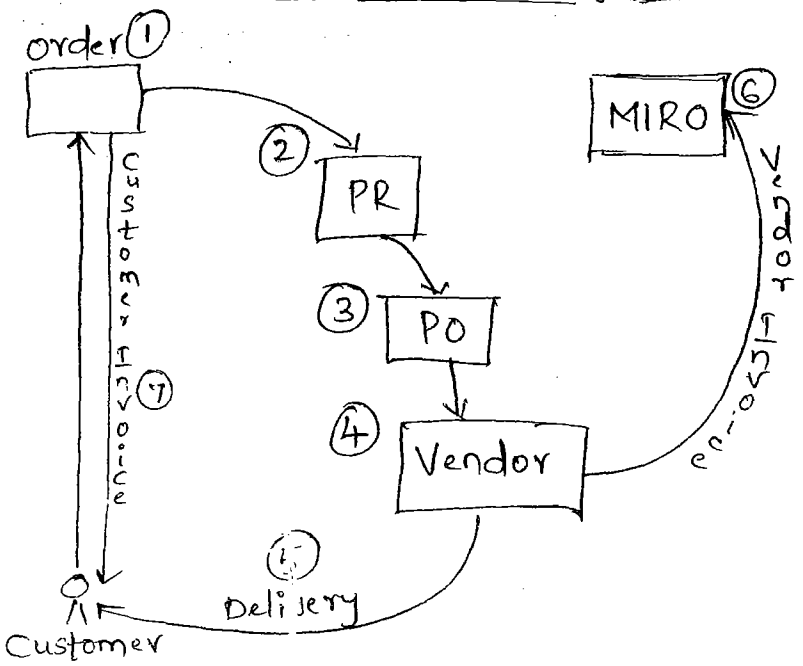
Class (115) 25/08/14

* The below Scenarios we do third Party Process.

(1) We do not manufacture the Product but we sell it to Customer

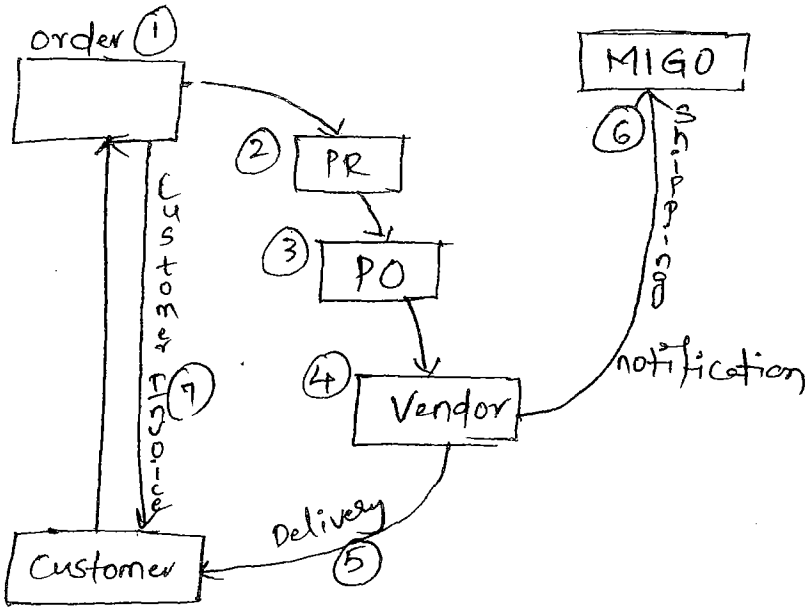
(2) If stock is not available.

Third Party without shipping Notification (Standard):



* We use this Process if Vendor raising Invoice to company at the time of Delivery to Custmer

Third Party with shipping Notification:



* We use this Process if customer is not raising (Delivery challen Invoice at the time of Delivery but he will send notification about the Delivery.

Configuration for Third Party without Shipping Notification:

1) For any third party material maintain material master Item category Group field as BANS and maintain purchase group in purchase group. (001)

2) If category Group is BANS then System determines item category as TAS.

OR
BANS
—
—
TAS.

1) Billing Relevance F. and it controls that without MIRO system will not allow to create Invoice to Customer.

2) ☐ Create PO automatic. (If you want you can check).

3) If item category is TAS then system determines Schedule line category as CS.

TAS
—
CS

1) Order type NB
2) Item category 5
3) Account Assignment Group 1

- Order type NB will help to generate Purchase Requisition automatically in the Background.

- Item category: Like Sales documents MM documents will also require item category. Without Item category system will not allow to create Purchase Requisition. But while creating PR manually user will enter item category manually. But in third Party process system generating Purchase Requisition automatically in the Background, so we are copying the Item Category information from schedule line category to Purchase Requisition.

Item category 5: Item category 5 controls that even if you do MIGO in third Party with shipping notification system will treat it

Account Assignment Category [1] : It controls that even if you do MIGO in third party with Shipping Notification System will not generate Inventory Accounting document.

(4) In Copy Controls OR F2 (VTFA) maintain the below (TAS)

1) copy Requirement as [012]. 2) Billing Quantity [F]

* Copy Requirement [012] controls that without MIRO system will not allow to create Invoice to customer.

* Billing Quantity [F] controls that it will copy the Quantity from MIRO to Invoice.

Creating Purchase Organization:

Q: Why we Require Schedule line category in third party process even though we do not have Delivery?

A: To create Purchase Requisition. If you do not have schedule line category then you will not have order type NB, if there is no order type NB we can not generate PR

P.O. Regular

Some basic configurations:

Path: Spro → Enterprise Structure → Definition → Materials Management → Maintain Purchase organization.

(*) Go to new entries and define your own.

ZPUR → Purchase Organization.

(2) Assign Purchase organization to company code.

* Spro → Enterprise Structure → Assignment → Materials Management → Assign Purchase organization to company code.

P.org.	CO.code
ZPUR	ZALK

(3) Assign Purchase organization to plant.

* Go to new entries [illegible] P.org. Plant

4) Go to the T.code OBBG and assign Tax Procedure TAXD to country IN.

country	Tax. Proc.
IN	TAXD

5) Create Vendor.

* The T.code to Create Vendor is **XK01**.

Vendor — TVEN (Something)

Company code — ZALK

Purchase Org. — ZPUR

Account Group — 0001

* And mention all mandatory fields.

Reconcillation Account — 1,60,000

Cash Management — A1 (Domestic)

Currency — INR.

6) Create a Material and maintain item category group as BANS.

* T.code MM01.

* In Material Master go to Purchasing View and maintain Purchasing Group (Mandatory)

7) Create Tax Code.

* The T.code to create Tax code is **FTXP**.

* Country — IN

Tax code — TT — INPUT TAX

TAX TYPE — V

Input Tax — 4%

* And save it.

* You can see Purchase Requisition in Schedule line. — , quote OR
* T. code to create Purchase order is **ME21N**
* The T. code for MIRO is **MIRO**.

ME52N — See PR
53

Class (116) 26/08/14

* After saving the Sales order you will get purchas Requisition generated. It will be in Item data schedule lines Tab.
* Copy the PR number and create Purchase order number,
* The T. code to create PO is **ME21N**.
* Mention the Vendor — TTTVEN.
  Purchase. org. — ZPUR
  Purchase Group — ~~[illegible]~~ 0001
  Company code — Zalk

* "Uncheck 'Goods Receipt' field in Delivery Tab & maintain 'Tax code' in Invoice Tab in Line item data."

* In Item level mention PR Number — 10015383.
* Press enter then the data will be copied from PR to PO. go 90
* Enter the Price and save it.
  Net Price — 6,000.

MIRO credit

* We create MIRO with Reference to Purchase order. MIRO means Invoice verification. ~~[illegible]~~ incoming Invoice.

Invoice Verification or Vendor Invoice → **MIRO** T code

* Mention company code → ZALK.
* Mention the Invoice date → 26.08.2014
* Mention PO Number → 4500017527
* And Press enter.

transaction as – invoice
po reference – PO number
– enter Basline date
– select item – click on – calculate Tax – go to basic data – mention same amount

* While creating PO go to Invoice Tab and mention the Tax code
  Tax code – TT. — same in after MIRO

Same MIRO after Invoice

* And go to Delivery Tab and Uncheck Goods Receipt check box.

* In MIRO mention Base line date in Payment Tab and Keep only your Tax code and check calculate Tax ☑.

* Go to Basic date and enter the Same amount as system showing then it will become Zero. And Save it. click on messages to see the errors.

: MIRO → 5105609202 created.

: Then Create Invoice to Customer.

* While doing MIRO you will get Some errors related to Tables.

→ Table 169P not maintained.

* Then go to SE16N and mention the Table — T169P.

: Go to T-code bar and mention /SAP_EDIT press enter you will get message then click on Execute.

: You better go to SM30 and mention Table name and click on maintain. Then Select the Standard company code copy and mention your company code and save.

*

For Vendor Sold to Party is Company and ship to Party is Customer in Third party process. Vendor will raise proforma invoice along with Delivery challen deliver the goods to customer.

Normally Third Party Process will be used for Distribution and Dealers (mainly).

Q: In Third Party Process while creating order you may have different cost after MIRO you may have different cost. In this scenario how to determine new cost into Invoice?

: Copy control (VTFA) Pricing Type — N

* Spro → Material Management → Purchasing Class (116) 28/08/14
→ Purchase order → Set Tolerence limits for Price variance.
* The above path for error about Tolerance (PE).
* Select standard (1000 & PE) and copy and mention your company code.
* check one Scenario by creating one order for third and change the order Quantity and check the order. The order quantity will remains same but the PO Qty will be updated in confirmed Qty.

Q: After creating sales order and PO if user changes Qty in PO what happens?
A: It updates in sales order confirmed Qty.

Q: After creating sales order, PO in Third party Process if user changes the Quantity in sales order what happens?
A: System will not allow to change the Quantity. But you can enter one more line item.

* PO Quantity is always as sales order confirmed Quantity

error: The G/L account 892000 has been set as not relevent for Tax.
A: Go to FS00 and mention your G/L account (892000) and go to control data and maintain Tax category as (*, -).

Automatic Purchase Order in Third party Process: The configuration changes for creating PO automatic are

** 1) Maintain ALE data for Purchase order in Sales organizatio
* Go to your Sales org. and maintain the below. go to [SO]
SPRO → D

Purch. org — ZPUR

Vendor — ( ) (optional, vendor may vary).

Order Type — NB

Plant — ZMUM

Storage Location — ZFG1

Movement Type — 101

* And save it.

2) Go to third party item category TAS and check "create PO automatic" field. ☑

Master Data Changes for Automatic PO :

) Go to Material Master Purchasing View and check (☑) Automatic PO. (4) Go to vendor Master XK02 & check Automatic PO ☑.

2) Maintain Purchase Info Record in ME11.

: Mention Vendor — ttthird , Purch. org. — ZPUR

Material — Thirdparty

Plant — ZMUM

: Press enter and maintain plan delivery and net price

) Maintain Source List in ME01 and mention

Material — Third1

plant — ZMUM

: Press enter and mention valid from, valid to

Vendor — VVTEN

Purch. org. — ZPUR

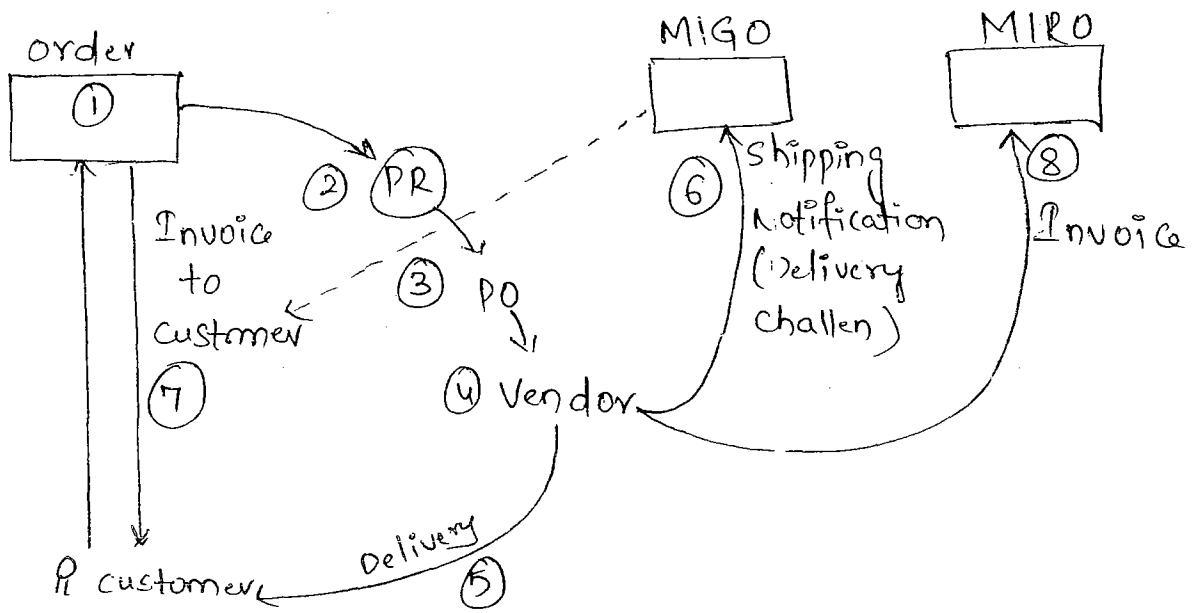
And save it.

- create sales order and if PO is not generated automatically

(MAOC) & usually order we can write PO PR number ...

** You can check the document Numbers (Sales order, Delivery, PR, PO etc) in Document Flow. Document flow

Third party with shipping Notification: We do Third party with shipping Notification if vendor is not sending Invoice immediately while delivering the Goods to customer. And with out Vendor Invoice we can not raise Invoice to customer so we ask vendor to send shipping Notification (Delivery challan) while delivering the Goods to Customer. Once we receive Shipping Notification then we do MIGO in SAP. Based on MIGO we will create Invoice to customer.



Configuration changes for Thirdparty with shipping notification

1. Go item category TAS and maintain Billing Relevance as [G].
2. Go to copy controls OR – F2 and for item category TAS maintain Billing Quantity as [E].

* Billing Relevance "G" controls that with out MIGO System will not allow to create Invoice to Customer

* Billing Quantity E in copy controls will help to copy the quantities from MIGO to Invoice while creating Invoice to Customer in Third party Process.

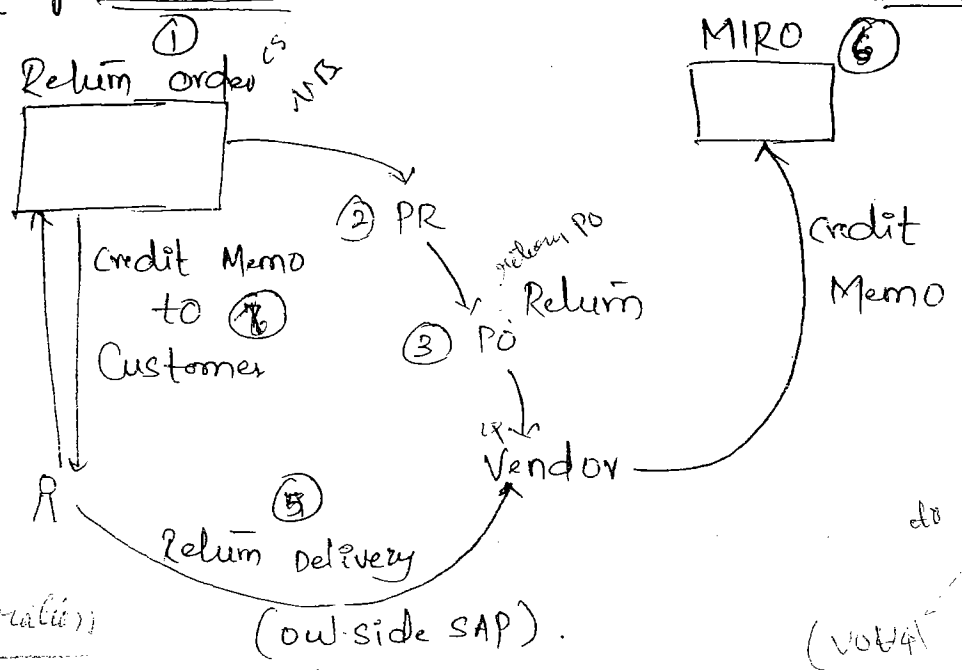
* Create one sales order and PO. And in PO check Goods Receipt ☑. And go to MIGO mention PO Number and enter and check item check in below and click on check and post.

↳ Item OK ☑

in PO ☑ GR not valuated

Third Party Returns:

Class (117) 01/08/14



Configuration

* The Item category for Third party Returns is TASG.

TASG Controls

Billing Relevance F
☑ Returns
☐ Credit Active

* Item category determines for Third party → RE BANS — — TASG

* Schedule line category for Thirdparty Returns is **CS**.

CS controls

order type	NB
Item category	5
Acct. Assgn. cat.	1

* Schedule line category determination for Thirdparty Returns (VOVS)

TASG

CS . (order to billing)

* And in copy controls RE-RE (select RGN and COPY) make it TASG for TASG maintain Billing Quantity as **F**.
  RE → Return order → Return invoice. VTFA

* In thirdparty Returns we can create credit memo to customer after recieving the credit memo from vendor.
* Create one order, Purchase order (check Returns), Invoice and Returns.
* In Return PO check Returns check box → maintain copy req 012 billing QTY as 'F'

Question on Third party.

(1) Explain Thirdparty Process? (without shipping Notification)
(2) Explain Thirdparty with with shipping Notification?
(3) What is the Difference b/w with and without shipping notification?
(4) Where is the control that in Thirdparty process system will not allow to create invoice to customer? without MIRO? (remove) billing block.
(5) Where is the control that in Thirdparty process system will create PR automatically? while creating sales order? after MIRO create credit memo to customer (invoice)

MIRO → credit memo → material PO number → Basline date → tgm → Basic data amount → scale

(6) What is the purpose of Item category 5 in CS schedule line category?

(7) What is the purpose of Account Assignment group '1' in CS schedule line category?

(8) In third party process while creating Sales order system should automatically create PO. where is the control?

(9) What is the configuration changes required b/w without shipping notification and with?

(10) In thirdparty process how the cost determines in Invoice? where is the control? ((MIRO, pricing type [N]) Pricing type [N] will redetermine only those conditions for which the condition category is [G].) → Billing QTY/'F'

i) In thirdparty process Customer places order for 100 Quantity but vendors Delivers only 70 Qty to the customer while creating invoice to Customer which Qty system copies. where is the control?

) Can I create Partial Invoices in thirdparty Process? (Yes) Based on Number of MIRO's we can create Invoice to Customer. e., No. of MIRO's = Number of Invoices to customer. This is one the recson we do with shipping notification)

) There is Material which we manufacture but if stock is not vailable then we want to Send it to Thirdparty. How will you ve solution to client?

) In thirdparty process while delivering Goods to Customer how ndor will Send Invoice to customer?

On the name of Company and consignee address as our customer.

) In thirdparty Process after creating Sales order if user is anging the Quantity in Purchase order what Happens?

A: check PO in item category [illegible]

(16) In Thirdparty process after creating PO if user is changing the Quantity in Sales order. what happens? (It will not allow).

(17) In thirdparty process we have 5 Line items and for each line item we procure from different Vendor then how many Purchase Requisitions system generates? (only one).

(18) In thirdparty process after creating Sales order and Purchase order if i enter one more line item in Sales order will it generate new PR or will it update in existing PR? (updates in Existing PR).

(19) Can I change the Quantity in PR? (NO).

Purchase Requisition T.code — ME51N

(20). what is the T.code for Change PR? — ME52N.

(21) Explain thirdparty Returns Process?

(22) Explain the configuration for Thirdparty Returns?

(22) what is the Item Category for thirdparty Returns?

(23) Eventhough we do not have delivery in thirdparty process why SAP has provided schedule line category?

Q in TPT when under delivery the goods to customer and bill invoice will raise and whome.

A. Vendor will raise proformma invoice on the name of company.

for delivery address is customer.

- for Vendor SP, SQA, BP BY is company. but ship SH is customer

Q after PO. if user is increasing the QTY in PO what happens.

A: it will update in sales orders in confirmed QTY.

(Q) in TPT after creating so and PO. system should allow to increase the QTY in SO where is the control.?

A. check DM in item category.

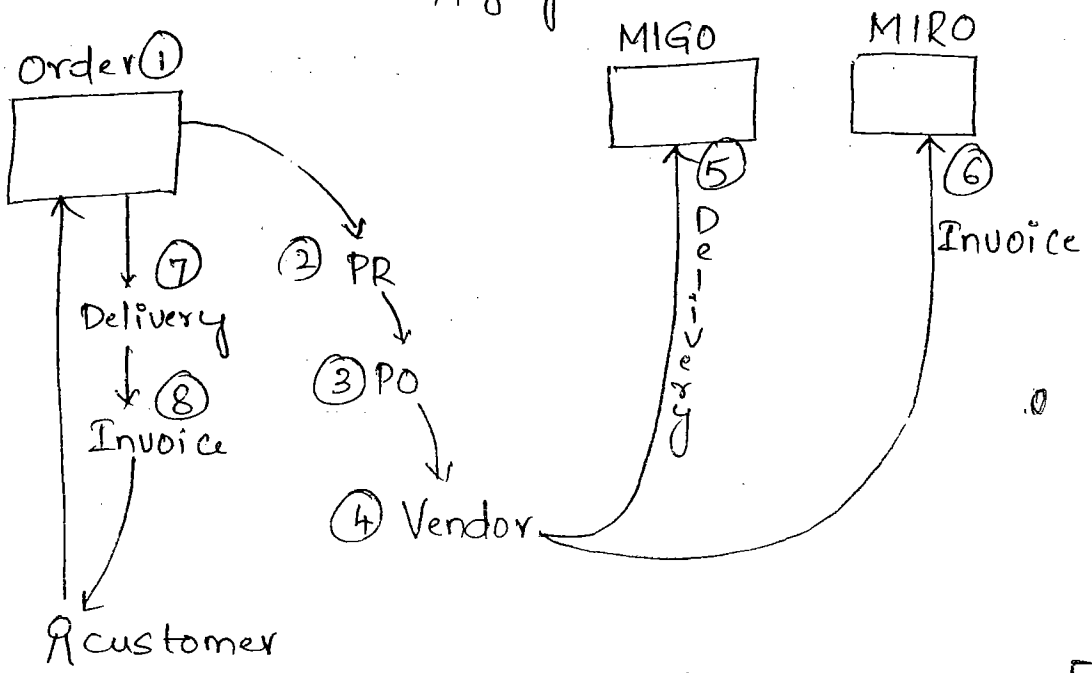
Individual Purchase Order (IPO)

Class (118) 02/08/14

* The below Scenarios we do IPO Process.

1) If Vendor is not ready to do your Packing.
(2) guest involve to love the customer.

2) For Institutional and Direct customers, if you don't want to Disclose that Vendor is Supplying the Goods.



) For IPO Material maintain Item category group as BANC.
= And select Purchasing view also for IPO Material. 001

) The Item category for IPO Material is TAB.

Item category determination → OR BANC — — TAB. → Special Stock Indicator E

☑ PO allow

· Special Stock Indicator E in Item category controls that hile doing in IPO Process system will consider Sales order tock.

Schedule line Category for IPO → CB.

CB controls → Movement Type 601

☑ Item relevant for Delivery.

Order type NB, Item category

Order type [NB]: Order type NB will help to Generate Purchase Requisition automatically while Creating Sales order in IPO process.

Item category [0]: Item category [0] controls that if you do MIGO in IPO Process system will treat it as actual MIGO and stocks will be updated.

Account Ass. cat [E]: Acct. Ass. cat [E] controls that while doing Delivery system will not generate Inventory Accounting document but the cost of Goods Sold will be directly assigned to Sales order.

Purchase Req. Delivery Schedule: We check this only for IPO. If you check this then the Delivery dates and the Quantity information will be copied from order to Purchase Requisition.

(4) The Requirement type for IPO → [KEB].

(5) The Requirement class for IPO → [KEB].

controls → Special stock [E]
Acct. Ass. cat [E]

* The Special Stock Indicator [E] in Requirement class (KEB) controls that when you do MIGO in IPO process the stock will be reserved that Particular Sales order number.

* The Acct. Assi. cat [E] in Requirement class controls that while doing in IPO Process system will not generate Inventory accounting document, but the cost will be assigned to Particular sales order Number.

* While Practising IPO maintain G/L accounts for KOFK

3) In Make to order system determines Requirement type as [E].

4) In Make to order system determines Requirement class as [040] ⟶ Special Stock [E]

Acct. Ass. category [E].

← The Special Stock Indicator "E" in "040" Requirement class controls that when you Manufacture the Finished Goods in PTC the stock will be reserved to that Particular Sales order Number.

← The Account Assignment Category "E" controls that system will not generate Inventory Accounting Document and the cost will be assigned to that Particular Sales order Number.

Practise:

) Create one Material ⟶ MTO Material.

Item category Group ⟶ 0001.

MRP3 view ⟶ Strategy Group ⟶ 20.

) Create one order and save it.

): How Requirement type determines in MTO Process?

-: Based on Strategy Group. Strategy group configuration in I.P.

Maintain Stock:

T. code ⟶ MB1C.

Movement type ⟶ 561

Special stock ⟶ E and Press enter

Sales order ⟶ 300169 Item → 10

And mention Material and Quantity.

Save it.

④ Create Delivery and Invoice.

Questions on MTO:

① Explain MTO Process?

② What is the Item category system determines for MTO Process?

③ What is the Requirement type system determines for MTO Process?

④ What is the Requirement class system determines for MTO Process?

⑤ Where is the control that when you Manufacture FG the Stock will reserved to that particular Sales order Number?

⑥ What is the Inventory Acct. document system generates is MTO process?

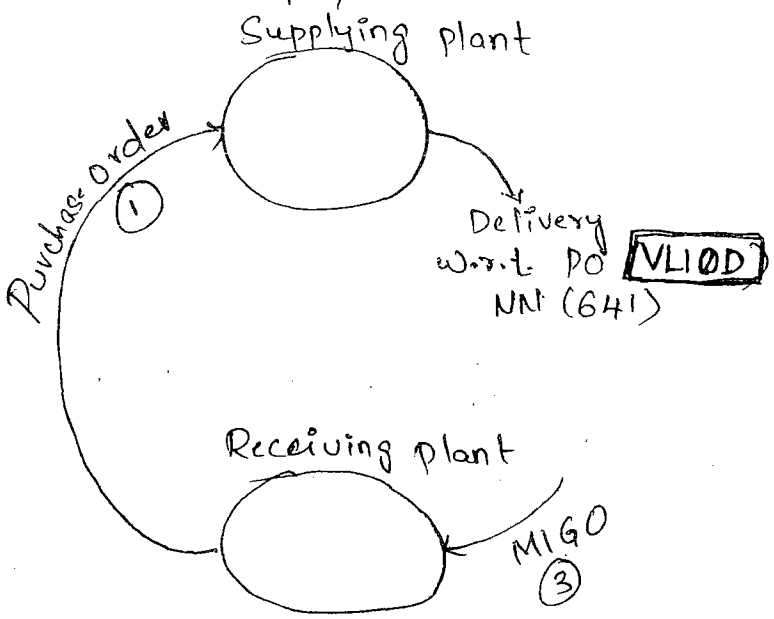
⑦ In MTO Process when system will perform Availability check?

⑧

STO (Stock Transport order)

* It is the Process of Transffering the Stock from one plant to another plant (or) Plant to Depo (or) Depo to Depo.

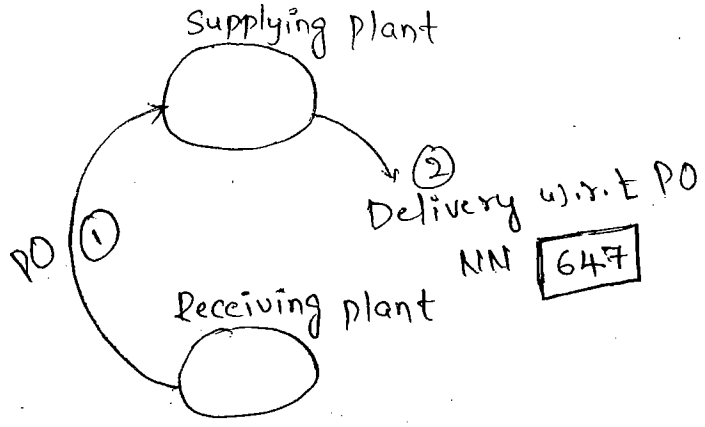
Two step process.



PO (Receiving plant)
↓
Delivery w.r.t. PO (supplying plant)
↓
Profarma Invoice
↓
MIGO (Receiving plant)

* In Two step Process when we Delivery in Supplying plant then stock will be reduced from Supplying plant and stock will be Displayed as Stock in Transit in Receiving Plant.

One step process



PO
↓
Delivery w.r.t PO
↓
Proforma Invoice.

* In One step process when we Delivery in Supplying plant the Stock will be Reduced from supplying plant and stock will be added in Receiving plant, here MIGO is not Required.

* In STO One step process system determines movement type as 647.

1) STO Purchase order type UB
2) Delivery type NL
3) Item category NLN
4) Schedule line category NN
5) Movement type Two step → 641
   One step → 647
6) Copy controls DL - NL.

- In STO process we have copy controls between DL to NL.

Q: STO process while doing Delivery with reference to PO how system is copying data from PO to Delivery?

A: With the help of copy controls DL - NL.

Configuration for STO Process:

Class (20) 04/09/14.

Supplying plant → ZMUM
Company code → ZALK
Sales organization → ZDOM
Distribution channel → Z2
Division → Z2

Receiving Plant → ZVAP
Company code → ZALK
Sales organization → ZDOM
Distribution channel → Z2
Division → Z2.

① Extend the Material to both the Plants.

* In Real time we have seperate Distributional channels.

② Create Receiving plant as customer in Supplying Sales Area.

Q: What is the need of Customer in STO Process?

A: To create Delivery.

* So create one Customer and mention supplying Point as Delivering plant. customer → 100788

③ Define Shipping data for Plant.

Path: Spro → Materials Management → Purchasing → Purchase order → set up Stock Transport order → Define shipping data for Plant.

* Go to Receiving plant and Assign the Customer and Receiving Sales Area.

Customer no. Plant → 100788
Sales org. → ZDOM
Distri. → Z2
Division → Z2

* And save it.

* The Above configuration Step will help to determine Customer in Purchase order.

* Go to Supplying Plant and Assign the Supplying Sales Area.

(4) Assign Delivery type and checking rule (same path).

* In this configuration we will assign Delivery type (NL) and checking Rule 'B' to the combination of Purchase order type 'UB' and supplying plant.

PO type	Supplying plant	Delivery type	Checking Rule
UB	ZMUM	NL	B (Delivery)

(5) Assign document type, one-step procedure, Underdelivery Tolerance. (Same path).

* In this configuration step we will assign PO type "UB" to the combination of Supplying plant and Receiving plant.

One-Step check box: If you check this then System will treat it as One-Step process and system determines movement type as 647. If you Uncheck this then system treat it as two-step process and System determines movement type as 641.

Type	Supplying plant	Receiving plant	one-step	Underdelivery Tolerance
O	ZMUM	ZVAP	☐	☑

Under Delivery Tolerance: In STO Process Over Delivery Tolerance will not work.

) Check Shipping Point Determination for Supplying Plant.

T. code → OVL2

STO is an Integration between SD and MM.

Then create one Purchase order.

PO type ⟶ UB (stock Transport ord.)

* Supplying plant → ZMUM
  Purchase organization → Porg.
  Purchasing Group → 001
  Company code → ZALK.
* Mention Supplying plant and Receiving plant.
* In STO Purchase order shipping Tab should be determined.

Q: What Scenarios shipping Tab will not determined in STO Purchase order?

A: ① If STO configuration not in place.
② If shipping point determination is not in place.
* you find all the information to create Delivery in Shipping Tab
* Save PO.

*** In STO Process the T.code to create Delivery is **VL10D**.

* Mention Receiving plant.
* Select the PO number and click on Background and click on Log for Delivery creation then Select the line and click on Documents and Select the Delivery and click on Display document.
* Then go to change mode and do Picking and PGI.
* After Delivery create Profarma Billing.

  Billing Type → F8.

* When the Goods reaches at receiving Plant we do MIGO. In STO Process MIGO is with reference to outbound Delivery.

  Ref. document → R05 (outbound Delivery)
  Delivery Number → 4100713.

* Do the same process for one-step by checking the check box in one-step procedure.

one-step ☑

* No need to do MIGO in Step-one.

Copying PO price into STO Profarma Invoice:

* Go to T.code → M/06 and check the controls of PBXX.

cond class → B

cal. type → C

cond. category → H

Item condition ☑

* Create Same condition Type in Sales with Same Controls.

T. code → V/06

condition Type → PBXX.

* Place the condition Type in New Pricing Procedure.

Pricing Procedure → BST011

Step	cond. type	Manual	Acct. Key
10	PBXX	☑	ERL

* And Save it.
* Then go to Profarma Invoice (F8) and maintain Document pricing procedure as T.
* Assign STO Pricing Procedure to the combination of Sales Area document Pricing procedure (T) and customer Pricing procedure (1).

Then go to copy controls Delivery to Invoice (VTFL) and LO NL-F8 combination and go to Item category NLN and maintain Price Source as "A".

* If you get error while creating Profarma Invoice that the Process in not relevant for Profarma Invoice.

Class (121) 05/09/14

* Then go to NL-F8 copy controls and maintain Header req. - 009, Item = 010

Creating Automatic Delivery in STO process:

Path: spro → Material Management → Purchasing → Purchase order → Set up stock Transport order → Activate automatic Delivery Creation and CRM Billing.

* Go to PO type and Supplying plant combination maintain "X" or check the Check box.

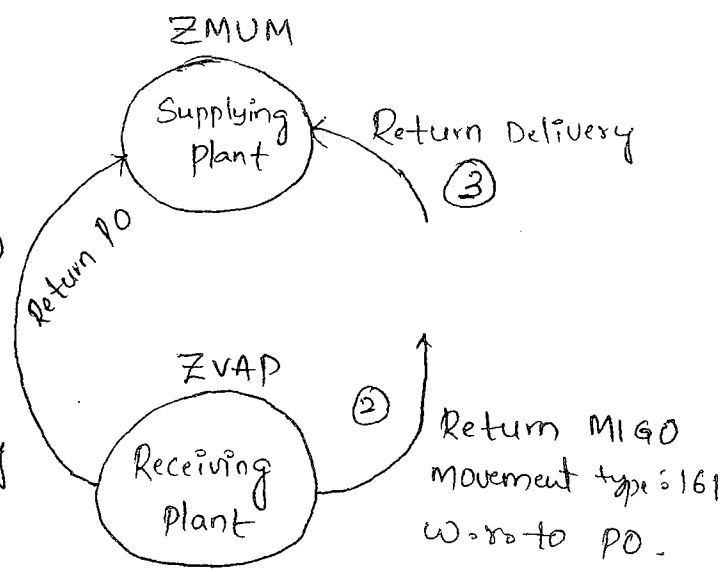
PO type	Plant	Auto. Del.
UB	ZMUM	X

* After creating purchase order go to ME22N to see the Delivery in Purchase order History Tab.

② Activate Automatic Delivery creation for PO type and shipping point.

* Maintain 'X' (check) to the combination of PO type and shipping point.

STO Returns:



Schedule line cat: NR
two step → 671
One Step → 677
when you Return Delivery

PO type = UB
Delivery type = NLR
Item category = NLRN

Copy Control → DLR - NLR
Default order type → DLR

Configuration:

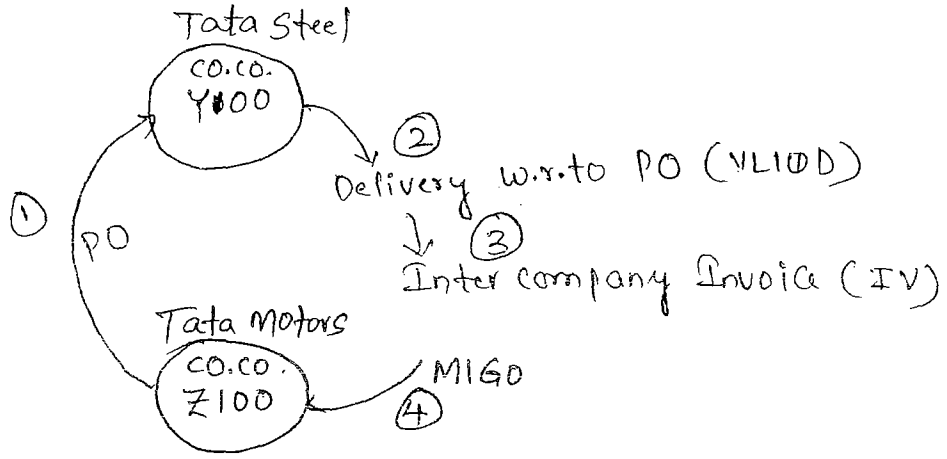
* Spro → Materials Management → Purchasing → Purchase order → Returns Order → Store Return / Return Plant to Plant.
* Go to new entries.

Category	PO type	Supplying plant	Delivery type
F	UB	ZMUM	NLR

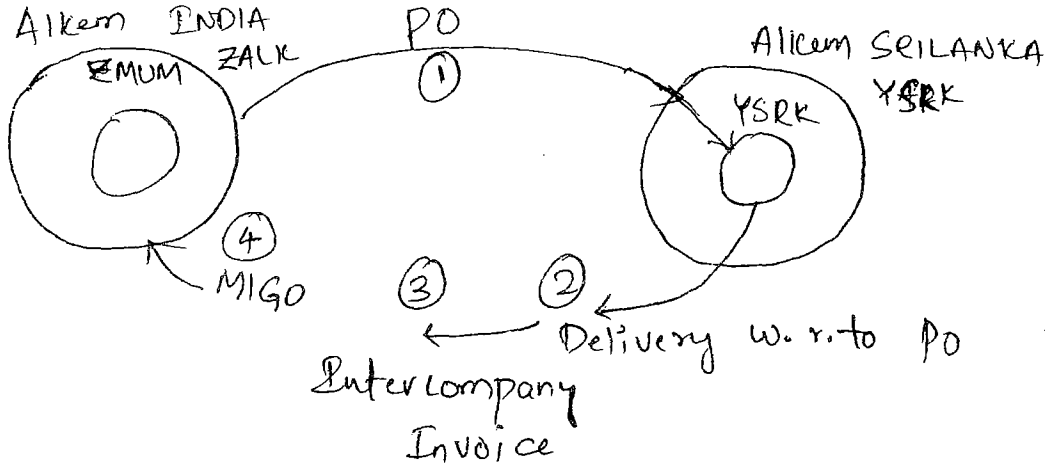
* Create Purchase order and check Returns item (must).
* Then do MIGO.
* Then create Return Delivery. (VL10D)

Inter company STO: Transffering the Stock from plant to another plant which belongs to two different company codes.

Ex: (1) Tata Motors, Tata Steel both are different company codes.



Ex: (2) Same company code but two different countries.



** If you want to do Inter company STO then both the company codes should be available in Same SAP Server. Otherwise we need to connect the Servers by using ALE.

Receiving		Supplying	
company code	: ZALK	company code	: YSRK
Sales org.	: ZDOM	Sales org	: YSRK
Distr ch	: Z2	Distr. ch	: YS
Div	: Z2	Div	: YS
plant	: ZMUM	Supplying plant	: YSRK.

configuration for Intercompany STO:

Step ①: Extend the material to both the plants.

Ex: Create material, Ex: ZALK, ZDOM, Z2, Z2 to YSRK, YSRK, YS, YS.

Step ②: Create Receiving plant as customer in Supplying plant, Sales Area.

company code → YSRK
Sales org. → YSRK
Distribution ch. → YS
Division → YS.

Step ③: Create Supplying company as Vendor in receiving company code and receiving purchase organization.

Ex: TTTVEN1
company → ZALK
P. org → ZPUR
Purchasing group → 0007 (plants) enter.

Name: YSRK → Srilanka Allcem enter.

* In Vendor master control data assign customer number

Reconciliation Account → 1,60,000

Cash Management group → A1 Currency → INR

In Purchasing data go to extras → additional purchasing data maintain supplying plant.

Ex: YSRK and save it.

Step ④: Define shipping data for plants.

* spro → Materials Management → Purchasing → PO → Setup stock transport order → Define shipping data for plants.
* In this configuration step go to receiving plant. and assign the customer number and receiving sales Area.
* Save it.
* Go to shipping plant and assign only supplying sales Area.

Assign Delivery type and checking Rule:

P.O. type → NB

Delivery type → NLCC

Item category → NLC

Schedule line category → NC

Movement type two step → 643

one step → 645

Inter company Billing type → IV

DL – NLCC.

* In this configuration step we will assign Delivery type 'NLCC', checking Rule 'B' to the combination of purchase order type 'NB' and supplying plant.

NB YSRK NLCC B.

ssign document type one step procedure under delivery

olerence: In this configuration step we will assign Purchase order type NB to the combination of supplying plant and

* Go to the billing type IV → VOFA.

VOFA → Doc. pricing Procedure [N].

* Assign Intercompany pricing procedure ICAA01 to the combinatio of supplying Sales Area, document pricing procedure [N] and Customer Pricing Procedure [1].

* Go to OVKK → YSRK
YS
YS
N
01 enter.

* V/06 → IV01 → copy → TV01 → Ref. cond. type TI01.
PI01 → copy → TI01.

Go to V/08 and go to new entries.

Step	cond. type	Requirement	Account Key
10	PR00	2	ERL
20	TV01	22	ERL

and Save it.

* Go to OVKK

YSRK YS YS N TCAA01 TV01.

* Maintain condition Records for PI01.

VK11 → TI01

S.org → YSRK

Plant → YSRK

TTSTO 7,000 and Save it.

* VK11 → PR00

S.org → YSRK, YS

TTSTO - 10,000 and Save it.

* Go to MBIC → 561 YSRK, YSRK, TTSTO → 1000 Qty Save it.

Practise: Create PO ME21N → TTVEN1

PBXX – base Price – 7,000.

* Create Delivery → VL10D.

YSRK and execute.

* And normal process like STO VI01 MIGO with ref. outbound delivery.

item OK ☑, check, post.

INTERCOMPANY STO RETURNS

PO type → NB

Delivery type → NCR

Item category → NCRN

Schedule line category → NS

Movement type two ~~spo~~ step → 673

one step → 675.

Intercompany credit memo → IG.

DLR – NCR.

Configuration: Spro → Material Management → Pure → PO →

returns order returns to vendor.

- Assign Delivery type → NCR and go to new entries.

F NB YSRK NCR.

Store Return / Return plant to plant:

* Go to new entries.

F NB YSRK NCR

- Create ME21N → check returns and save Process.

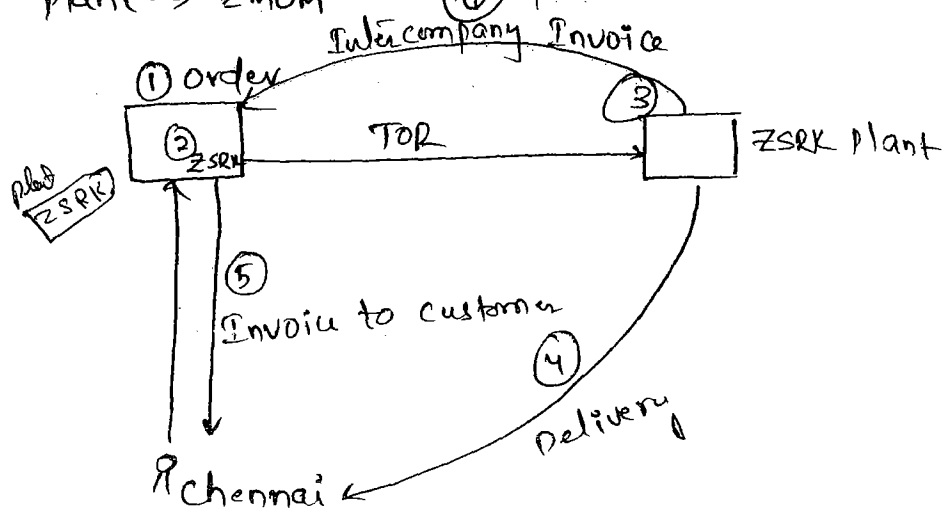
MIGO → Return Delivery (VL10D) → YSRK execute [U]

Background.

Intercompany Sales

class (123) 08/09/14

Ordering company	Delivering company
co. code → ZALK	co. code → ZSRK
S.org → ZDOM	S.org → ZSRK
Distri → Z2	Distri. → ZS
Div. → Z2	Div. → ZS
Plant → ZMUM	Plant → ZSRK



Configuration for Intercompany Sales or Billing:

Step (1): Assign Delivery plant to Ordering Sales organization and distribution channel.

* Spro → Enterprise Structure → Assignment → Sales and distribution → Assign Sales org, Distribution channel to plant.

Step (2): Create Ordering company as customer in Delivering Company ~~and~~ in Delivering company sales Area.

(E) extended the material

* XD01 → enter Delivering Company and sales Area and press enter and mention Delivering plant as Delivering company plant.

Q: Why we create Ordering company as customer in Delivering Company?

A: To create Intercompany Invoice.

Step③: Spro → Sales and distribution → Billing → Intercompany Billing → Define order types for Intercompany Billing.

* Go to the order type OR and assign Intercompany Billing type 'IV'.

Step④: Assign organizational units by Plant. (Same path)

* Double click on assign organizational units to the plant.
* Assign Delivering plant to Delivering sales Area and ordering plant to ordering sales Area.

Step⑤: Define Internal Customer number by Sales organization.

* Go to the ordering sales organization and assign the Inter company Customer Number.

ZDOM → 100790

* In Intercompany Process we have two condition types.

① PI01 and ② IV01.

for IV01 (Invoice) we will maintain Reference condition type as PI01 (order)

* In Intercompany Process while creating Sales order system determines PI01 condition type. And while creating Inter company Invoice system determines IV01 condition type.

Place PI01 condition type in Ordering pricing Procedure. OVKK

Step	Con. type	Statistical	Subtotal	Requirement
280	PI01	☑	B	22

- Requirement (22) checks that ordering company and delivering company should be different.

* Go to Intercompany Pricing procedure and place IV01 con. type.

Step	cond. type	Requirement	Account Key
20	IV01	22	ERL

* Maintain Condition Records for PI01.

Sales org. of order → ZDOM

plant → YSRK

Material	Amount	unit
TTSTO	6000	INR

* But before Extend the Material to both the plants.
* Create Sales order, normal customer.
* change the plant in Sales order to (YSRK).
* Create Invoice to customer (VF01).
* Then go to (VF04) and check Intercompany billing ☑ to create Intercompany Invoice.
* Select the Delivery and click on Intercompany.

standard pricing procedure for intercompany ICWA01

VOFA pricing procedure

VF04 collective billing

Intercompany invoice

Report ex: Input Parameters

S.org → VBAK-VKORG
plant → VBAP – WERKS
Sales office → VBAK – VKBUR
Customer → VBAK – KUNNR
Material → VBAP – MATNR.

Output Parameters

order no:	Item NO:	Material	Quantity	Value
VBAK-VBELN	VBAP-POSNR	VBAP-MATNR	VBAP-KUMENO	VBAP-NETWR

I want to know the open Sales orders.
go to VBUP table
check VBUP – GBSTA = A.

* The T.code to see the field names of a Table is **SE11**.
* The T.code to see the Table entries is **SE16N**

Consultants Role in Z-Reports:

* Consultant has to collect information from core users related to ZReports (input parameters, output parameters and which should data should be displayed), which means → Logic. After collecting the information we will prepare F.S. In F.S we will mention technical names of input parameters and technical names of output parameters. And we will also mention the Logic and send this F.S. to ABAPER. Then ABAPER will develop ZReports and assign a T.code and send it back to Functional consultant. Then Functional consultant will do Testing. If every thing if fine then we ask core user to test it After Testing if everything is fine then core user will give UAT sign off. After UAT sign off we transport the report to

CIN

ALE

PROJECT

25/4/15

CIN (COUNTRY INDIA VERSION)

- CIN is applicable only for Indian clients. Because in India we have complecated taxes.
- the complecated taxes are
  1. Excise Duties
  2. Sales Tax
  3. Service tax
  4. TCS (Tax collected at Source)

1. Excise Duties :-

- It is the duty which is levied on the goods which we manufacture.
- In excise Duties we have
  - (i) BED (Basic Excise Duty)
  - (ii) ECS (Education Cess)
  - (iii) SECS (Secundary Education Cess)
- these 3 duties are default duties. (If the client is manufacturer they will have to charge these.
- we also have (iv) AED (Additional Excise Duty)
  - (v) SED (Special Excise Duty).
- Tobacco related and beverages industries will have AED and SED.
- And these two duties are not for all industries or default duties.
- Actually the product ~~we~~ ~~man~~ is liable for excise at the movement we manufacture. But for our convinent purpose we are charging excise at the time of delivery.

Sales Tax :-

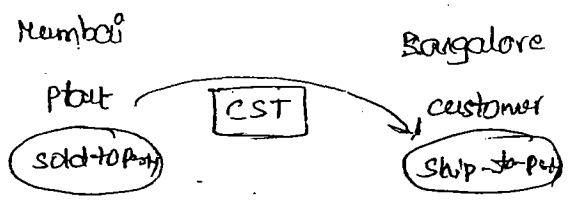
- It is the tax which is levied whenever a sales transaction takes place.
- In sales Tax we have (i) CST (Central Sales tax)
  (ii) VAT (Value Added tax)

(i) CST will comes into picture if the sales transaction is in between two states.

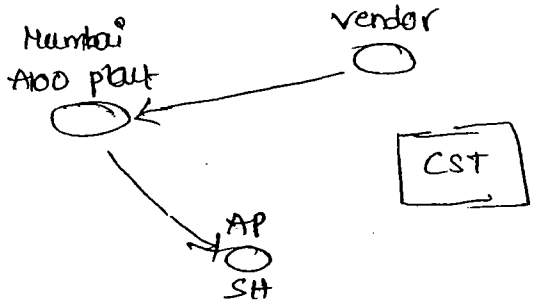
(ii) VAT comes into picture if the sales transaction is within the state.

- Here comparison is between Delivering plant and ship-to-party.

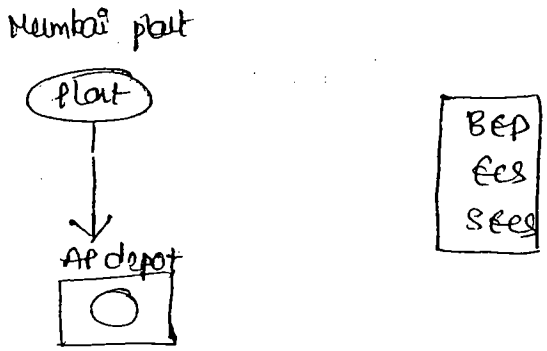
eg①:



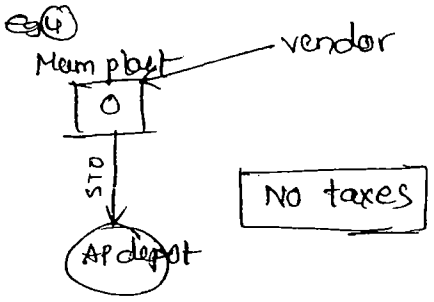
eg②:



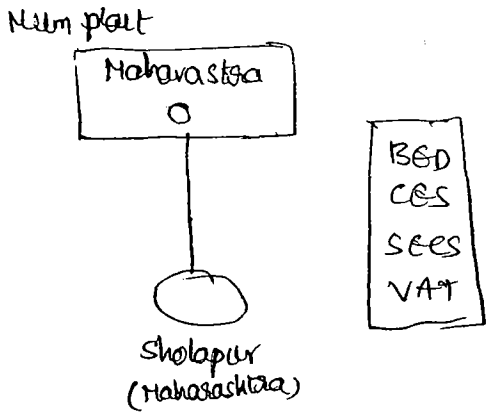
eg③.



eg(4)



eg(5)



3. Service Tax :-

- It is the tax which is levied whenever a service transaction takes place.
- we have (i) Service tax
  (ii) EES on Service Tax
  (iii) SEES on Service Tax

4. TCS :- (Tax collected at source)

- It comes into picture when you sell Scrap. It is 1% + 1% on net + Excise

EXCISE RATES :-

(1) BED : 12%
(2) EES : 2% on (12% BED)
(3) SECS : 1% on (12% BED).

Business process in excise :-

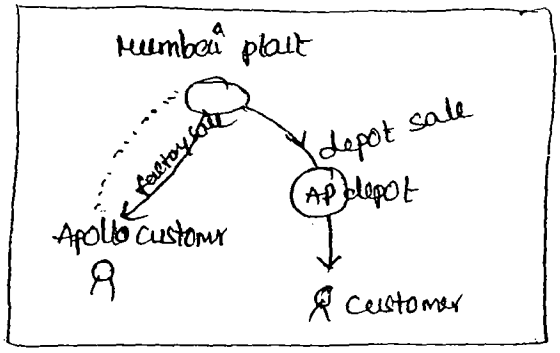
(1) factory sale :-

- selling the goods to customers directly from manufacturing plant.

process :-

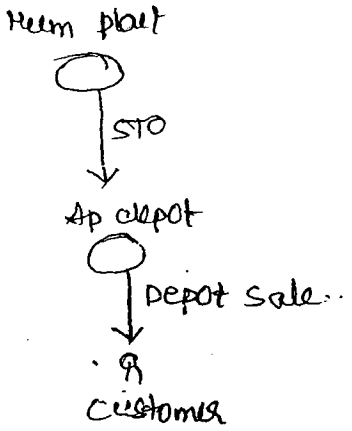
OR
↓
Delivery
↓
Invoice
↓
Excise Invoice.

- The t-code for Exerse Invoice - J1IIN



(i) Depot sale:-

- selling the goods to customers from depot.



depot sales process:-

STO

PO
↓
Delivery w.r.to PO (VL10D)
↓
Proforma Invoice
↓
Exerse Invoice.

DEPOT TO SALES

MIGO (when goods reaches at depot they do MIGO (Goods receipt)
↓
J1IG (capturing exerse at depot)

Depot to customer

OR
↓
Delivery → J1IJ
↓ ↓
Invoice
(distributing exerse to customers)

- In STO process we will create exerse Invoice on the name of depot.

(iii) Exports :-

- selling the goods to customers who are located outside the country
- Exports is of three types.

(i) UNDER BOND

(ii) LOU (letter of undertaking)

(iii) NO BOND

BOND :- It is an agreement b/w company and the excise department to do exports without paying excise duties upto particular value and within a specific validity period.

BOND Process :-

OR
↓
Delivery
↓
Invoice
↓
Excise Invoice [* BOND we need to select]. [J1IIN]
↓
Bond master ← ARE1 Document [T-code - J1IA101]

- To create ARE1 Document, we need Bond Master.
- And ARE1 Document will have various process (flows) modes. and "update" will have 5 activities.

ARE1 Document →
- create
- Post
- update →
  - send to customer
  - counter signed by custom
  - Arrived back
  - Sent to excise
  - Export confirmed.

- In Exports when you select it as BOND system will not generate

accounting document.

- But in Domestic process when you create Excise Invoice system generates accounting doc. And the accounting entry is

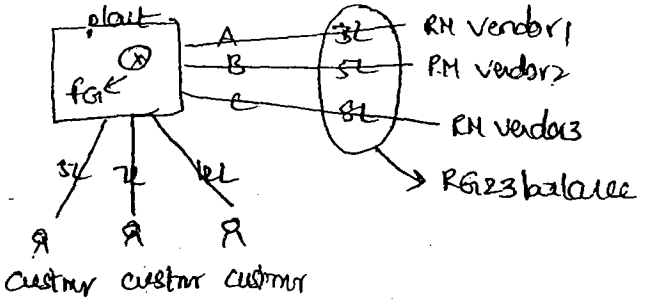
CENVAT SUSPENSE A/c DEBIT

TO

RG23 BED
RG23 EES
RG23 SEES
} A/c CREDIT.

(ii) Letter of undertaking :-

- It is a temporary permission taken from excise department to do exports without paying excise duty upto RG23 Balances



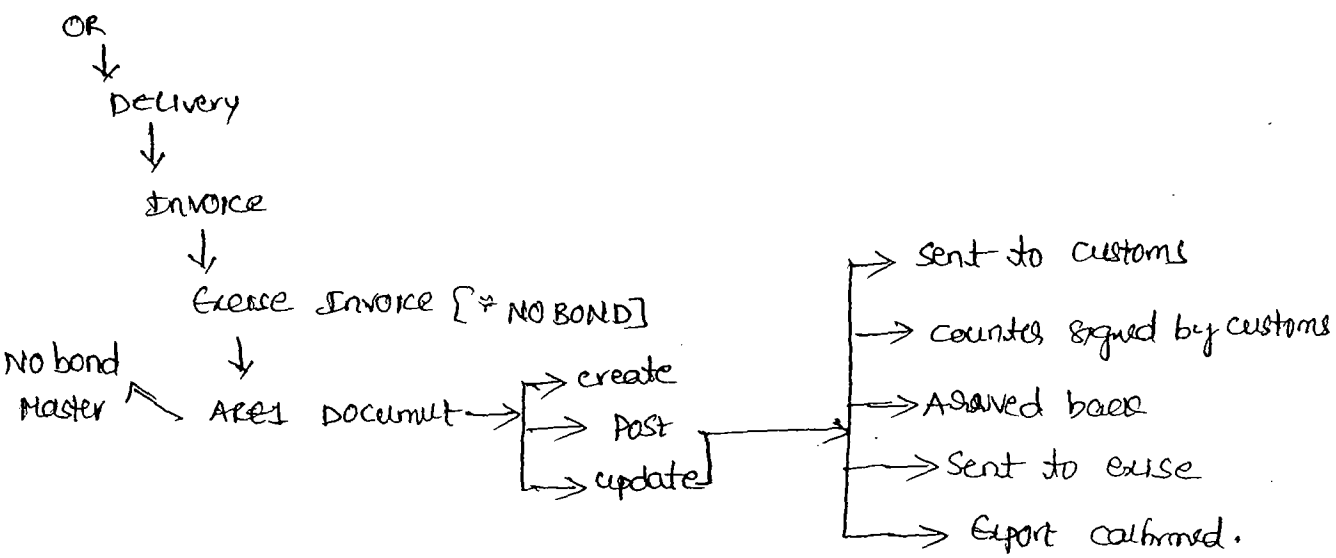
LOU Process :-

SO
↓
Delivery
↓
INVOICE
↓
Excise Invoice [* LOU select] [J1IIN]
↓
ARE1 Document [J1IAD]
→ create
→ Post
→ update
→ Send to custom
→ counter signed by customs
→ Arrived book
→ sent to Excise
→ Export confirmed.

LOU Master

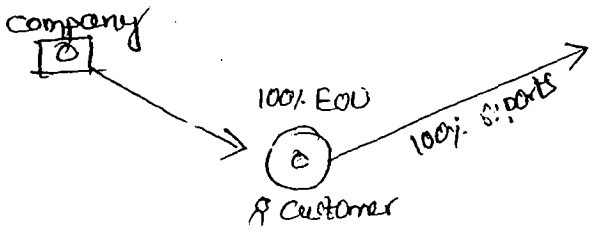
- To create ARE1 DOC. here we require LOU Master.

(iii) NO BOND :- (Exports under NO BOND (or) Rebate)



- In Excise Invoice if you select it as NO BOND then system generates accounting document.
- No bond / Rebate :-
- If you don't have bond or LOU then you have to pay the excise duties while doing exports. And you can claim it back after 6 months.

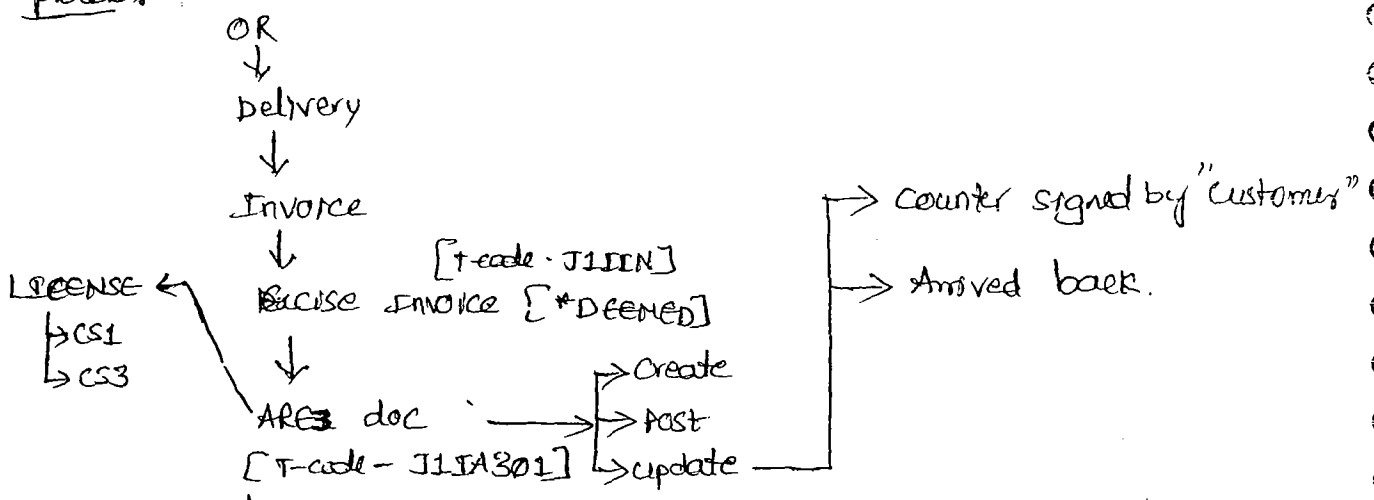
(iv) DEEMED EXPORTS :-



- EOU (Export Oriented units).
- Selling the goods to customers who are located in India and who will do 100% exports.

  eg: SEZ (Special Economic Zones).

process:-



- If you select it as DEEMED in exerse invoice then system will not generate a/c. document.

- To create ARE3 we require LICENSE. we have two types of LICENCES. (i) CT1 (value base)
  (ii) CT3 (Qty base)

REGISTERS IN CIN

- Registers consist of 'Records', what is 'coming in' and what is 'going out'.

- we have 4 registers in Excise.

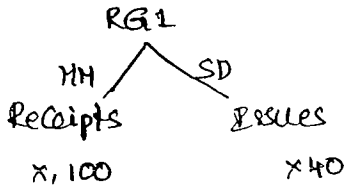
  1. RG1
  2. RG23A
  3. RG23C
  4. RG23D

1. RG1:-

- RG1 Register consist of (i) Receipts (MM)
  (ii) Issues. (SD)

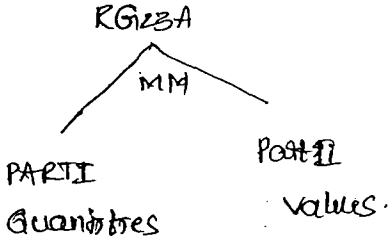
- whenever you manufacture will be updated in Receipts.

- whenever you do delivery will be updated in Issues.



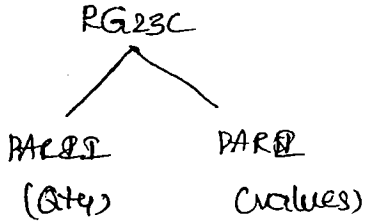
(2) RG23A :-

- It is for 'Raw materials'.
- RG23A consist of (1) Part I (consist of Quantities)
  (2) Part 2 (consist of Values)



(3) RG23C :-

- It is for Capital Goods.
- capital goods means Assets
- whenever we purchase Assets, it will update in RG23C.
- RG23C consist of (1) PART I (Qty)
  (2) PART II (values)



(4) RG23D :-

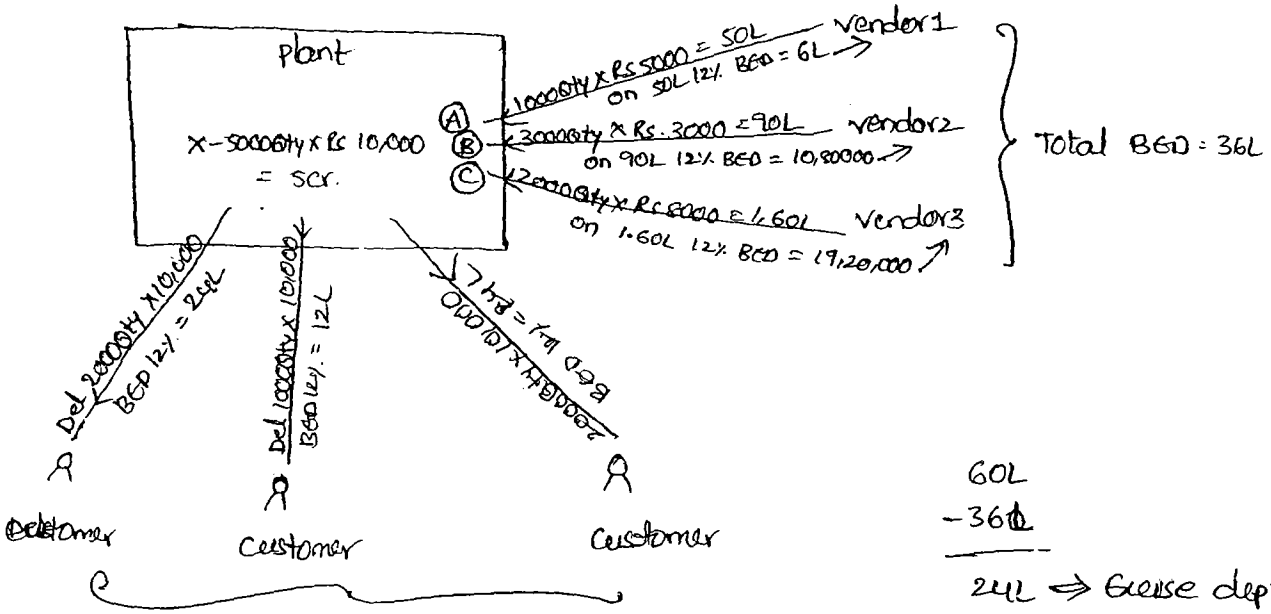
- It is for Depot register.
- RG23D consist of (1) J1IG (MM).
  (2) J1IJ (SD)

RG23D

MM SD

J1IG J1IJ

⇒ CENVAT UTILIZATION



60L
−36L
24L ⇒ Excise dept.

- Every month 5th dated Client will do cenvat utilisation for the last month transaction.

Cenvat utilisation :-

- whatever the excise we charge from customer, first we deduct it from whatever we already paid to vendor. And the balance amount will be paid to excise department.

- After cenvat utilization we will take the details into AR4 form and submit to excise dept along with cheque or DD.

CEN configuration :-

- CEN can be configured in two ways.
  1. formula based
  2. condition based.

formula based	condition based
(1). In formula based the excise duties will be determined into sales doc based on formulas. eg: Alt calc type, Alt base type.	(1) In condition based the excise duties will be determined into sales doc only based on condition technique.
(2) In formula based the tax procedure is - TAXINJ	(2) In cond based tax procedure is - TAXINN
(3) In formula based there is a relationship b/w tax procedure and sales pricing procedure.	(3) In cond based there is no relationship b/w tax procedure and sales pricing procedure.

- the client who implement SAP before (2006-07) they will be having formula based.
- the client who are implementing SAP after (2006-07) they will be having condition based.
- SAP suggesting to go for condition based.

Configuration for CONDITION BASED :-

(1) FACTORY SALE :-

Step1: Go to the T-code OBYZ and define tax procedure "TAXINN"

- Go to OBYZ and double click on Procedures
- Go to "NEW ENTRIES" and define the tax procedure.

eg: TAXINN - condition based tax procedure.

- Enter and save it. (No need to go for control data).

Step2: Go to the T-code OBBG and go to country "IN" and assign

the tax procedure TAXINN

eg:

IN	TAXINN

- Save it.

Step3:- Maintain Excise registrations

Excise Registration :-

- It is the registration number issued by excise department for each and every manufacturing plant.
- without this Excise Registration number we will not have authorisation to start manufacture the goods in the plant.

PATH:- SPRO → Log- General → Tax on goods Movement → India → basic settings → Maintain Excise registration.

- Go to "NEW ENTRIES" and mension the Internal Excise Reg number.

  eg:→ Excise Reg: 550. (Internal purpose)

  → ECC NO: 04810 (Excise Commissionerate

  → Excise Reg: NO: 10080/2015/2001496 (this is the actual number provided by excise department).

- Every Excise output should have excise registration number. (when Excise duty steps invoice, they will check with it).

  → Excise Range: HYDERABAD

  → Excise Division: AP

  → Commissionerate: BAHERABAGH.

  ☐ Liable to AED

  ☐ Liable to SSD

- If the client is having AED, SSD then check this. only tobacco,

alcohol.. etc. will have AED and SED

RI Items :-

- It will help to restrict no. of line items in excise invoice [10]

☑ Liable to AT1 (Additional Excise tax).

- It is for "SECS".
- Always we have to check liable to AT1. Because SECS is a default duty.

Step4:- Maintain Company code Settings.

- FI consultant is responsible.
- Go to "NEW ENTRES"

Company code: [A100]

Cenvat DOC type: [SA] Utilisation FI doc type: [SA]

☑ Debit A/c Override ☑ Auto adj. Indicator ☑ Immedi. credit on capital goods

First Month : 4 April

Excise selection days: [30] No. of Excise Invoice selection: [30]

Excise Invoice sele. Procedure : F FIFO.

☑ Rounding duty on procurement ☑ Rounding duty on Removal

Ex. Rate typ ND [B] Exchange rate type for Exports : [B]

- Save it.
- Rounding duty on Removal :-
  - If you check this then excise duties will be rounded off while creating excise invoice
  - It is a legal requirement that excise duty should be rounded in

excise invoice.

(ii) Exchange rate type for Export :-

- the standard Exchange Rate type is "M". And "M" fluctuates everyday. But for excise point of view in exports govt. will issue a fixed exchange rate which is valid through out the month. So we maintain that exchange rate to different exchange rate type and assign it here.

Step5 :- Maintain Plant settings :-

- MM consultant is responsible.
- In this configuration step we will assign excise registrations to plant and in this step we will also differentiate whether the plant is manufacturing plant or depot.

- Go to " NEW ENTRIES"

eg:-

Plant	Depot	Excise Reg
A100	☐	550

- Save it.

Step6 :- Maintain Excise group :-

- It is an internal grouping which we do for the purpose of excise number ranges and excise G/L Account. Excise group contains 1 Excise number ranges
  2 Excise G/L Accounts.

- Go to " NEW ENTRIES'

Excise group [A1] plant [A100]

Description : A100 plant Excise group

Excise Reg: 550

☑ Default challan CH4 in GR

☐ "Excise Inv. during billing" (Do not check).

- If you check this then while creating invoice system automatically generates excise invoice in the background.

☑ Create and post Inv single step.

- this check box is applicable for J1IS.
- J1IS T-code is for Manual adjustment of excises. i.e other adjustments.
- If you check this then system will create and post excise invoice in single step.

☑ Consumption

- If the plant is depot then check all the Depot settings.
- MIGO settings

☑ EI capture ☑ postEI in MIGO ☑ Duty diff at GR
☑ update RG1 at MIGO

- If the plant is depot then check ☐ RG23D selection.

Step7:- Maintain series group

- Go to "NEW ENTRIES"
- Series group:-
  - Each excise group will have multiple series groups.
  - Series group mainly controls number ranges.

Eg: A1 (Excise group)

A11 (Domestic) A22 (Exports).

Eg:

Series group	Exc Reg
A11	580
A22	550

Step8: Maintain Excise duty Indicator

- Eg: 1 100% Excise
  2 50% Excise → (currently we are not using this)
  3 NIL Duty.

Step9: Master Data → Maintain chapter IDs

- chapter ID:-
  - It is an Identification number provided by excise dept for the similar nature of products.
    Eg: All TV's will have one chapter ID whether it is from LG or SAMSUNG or others.
  - Govt will issue excise duty rates based on Chapter ID. In SAP we have to maintain exchange rates with the combination of chapter ID.

    Eg: chapter ID - 8415 . 85 . 25
    4digit 2digit 2digit

- Go to NEW ENTRIES

  chapter ID: 8415-85-25

  UOM Excise: BT

  Desc. as per Law: INSULIN Products

Step10:- Assign users to MM screen sequence for Excise duty

- select and double click on User screen sequence
- Go to NEW ENTRIES and mention your user ID: SAPUSER.
- this will help to determine "CEN details" tab in customer master.

Step11:- Account Determination → Define G/L Accounts for Taxes.

- this configuration step is OB40 where we assign G/L Accounts for sales tax. i.e CST and VAT.

Step12:- specify excise Accounts for Excise transactions

- Like document types in sales, we have transaction types in Excise

Excise Transaction type for (i) outgoing Excise Invoice is : DLFC

MM Excise transaction types

(i) DIEX - Differential Excise through JV
(ii) EWPO - Excise Invoice w/o PO
(iii) GRPO - Excise Inv for Goods receipt/PO.
(iv) MRDY - Reversal w/o Reference
(v) MRRD - Reversal in case of consumption other than production
(vi) MRWO - Cenvat Reversal for write off.

(ii) cancel Excise Invoice : CEIV
(iii) utilisation : UTLZ
(iv) Exports : ARE1
(v) Deemed Exports : ARE3
(vi) other adjustments : OTHR
(vii) PLA (Personal Ledger) Account : TRGC

- In this configuration step, we will specify the debit account and credit accounts for excise transaction accounts.
- Go to transaction type and add the below Accounts in debit side or credit side in which you have multiple entries.

Eg: DLFC Cr RG23BED
DLFC Cr RG23ECS
DLFC Cr RG23AT1
DLFC Cr PLA BED
DLFC Cr PLA ECS
DLFC Cr PLA AT1
DLFC Dr Cenvat suspense A/c.

- In TRGC Don't add RG23 Accounts.
- Like do it for all.

26/4/15

Step 13:- specify GL Accounts for Excise Transactions.

- In this configuration step we will assign excise GL Accounts to the combination of Excise group, Excise transaction type and company code.

- Go to "NEW ENTRIES"

Excisegroup	ETT	cocode	chAct	Assign GL Accounts
A1	DLFC	A100	INT	

- Creating Excise GL Accounts:-

- Go to FS00, mension some GL Account number, and company code and click on create

  - mension Account group : General GL Account

    ⊙ Blance sheet account

    short text : RG23ABED

    Group account number : 125100

- then go to control data, Account Currency : INR

  Tax category : *

  ☑ Posting w/o tax allowed.

  ☑ Open item mgt

  ☑ Line item display

  Sort key 001

- then go to create Bank/Interest

  field status group G001

  ☑ Automatically only

- then assign this GL account in "Step 13".

- Likewise create all the G/L accounts that are required for "step no. 13" and assign it. (total of 25

- then ~~create~~

Step14:-

PATH:- Business transaction → Incoming Invoices →

→ Specify which movement type involve excise invoice.

- Go to NEW ENTRIES

MType	Register
101	RG1 Register RG1
101	RG23A Register RG23A
101	RG23C
561	RG1
601	RG1
641	RG1
631	RG1
651	RG23A

- this configuration step controls which movement type should update which register.

Step15:

PATH:- Outgoing Excise Invoices → Assign billing types to delivery types.

- JEX is the billing type for Proforma Invoice for Excise.

Eg: DelType	BillingType
LF	F2
LF	F8
LF	JEX
NL	F8
NL	JEX

- this configuration will act as a copy control between ~~delivery~~ to excise Invoice.

Step16: Maintain Default excise group and series group.

- In this configuration step we will assign excise group and series group to the combination of sales Area and shipping point.
- this step will help to determine series group automatically while creating excise invoice
- this configuration will also controls the type of export. i.e whether it is Domestic or Export under Bond or LOU or Rebate (No bond) or Deemed Exports.

Eg.

Sorg	Distch	Div	Shppoint	plant	Exiseqrp	Seriesgrp	Export type
A100	A1	A1	A103	A100	A1	A11	–

Excise Pricing

Step1:- Create condition table for Excise duties

PATH:- Basic fn's → Pricing (V103)

(i) For Excise:-

- Create table with combination as (i) customer / plant / control code (eg: 528)
  (ii) Plant / control code (eg: 529)
- control code is nothing but "chapter ID".
- we have control code field in Material Master → foreign trade export → foreign trade Import.

(ii) for sales tax:-

- Create condition table with combination as below.

for CST : (i) country (LAND1) / Region of delivering plant / Region of SH (REGIO) /

(eg : 551) Tax class 1 of customer / Tax class of material

for VAT : (i) country / Region of del. plant / Region of SH

(eg. 552) Tax class 2 of customer / Tax class 2 of material.

Step2 : Create Access sequence

- we need to create 3 access sequences.
  - 1 for excise
  - 2 for sales tax i.e CST & VAT

eg1: AEXI → 528 ☑
529 ☑

eg2: ACST → 551 ☑

eg3: AVAT → 552 ☑

Step3 : Create condition type for Excise

- In real time we have standard condition types.

for BED - JEXP
EES - JECS
SECS - JEXS

- And the controls are same for all condition types.

Cond. class : A Access sequence : AEXI
calc. type : A

☑ Item condition

- create condition type for CST & VAT

for CST - JCST
VAT - JVAT

- And the controls are

Cond class : D Access sequence
calc. type : A

cond. category : [D]

☑ Item condition.

Step4: place the condition type in Pricing procedure (V/LO8)

- Create New Pricing procedure and place the condition types.

eg: AFACT - factory sales.

eg: Step	cond	From		Stat		Requirmnt		Accrly	
10	PR00					2		ERL	
150	netvalue	10		☑					
160	JEXP	150				2		EXD	
170	JECS	160				2		EXD	
180	JEXS	160				2		EXD	
190	NETTEXCISE	150	180	☑					
200	JCST	190						MWS	
210	JVAT	190						MW3	

- save it.

Step5:- Assign the pricing procedure (OVKB)

eg. SOrg	DistCh	Div.	DocPr.Pr	CustPrPro	PricingProc	CType
A100	A1	A1	A	1	AFACT	PR00

Step6: classify condition types

- It will help to copy the excise duty values from condition types (of Invoice) to the fields in Excise Invoice.

PATH:- SPRO → Logistic - General → tax on goods movement → India → Basic Setting → Determination of excise duty → condition based excise determination → classify condition types.

- Go to " NEW ENTRIES"

Procedure	cond type	condition Name
AFACT	JEXP (BED)	BEDARTOT A/R BED total
AFACT	JECS (ECS)	ECS ARTOT
AFACT	JEXS (SECS)	AT1ARTOT

- save it.

Step7: Define Tax determination Rule

PATH:- SPRO → SBD → Basic fn's → Taxes → Define tax determ Rules

Tax contry	Seq	Tax category
IN	1	JCST
IN	2	JVAT

- save it

Step8: Define Tax Relevancy for Master Records

- Double click on customer taxes

Tax categ	Tax class	Description
JCST	0	No tax
JCST	1	Liable for tax
JCST	C	(form)
JCST	I	STO
JNAT	0	No tax
JNAT	1	Liable for tax
JVAT	I	STO

- Double click on Material taxes

Taxcat	Taxclass	Description
JCST	0	No tax
JCST	1	Liable for tax
JVAT	0	No tax
JVAT	1	Liable for tax

Step 9: Create the new customer

- Maintain Region (Mandatory): 01
- Maintain Region (Mandatory in plant CA100) also.
- Maintain taxes JCST-1 and JVAT-1
- Save the customer (Eg: 101265)

- Create the New Material (Eg: ACINMAT)
  - Maintain taxes JCST-1 and JVAT-1.
  - Save the material.

Step 10: Excise Maintenance

- Go to the T-code [J1ID] and maintain CIN master data, Excise State maintance.
- Select Master data → Material & chapter ID and click on change.
- then Go to New ENTRIES.

Eg:

Material	plant	chap-ID	Mat-type
ACINMAT	A100	8415.25.25	F RG1

- Save it.

- then go back and select customer excise details and click on change
- then go to New

Eg:

customer	Exc-Ind-cust
101265	1

- Save it.

- then go back and select excise indicator for plant & click on Maintain
- then Go to New

Cocd	plant	Exc-Ind-comp
A100	A100	1

- Save it.

Step 11:- Create condition Records (VK11).

Scenario:

If you have two plants Mumbai & Vapi and if you have operations all over india i.e 29 states then how many condition records we will maintain for VAT & CST?

Ans: for VAT - 2
for CST - 56

Step 12: Create tax codes (before creating cond Records).

- If you have 56+2 condition records then you have to create 58 tax codes.
- Tax code will help to determine seperate G/L Account.
- Create tax code (T-code - FTXP), maintain Tax type 'A' output tax and save it. (Its Dummy code, Just for G/L Account purpose).
- then maintain the condition records.

Ex: 1. JEXP - A100 - 8415.25.25 - 12%
JECS - A100 - 8415.25.25 - 2%
JEXS - A100 - 8415.25.25 - 1%

- Cond record of JCST - IN-13-01-1-1 - Eg: 5%
JVAT - IN-01-01-1-1 - Eg: 4%

- In JVAT Regions should be same.

- Also maintain Base price for Material (VK11) (OB40, A/c key & XD design)
- then Post the stock and it will be updated into RG1 Register.
- then Create order (check tax conditions)
- Create delivery
- Invoice (Error).

Maintain sales tax G/L Account

- Go to OB40
- double click on MWS and maintain

Tax code	Account
9A	1750000

- double click on MW3 and maintain

Tax code	Account
9B	175000

- then create Excise Invoice T-code (J1IIN)
  - click on [1] from Billing
    - mension Billing account no:
    - check BED
    - Save the document.

Error: Error in allocating internal doc no. Interval not found no. object J_1IINTNUM

- The T-code to maintain Excise number ranges is SNUM.
- mension the object: J_1IINTNUM and click on maintain. [number ranges]
- Always Excise number range interval no. should be "01".
- Create it and save it.
- To check Accounting document go to (J1IIN) change mode

Excise Invoice: 0000001

Excise year: 2015

Series group: All enter and click on Accounting.

- when you create Invoice the accounting entry is

Cenvat suspense account Dr

To

RG23 BED

RG23 ECS

RG23 SECS credit

- the table we have in Excise Invoice are

Header table : J_1IEXCHDR

Item table : J_1IEXCDTL

Updating Registers (RG1)

PATH :- Go to CIN Easy Access - J1ILN . this T-code should run from Easy Access screen.

- then go to Indirect Taxes → Registers → Excise Tax → J1IS - update RG23A/C Issues and RG1.

- mension the Comp. code : A100
plant : A100
Excise group : A1
Posting Date : 26.04.2015 26.04.2015

- (some clients will do daily basis, some clients on weekly and monthly).

- In RG1 Register list we update Receipts then we update issues

☐ classification - RMA for Receipts.

Receipts	Issues
RMA	IDH - Domestic
	IDE - export under no bond
	IWE - export under Bond
	IWD - Deemed Export
	IWT - stock transfer.

- then select RG1 and Execute.

- then select the entry and click on simulate

- then select the entry and click on Register entry

- then Again go to J1IS and select classification - IDH Domestic for Issues then Select the RG1 and execute and do the process.

Extracting Registers :-

PATH :- same as above → J2I5 - extract

- mention Excise group A1
  Start date:
  End date:
  ☑ RG1 and Execute.

- To print the register, the T-code is J2I6

- the T-code "to download" the data into Excel J1IR

  select ⊙ RG1
  Excise Doc. Entry Date: [ ] to [ ]
  Excise group: A1
  file name : (where you want to save)

- then click on Execute

CENVAT UTILIZATION

- To do cenvat utilisation maintain Excise G/L Accounts to all excise transaction types.

- The T-code for cenvat utilisation is J2IUN

  - mention comp. code:
    Part :
    Excise grp:
    period : _____ to _____

  And Execute

  - Above values are how much we charge from customer (sales)
  - below values are how much we paid to vendor. (utilised for Bed)

updating the RG23 Balance manually (below values) i.e which we paid to the vendor.

- T-code is J1IH enter
- And click on Additional Excise and mension some number

DOC no: xxxxx
year:
plant:
Excise grp:
⊙ RG23A and enter

- then mension the BED Amount : 48000
ECS Amount: 960
SECess Amount: 480

- finally save it.

Extract RG23A Part2 Register:-

- T-code - J2I5 select ⊙ RG23A PART II and Excute.
- then go to J2IUN and process and make balance zero.

Post the values in PLA Account:-

- Go to T-code J1IH
- Click on TR6 Challan mension some DOC no:
year:
plant:
Excise grp:
and enter.

- mension the amounts 15,000 -
2000 -
1000 -

- Save it.

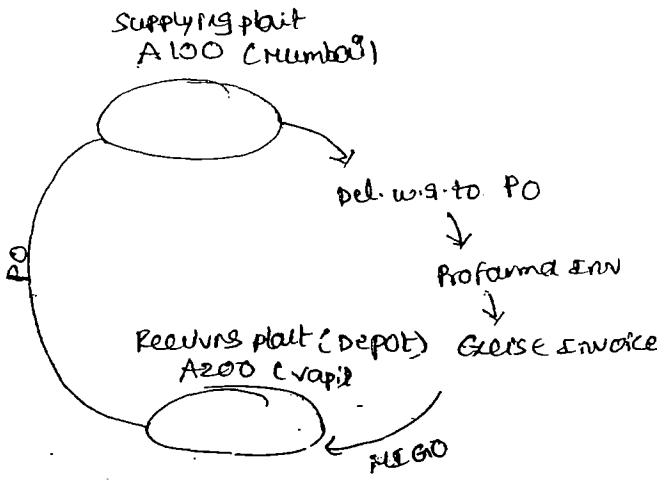
~~Extract PLA Register:- J2I5~~

- then do cenvat utilisation - J2IUN
  - Select BED and click on [@ select Duty]

(2) DEPOT PROCESS :-

Configuration for STO :-

- PO Type for STO = UB
- Delivery Type for STO = NL
- Item category = NLN
- Schedule line cat = NN
- Mov. type two step = 641
- Mov. type one-step = 647



Step1 :- Create the Material in both the plants.

Step2 :- Create Receiving plant as customer in supplying Sales Area for delivery address.

Step3 :- Define shipping data for plants

PATH :- SPRO → Materials Mgt → Purchasing → Purchase order → set up stock transport order → Define shipping data for plant.

- Go to Receiving plant (A200) details and assign the customer no plant : 1012666 and receiving sales area.

- And go to Supplying plant (A100) details and assign only supplying Sales Area.

Step4: Assign Delivery type and checking Rule

- NEW ENTRIES

Ex.

PO type	Splnt	Dlty	checking Rule
UB	A100	NL	B

- save it

Step5: Assign doc. type, one step procedure, under del tolerance

- NEW ENTRIES, with comb. of sup plant & Rec. plant assign PO type UB

Ex.

SPl	plant	type
A100	A200	UB

- save it

Configuration for Depot to customer:-

Step1:- Maintain Excise registration for Depot.

Eg: Excise reg: 650

ECC no: 0U810

: 1200123/2L5/A10010

:

☑ Liable to AT1

- Save it.

Step2:- Maintain plant settings → NEW ENT

Plnt	depot	Exc. reg
A200	☑	650

Step3:- Maintain Excise group:-

Excise grp: B1 plant A200

Description: A200

Excise reg: 650

check all Depot settings:

☑ ☑ ☑

- check EI Create/RG23 Selection
- Save it.

Step4:- Maintain Series group - NEW ENTRIES

Series grp	Series Desc	Ex.Seq
B1	Depot series grp	650

- Save it. [Determination of excise duty → Maintain Excise defaults]

Taxproc : TAXINN
A/R BED: JEXP
BED Percn : JEXP
A/R ECS : JECS
ECS Perc : JECS
AT1 cond: JEXS
→ AT1 perc : JEXS

Step5:- Account determination → specify GL Accounts for excise transaction

- NEW EN

Eg:

Excise grp	ETT	cond	Assign all the Excise GL Accounts
B1	GRP	A100	

Step6:- Business transactions → outgoing excise Invoices → Maintain default excise groups & Series groups

- NEW EN

Sorg	Dchan	Div	Shp	plant	Exgrp	Seriesgrp
A100	A1	A1	A001	A200	B1	B1

~~Step7:~~

Pricing procedure for Depot:-

- Create New PP for depot which is a copy of factory sale pricing procedure (eg: AFACT → copy → ADEPOT and go to excise dutres JEXP, JECS, JEXS and maintain caltype as "356"
- save it.

MANF - DEPOT

PO
↓
Delivery
↓
Proforma → factory sale PP AFACT
↓
Excise Inv

Depot - Cust

Order → depot pricing procedure ADEPOT

- for depot customer (Receiving plant A200) maintain Cust. pric. proc as '1'. And for '1' combination assign (OVKK) factory sale pricing procedure (AFACT)

- for Normal customers who will place order to depot, maintain customer pric. pro. as '2'. And for '2' combination assign (OVKK) depot pric. procedure (A DEPOT)

- Go to depot customer (Receiving plant) and maintain tax class as '0'.

- Go to J1ID :-

- Select ⊙ Material & chapter ID combination

- copy and change the plant to A200.

ACENMAT	A200

- go back and select ⊙ customer excise details and maintain

customer	Exc. Ind.
101266	1

- go back and select ⊙ Excise indicator for plant → NEW EN

Cocd	plant	Exe. Indic
A100	A200	1

Classify condition types :-

PATH :- SPRO → Log. General → Tax on goods movements → India → Basic setting → Determ. of Excise duty → Cond. based Excise determ → classify condition types

- can copy 3 entries of AFACT and name it as ADEPOT for all 3 entries

- save it.

Maintain cond records for Excise duties :- (VK11)

(i) JEXP → plant/control → A200 → 8415.25.25 – 12%

(ii) JECS → " → A200 → – 2%

(iii) JEXS → " → A200 → – 1%

——— x ———

- then (i) Create PO (ME21N)

PO Type : UB Sup plant : A100

Pur Org : A001

Pur grp : 001

Comp Code : A100

Material	Qty	Recei plant	Rec. St loc
ACEINHAT	10	A200	A203

- Save it. (4500019533 PO no)

- then (ii) Create Delivery (VL10D)

supplying ship. point : A101 and Execute

- Select the PO number click on Background.
- then click on log for del.
- then select the line and click on Documents.
- then select the del. no. & click on Display Doc.
- then go to change mode → do picking → PGI

- then (iii) Create Proforma Invoice (VF01)

- mension Delivery doc number
- Billing type F8 (or) JEX enter and check BED
- create & save it

- then (iv) Create Excise Invoice (J1IIN)

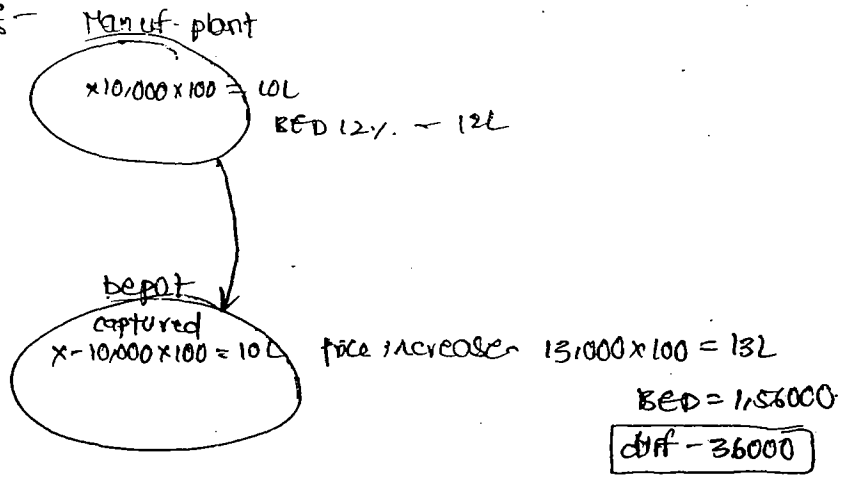
- select from Billing
- Create and save it.

- then (iv) Create MIGO with ref. to outbound del. no. (MIGO)
  - Maintain reference - ROS outbound delivery
  - mension Delivery number and enter
  - EV Item OK enter
  - Go to [Excise Invoice] tab
    - mension Excise Invoice no: 00000002
      Excise Inv Date: 26.04.2015
    - check BED, ECS, SECS
  - then [Check] and [Post] for Automatic J1IG
- for manual in Excise Invoice tab change "06 No Excise entry" then [Check] and [Post]
- then (vi) J1IG (Manually) capturing excise at depot
  - Click on D capture
    - mension Excise group: B1 and enter
    - then click on details
    - then select "excise internal no." which we created in manufacturing plant and mension the year (2015) and enter and save it.
- then (vii) Create order (VA01)
  - In depot sales order it should be Receiving plant (A200)
- then (viii) Create Delivery (VL01N)
- then (ix) J1IJ (Distributing the captured excise to customers)
  - Go to Delivery → RG23D Selection
  - Delivery number
    Excise grp: B1
    Series grp: B11 and enter

- then select the line and click on detail [ ]
- then click on [Excise Invoice]
  - then select the Excise Inv. no. and click on [continue] and press enter. (you will get BED amount).
  - save it.
- J1IG and J1IJ will update in RG23D register.
- the table for depot excise Invoice (J1IG and J1IJ) is "J_1IRG23D".

- then (X) Create Invoice (VF01).

Scenario in depot:-



PART:- CIN Easy Access → Indirect Access → procurement → Excise invoice → for depot → J1IGA - A - certificate entry at depot.

- Enter Invoice number and specify Additional

3. EXPORTS :-

- we configure exports for the customers who are located in outside the country.

configuration for Export :-

Step1 :- Maintain Excise G/L Accounts to the combination of excise group and excise transaction type ARE1.

Step2 :- Go to business transactions → outgoing Excise Invoices → Maintain default excise group and series group.

Sorg	Dchan	Div	Ship	plant	Excise grp	Series grp	Export type
A100	A1	A1	A101	A100	A1	A22	B Export under bond

- In realtime we assign with export sales org (A200). we will not distribute

Step3 :- Go to Exports under excise regulation → Exports → Make settings for ARE1 procedure

- Go to NEW ENTRIES

- mension

Series grp	ETT	Exp. Pd	No. copies	output type
A22	ARE1	180	5	J1IB

Step4 :- Printouts of ARE documents → Maintain output type → Go to Change mode → NEW ENTRIES

output type : J1IB

☑ Access to condition

- In default values tab

Dispatch time : 4 send Immediately

Transmission medium : 1 pontout

- then double click on processing routine

  - mension the Program : J-1I PRNTARE

    form Routine : ENTRY_ARE1

    form : J1I_ARE1

- save it.

Step5:- specify printer :-

- Go to NEW ENTRIES

  - mension condition type : J1SB

    plant : A100

    st location : A103

    output device : LP01

- save it.

Step6:- Create NEW pricing procedure for exports which is a copy of factory sale pricing procedure and remove sales tax condition types (JCST, JVAT) and check IV statistical for excise condition types (JECS, JEXP, JEXS)

- copy AFACT and rename (eg: AEXPO)

Step7:- Go to Export customer and maintain customer pricing procedure as '3'.

- and assign the export pricing procedure (OVKK) with cust. pric procedure as '3' combination. eg

Sorg	Dchal	Div	Doc. Pri Proc	cust. pr. pr	Pr. Procedure
A100	A1	A1	A	3	AEXPO

Step8: Maintain classify condition types : copy "AFACT" to "AEXPO".

then (i) create order (VA01)

- In order we won't get CST & VAT.
- And excise duties cond types are statistical (JEXP, JEXS, JEC

(ii) create delivery (VL01N)

(iii) create invoice (VF01)

(iv) Create excise invoice (J1IEN)

- while creating excise invoice for exports system should determine domestic number range. for this use local number range for excise invoice.
- Go to utilisation, check Bond and save it.

Error: customization for customer 10272 missing in table CIN master

Sol: Go to J1ID - Maintain excise indication '1' for customer.

(v) create ARE1 document. T-code is - J1IA101

- before creating ARE1 document create "BOND MASTER".
- To create Bond Master Go to CIN Easy Access (J1ILN) then Go to Indirect Access → Master Data → Excise Bond → create - J1IBN01
- Plant: A100

  Bond type: RUNB

  Bond no. as per exc. dept: 300010 (Some number)

  Type of Dispatch: M Multiple dispatch

  Execution dt: 02.05.2015 and Enter.

  then mension the Bond value: 300000 & save it.

- then go to JIIA101 again
  - Mension "A11 Create ARE1"

    Reference as: R09 outgoing Excise invoice

  Exc. Inv. number: (search from f4) or enter manually. and enter.

  then go to Bond/ur-1 details tab and mension the Int. Bond number: and year:

  - then go to Document Details tab and ☑ Print ARE1 document (check)
  - then save it.
- then again mension "A04 Post"

  Reference as: R10 ARE1 internal document

  Exc. Inv no:

  - while posting go to certification dates and mension departed on: 02.05.2015 and removal time: 10.12.15
  - then save it.
- then again mension A06 update

  Reference as: R10 ARE1 internal document

  - In update we have these 5 processes (will find on certification dates tab).
    1. Arrived at customes
    2. counter signed
    3.
    4. sent to excise dept
    5. Export confirmed.

(ii) LOU (Export) configuration :-

Step1: Go to Default excise group and Series group and maintain export type as "LOU"

Step2: Create Bond Master for LOU.

- In bond Master Mention Bond type as "LOU"

Step3: while creating excise invoice, go to utilisation and select it as "LOU".

(iii) NO BOND (Export) configuration (or) Rebate :-

Step1: Go to Default excise group and series group and maintain export type as NO BOND or Rebate.

- No need to create Bond Master.

Step2: while creating Excise Invoice, go to utilisation and select it as No bond or "Rebate"

(iv) DEEMED (Exports) configuration :-

Step1:- Maintain Excise GL Accounts to the combination of excise grp and excise transaction type ARE3.

Step2:- Go to Business transactions → Exports under Excise regulations → DEEMED Exports → Make settings for ARE3 procedure

- NEW ENTRIES

series grp	Excise TT	No of copies	output type
All	ARE3	3	J1ID

- save it.

Step3: Maintain License type

- Go to NEW ENTRIES

Licence type	Qualification method	description
CT1	VALUE BASED	value based
CT3	QTY BASED	Qty based

Step4: Printouts OF ARE doc → specify printers → NEW ENTRIES

Condition type : JIED
plant : A100
ship. port : A103

Output device: LP01

Step5: Create NEW pricing procedure for deemed exports, A copy OF factory sale pricing procedure (AFAET). And check statistical for Excise condition types (JEXP, JEXS, JECS).

Step6: Go to the Deemed Exports Customers and maintain customer pric procedure as 4 or 5. And assigne deemed export pric. proc. to that combination (OVKK).

Step7: Maintain default excise grp and series group.

Org	dist	div	ship	plant	Excise grp	series grp	Export type
A100	A1	A1	A103	A100	A1	A1	D Deemed Export

— save it.

Step8: Maintain classify condition types (copy AFAET - ADEEM).
then (i) Create order
(ii) Create delivery
(iii) Invoice
(iv) Excise Invoice
— Here go to utilisation and select Deemed.

(V) create ARE3 document (T-code J1IA301)

-

Create Licence master:-

- Go to CIN Easy Access → Indirect Access → Master Data →

  Deemed export License J1ILIC01 - capture.

- mension series group: A11

  License type: CT3

  License Name: Qty based

  Creation Date: 02.05.2015

  sold-to-party: 0000120126 5 ship-to-party: 0000120126 5

Material	Qty	UOM	Value
ACIN NAT	10	EA	30,0000

- save it.

then create ARE3 document T-code.

A21 create ARE3

: R09 outgoing

Exe. Inv. no: and Enter.

- click on continue

- then go to License tab and mension

  License year: 2015

  License number: 444000

- then save it.

- then again A04 post

  : R12

- while posting, in certificate tab enter dispatched on:
Removal time:

- save it.

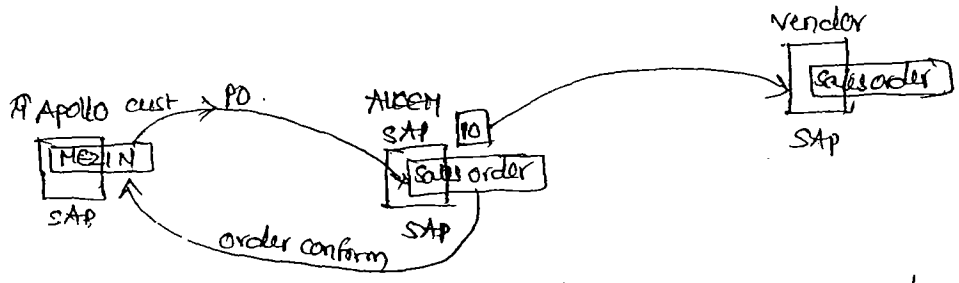
- Again select A06 update
RL2 Ares Internal doc

ALE - EDI - IDOCS

ALE - Application Linking and Enabling

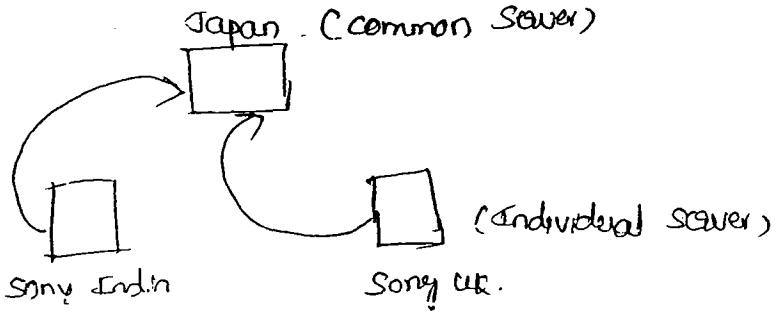
ALE is a tool which will help to transfer the document from one system to another system.

Scenario1 :-



- whenever PO created in Customer system (Apollo) then automatically Sales Order will be created in client (company) (Alkem) system.
- And Order confirmation will automatically sent to customer.
- when we rise po to vendor, in vendor system also Sales order will be created in vendor SAP system.

Scenario2 :-



- whatever we do in Individual sever that will be updated in Common sever. vise versa.

Advantages of using ALE :-

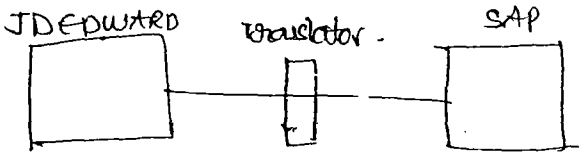
1. It will save the time of endusers.
2. It will minimize the paper usage.

3. It will avoid manual - mistakes.

4. It will save money.

5. Data security.

- ALE will also be used to transfer the documents from non-SAP system to SAP systems. vise versa. But here we required translators



- the translators are Tibco, BOOMI, XI, PI, EDI, GENTRAN, MERCATOR

IDOC:- (Intermediate Document)

- IDOC is a data carrier. it will help to carry the data from one system to another system.

Consultant Role in ALE: IDOC:-

- we need to track wether the IDOC is successfully transferred or not. If IDOC is failed then we need to do analysis and findout the error and rectify the error and reprocess the IDOC.

- Based on message numbers we will come to know wether the IDOC is success or failed.

Structure of IDOC:-

- IDOCs structure will be classified into 3 types of records.

1. Control record
2. Data record
3. Status record.

1 Control Record :-

- It consist of PORT Information, Partner Profile Information, Medium Information, .. etc.

2 Data Records :-

- It consist of actual data which you are transfering from One system to another system.

3. Status Record :-

- It consist of IDOCS status Information. i.e whether the Idoc is success or failed. Based on Message numbers we will decide wether the Idoc is success or failed.

IDOC. Messages.

0-49 - outbound (SENDER) System
50 and above - Inbound (RECIEVER) System

Message numbers :-

03- Success message number in outbound
27 and 29- failed message number in outbound
53- Success message number in Inbound
51 - failed message no. in Inbound

Message types :-

- the standard message types are

1) Customers - DEBMAS
2) Vendors - CREMAS
3) Material Master - MATMAS
4) PO to SO - ORDERS

5) Order confirmation - ORDRSP

6) Deliveries - DESADV

7) Invoice - INVOIC

- the T-code to view IDOCS - WE02 ~~WE05~~
  WE05
  WE07
  WE09

- the T-code to Reprocess the IDOC with same IDOC number - BD87
- the T-code to Reprocess the IDOC with different IDOC no. - WE19
- the common T-code for ALE - EDI - IDOC is WEDI
- the T-code to transfer customer Master from one system to another system - BD12
- the T-code to transfer the Material Master - BD10
- the T-code to transfer vendor Master - BD14

Basic IDOC Type & Extended IDOC type :-

- Basic Idoc type is standard.
- Extended Idoc is Customized.
  - for eg. if we have z-fields in customer master and if you want transport that z-fields from one system to another system then we go for Extended Idocs.

Consultant role in Extended IDOC :-

- we map the fields in sender system and receiver system.

Structure tables :-

Control Record - EDIDC
Data Record - EDIDD / EDID4
Status Record - EDIDS

the transfer of documents i.e PO – SO (or) Order Confirmation to PO will be done with the help of output type transmission medium.

- the medum for ALE is 'A'
- the medium for EDI is '6'.

Configuration for ALE :-

800 (SENDER) outbound	810 (RECEIVER) Inbound
Step1: Define logical system (by BASIS)	Step1: Define logical system (not required for practise) (If it is different server (real time) then we need to do this step. Bcoz its a cross client, if we do it in one client, it automatically updates in other clients within a same server.
- T-code is SALE	
PATH:-	
Basic settings → Logical stems → Define logical systems → New Entries	
Ex: LSD800 – sender Logical system	
LSD810 – Receiver Logical system	
- Save it.	
Step2: Assign Logical system to client	Step2:- Assign Logical system to client:- not required for practise. But we have to do in real time, because of different servers.
- BASIS consultant responsible	
- T-code is SALE then go to Basic settings → Assign LS to client	
- Double click on sender client and assign sender LS.	
Eg: 800 – LS : LSD800.	
- then go back and double click on receiver client and assign receiver LS. Eg: 810 – LS : LSD810	

Step3: Maintain RFC Destination (BASIS)

- T-code is SM59 then select ABAP connections and click on Create. then mension

RFC Destination: LSD810 (Receiver Logical system). (case sensitive)

Connection type: 3

Description: 810 client connection

- the go to technical Settings tab and mension target Host: (IP Address of receiver client).

To get IP Address go to SAP Logon pad & Right click on IDES → click on properties → Take the application server and specify in target host. & enter.

mension system no: 10 (will get in above IDES → properties → Instance number:

- then click on Logon & security tab and mension Language: en (No capslocks)

client: 810 (receivers)

suser: sapuser

Password: India123 — save it.

- then click on Remote Logon. It will take to 810 client.

Step3: Maintain RFC Destination (BASIS)

- T-code is SM59 then Select ABAP connection and click on Create. then mension

RFC Destn: LSD800 (Sender LS) (case sensitive check)

connection type: 3

Description: 800 client connection

- then go to technical settings tab & mension target Host: (sender IP address)

- System no:

- then click on Logon & security tab and mension

Leagunge: en

client: 800 (Senders)

user:

password:

- Then click on Remote Logon. It will take to 800 client.

Step 4: Create PORT

- T-code is WE21
- functional consultant is responsible to create port.
- Go to WE21 and select Transactional RFC → click on create.
  - Generate port name (system generates)
  - Own port name (we should specify name).
- Select Generate port name and continue
- then mention Descrpn: 810 (Receiver)
  RFC Destination: LSD810
- Enter and Save it.

Step 4: Create PORT

- T-code is WE21
- If it is one way, then we no need to do this step in (810) server.
- Go to WE21 and select Transactional RFC → click on create
- functional consultant is responsible.
- Select Generate portname & continue. then give description: LSD800 (sender)
  RFC destination: LSD800
- Enter and save it.

Step 5: Maintain distribution Model

- functional consultant Responsible
  T-code is BD64
- Go to BD64 and change mode and select Model view and click on create new view in DISTR Model
- then short text: customers
  Technical name: DEBMAS
- then click on continue & save it.
- then select the DISTR. Model and click on Add message type and mention sender: LSD800
  Receiver: LSD810
  Message type: DEBMAS

Step 5: Check distribution Model (BD64)

click on continue & save it.

- then again select the distr. Model and Go to → Environment → Generate partner profile. → Execute ⊙ then go back and save it.

- Again select the distr. Model and go to edit → Model view → Distribute and continue.

- then go to 810 client and check the distr. model. (BD64 → customers).

Step6: Generate partner profile [WE20]

- Go to [WE20] → Partner type LS → LSD810 → In outbound parameters double click on "DEBMAS"

-- then Basic type: DEBMAS07 (whichever latest).

⊙ transfer IDoc Immediately.

- save it.

Step6: create partner profile [WE20]

- Go to [WE20] → Partner type LS → LSD800 → create.

- mention Partner NO: LSD800

Partner type: LS (Logical system)

- save it.

- then go to Inbound parameters & click on create Inbound parameters

- mention Message type: DEBMASS

process code: DEBM

- save it.

- then create the customer only with General data in 800 client and Go to [BD12] and mention customer no.:

output type (Message type): DEBMASS

Logical system: LSD810

- Execute ⊙

- then Go to [WE02] In outbound (810) side and check wether IDoc is success or failed

- WE02 → Mention outbound direction : 1 and Execute. (In 800 client).
- the go to Inbound (810) client and go to WE02 → mention direction : 2 and Execute

Error: ISO code IN is not designed to country key.

- Go to T-code [OY01] and go to country "IN" and mention ISO code : IN and save it.
- then to process with same IDOC number, select the IDOC no (WE02) and go to [BD87] and mention IDOC number and Execute [process]
- then go to [WE02] and check the status.
- then check the customer in 810 client.

2. ACE : IDOC configuration for Transfering Material Master :-

- first 4 steps are same and already don.

Step 5: Maintain distr. Model

- T-code is [BD64]
- Go to change mode and click on Model view & click on create new view in distr. model
  - Short text: Material Master
    Tech. name: MATMAS

Continue & save it.

- then select the distribution model and click on Add message type
  - sender : LSD800
    Receiver : LSD810
    Message type: MATMAS
- Continue & save it.

Step 5:

- T-code [BD64]
- Go to BD64 and check the model view.

then select the distrib model (Material ...)
and go to environment and generate
partner profile and execute then go
back and save it.

- Again select the distrib model and go to
edit → Model view → distribute and
click on continue

Step 6: Generate partner profile

- Go to [WE20] and go to partner type
LS and click on Receiver logical system
LSD810, and check the outbound para-
- meters MATMAS Message type
- then double click on MATMAS then check
the basic type : MATMAS05 and save it.

- Create one Material Master in (800) and
transfer to (810).
- T-code to ~~transfer~~ transfer Material Master is [BD10]
Material: HALE1
Message type: MATMAS & Execute
- then go to [WE02] and check whether
Success or fail.
- To see error log clearly select the message
number and click on application log.
eg:- 51 (double click) → Application log.

Step 6: Create partner profile

- Go to T-code [WE20] and
go to partner type LS and
click on Sender LS : LSD800
then go to Inbound parameters
and click on Create Inbound
parameters.
Message type: MATMAS
process code: MATM1
- save it.

If you get unit of measure
error. then go to the T-code
[CUNI] and double click
on unit of measure (eg:
CAR (commercial) and
ISO code [CT].
☑ Primary code
- Save it.

3. ALE configuration for PO to SO :-

Es: 800 Apollo PO → 810 Akeem SO

→ P.Org

→ Vendor (Akeem)

→ Material PO

customer

Material

Sales order

Step1: Create Pur.org in Apollo system.

PATH:- SPRO → ES → def → Mat Mgt →

Maintain pur.org → create & save.

Step2: Assign Pur.org to comp.code & plant.

PATH: SPRO → ES → Assignment → Mat Mgt →

assign Pur.org to comp.code & plant

Step3: Create vendor Master. (XK01)

A/c group : 0001

Recon. A/c : 160000.

cash Mgt grp: A1

Order currency : INR

Step4: create Material

Step5: Maintain Purchase Info Record.

- T-code is ME11

pland. del. time : 1

standard Qty: 100

Net price : 12000

pur. group: 001

price:

- Save it.

- time go to vendor Master (XK02) →

Purchasing data view → Acc. with

vendor : (customer number): 11191

- save it.

Step1: Create customer (810)

Step2: Create Material

Step3: Maintain CMIR (VD51)

Step4: Go to customer master (XD02)

Sales tab → And maintain Acc. at

customer : (vendor number): TALKEIN

then ~~create~~ PO (~~ME21N~~)

- while ~~creating~~

- then go to MM output type (T-code - NACE) select EF - Purchase order and go to output type and go to change mode and double click on NEU output type and in default ~~values~~ tab maintain

  dispatch time : 4

  transmission medium: A

- then Go to the T-code MN04 and Mension output type: NEU then select the ⊙ pur. outp. data: Document type

DOC	fn	Med	Dispatch	Lang
NB	VN	A	4	En

Step1: Maintain distr model (BD64)

- Go to change mode → select the Model view → create new view in distr model.

  Short txt:

  ORDERS

  save it

- then select distr mode and click on Add message type

  LSD800
  LSD810
  ORDERS

  continue & save it

- Again select the distr Model → Go to environment → generate partner profile & execute, go back & save it.

- then Go to T-code VOE4

- New entries

cust	Sl fn	Ext. Partner	Int no
111991	SP	T100 (sender side pur. org)	111991 (same cust no)
111991	SH	T100	111991
111991	BP	T100	111991
111991	PY	T100	111991

- then go to the T-code VOE2

- New entries

cust	vendor	sales ord	sa ty
111991	TALKEN	T100 T1 T1	OR

Step1: check the distr model (BD64)

- Again select the distr model → Edit Model → distribute → continue

Step2: Generate partner profile [WE20]

- Go to Partner type LS → LSD810 → outbound parameters → double click on orders

Basic type: ORDERS05

- Save it.

Step2: create partner Profile [WE20]

Partner type LS → LSD800 → Inbound parameters → create

Inbound parameters →

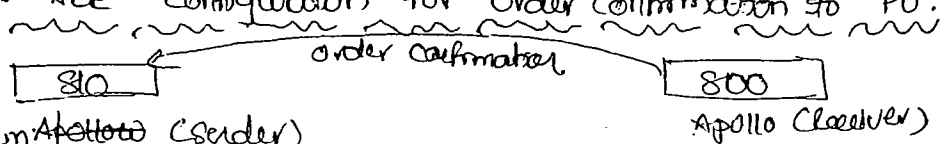
Message type: ORDERS

Process code: ORDE

- Save it.

- then create PO. (ME21N)
  - while creating go to Material data and mension vendor Mat-no: TUAXINE1500.
  and also check medium : A
  dispatch time: 4.
- then save it.
- then go to change mode (ME22N) and check the status [ME]

4: ALE configuration for order confirmation to PO.



Step4: create port. (WE21)

Step5: Maintain distr Model (BD64)

- change mode
- select model view → create distr model.

  Short text: Order confirmation

  Tech name: ORDRSP

- Save it.

- Then select distr model & click on Add message type. sender: LSD810

Receiver: LSD800

Message type: ORDRSP

- save it.

- Again select the distrib model and go to environment → Generate partner profile execute, go back and save it.

- Again select the distrib model and go to edit → Model view → distribute → continue.

Step6: Generate partner profile [WE20]

- Go to partner type LS → LSD800 → outbound parameters → double click on ORDRSP → Basic type: ORDERS05

- Save it.

- Go to output typ BA00 (T-code NACE) and details → default values →

dispatch time: 4

Transmission medium: A

- save it.

- then go to [VV1A] output records & maintain BA00 output type and create & save it.

cust	Gr fn			
111991	SP	A	4	En.

- then create PO. In PO go to confirmation tab & maintain the confirmation control: 0001 Acknowledgement required & save it.

- then in SLO (2) check WE05

Step6: check the distrib mode (BD64).

Step6: create partner profile [WE20]

- Select Partner type LS → LSD810 → Inbound parameters → create Mbout parameters

Message type: ORDRSP

Process code: ORDR

- Save it

Questions

1. what is the fn module for IDoc generation? [Ans: IDOC_~~MESSAGE~~ OUTBOUND_MESSAGE]
2. How many types of Records we have in
3. what is the table for Control record? [EDIDC]
4. Table for Data Record? [EDIDD (or) D4]
5. Table for status Record? [EDIDS]
6. what is your role in IDoc Day to day process?
7. what is the T-code to reprocess the IDoc with same IDOC no.?
8. T-code to reprocess the IDOC with different IDOC no.?
9. T-code to create DISTRI Model?
10. T-code to create Port?
11. T-code to create Partner Profile?
12. T-code to maintain RFC distination?
13. Message type for Material Master?
14. Message type for cust
15. vendor
16. to create PO to SO?
17. for order confirmation?
18. for Deliveries?
19. for Invoice
20. T-code to send Material Master?
21. customer master?
22. vendor master?
23. T-code to view Idoc number?
24. what is the IDOC Direction for outbound?
25. Inbound?
26. what are the message numbers for outbound?
    Inbound?

(28) what is the success msg for outbound?

(29) failure

(30) success inbound?

(31) failure inbound?

(32) Can we generate same IDOC for more than one customer?

Ans. No. Each customer will have seperate

(33) suppose there is one sender and 3 receivers. then while generating idoc will it generate 3 IDOC or 1. [Ans: 3]

(34) Common T-code for ALE. EDI?

(35) what is your role in extended IDOC types?

(36) what are the transactions we have? [we use PI]

(37) medium for ALE? (A)

(38) Medium for EDI? (6)

(39) T-code for new IDOC creation [WE30]

(40) T-code for message type creation [WE81]

(41) segment creation [WE31]

- segment consist of fields.

(42) assign message type to IDOC type [WE82]

(43) Explain what scenario's you worked on ALE: IDOCS?

- In Intercompany when you do Intercompany invoice.
- my client has vendor.

DEBUGGING

- It is the process of finding out the errors.

F7 - Return step

F8 - Breakpoint to breakpoint (or) come out of debugging.

3. forcely passing the parameters to transaction:-

- for example in billing (no Accounting doc generated).
- then go to - VF02 and enter [/H] in T-code bar and click on Release to accounting. then enter.
- then in main menu select

LSMW (Legacy System Migration work Bench).

- It is a tool which will help to upload the data from legacy to SAP.
- the T-code for LSMW is - LSMW & Enter.
- mension the project: Go: ACUST
  Subproject: AACUST
  object: AAACUST & click on create
- then give some description:
  object descr: & Execute.
- then select Maintain, object attributes and click on attributes then go to change mode → select ⊙ Batch input recording and click on Recordings overview → click on create record.
- mension the Recording (name): XD01
  Descrp: customer master upload
- continue...
- then mension the Transaction code: XD01 & continue...
- And mension customer: 10033)
  Comp-code: A100
  Sales Org: A100
  Distr chal: A1
  Div: A1
  Account group: 0001 (1000) and continue
- then mension the name: LSMW Test customer.
  search term: ALK
  city: Hyd Country: IN
  Language key: EN Postal code:

Transportation zone: 0000001 Recon A/c:

ship cond: Tax classification:

- Enter and enter and save it.
- After save double click on the field which you entered in record.

  Ex: Name : RUNNR
  Name : cust number
  Default value: (Remove) and continue
- likewise do it for all the field that you have maintained
- We will only make constant (Default value) for Account group and language.
- then save it. then go back and ⊙ batch press f4 & save it.
- then select Maintain source structure and click on execute
- go to change mode & click on Create

  Description:
  Source structure: ASOURCE and save it.
- then select Maintain source fields
- go to change mode select the source (ASOURCE) and click on table Maintenance. then mension fields names one by one

Ex:

field Name	type	Length	field description
customer	C	10	cust number
co.code	C	4	company code
sorg	C	4	sales org
Dstch	C	2	distribution channel.

- likewise mension all the fields that you have maintained above customer.
- save it.

- then select Maintain Structure relations & Execute
- Go to change mode & save it.
- then go back and select Maintain field mapping and conversion rule and & execute.
- then go to change mode → select the field (RUNNER eg) and click on [source field] and customer
- like wise do it for all the fields.
- for constant fields like Language and Account group, select those field and click on [constant] and select the related name.
- save it.
- then go back and select the specify files and click on & Execute.
- before going to this step keep ready of source file.

  eg: customer
  10033)
- then go to change mode select Legacy Data on the PC (frontend) and click on Create. ☐
  - then select the file : C:/...

    Name : cust

    Delimiter : ⊙ Tabulator.

    file structure: ☑ field Names at start of file
  - capture & Save it.
- then go back and select Assign files and & Execute.
- go to change mode and save it.
- Go back and select Read data and & Execute

- Again & Execute
- Go back and select Display Read data & & Execute continue and check the fields & values.
- then go back select convert data and execute &.
- Again & Execute.
- then go back and select Display converted Data and check the data
- then go back and select create batch input session and execute, again & Execute
- then finally go back and select Run batch input session and execute.
- then select the Session Name & click on process
- then select foreground and process.

BDC - BAPI

BDC - Batch Data Communication.

BAPI - Business Application Programming Interface.

- BDC and BAPI are the tools which will help to upload the data from legacy to SAP.
- the difference b/w BDC & BAPI is BDC will upload the data screen by screen but BAPI will directly upload the data into database tables and fields.

functional consultants role in BDC & BAPI :-

- first fn consultant has to do Recording (T-code - SHDB) and while doing Recording simultaneously prepare excel sheet and mention the field in the same sequence in which you are doing record.
- then prepare one more excel sheet (excel sheet-2) in which maintain technical names of the fields which we entered in Record then send excel sheet1 to core user, then core user will fill the data in excel sheet1.
- then send the Recording name and excel sheet2 to ABAPer. then ABAPer will develop the BDC / BAPI and assign one T-code and send the T-code to functional consultant. then fn consultant will first go to quality server and executes the T-code when execute the T-code system will ask for the file name. then mention the file name provided by core user and execute. If everything is fine then finally we go to production server and upload the data.

Process :-

- Go to the T-code

  Recording : AVA01

  Transaction code : VA01

  click on start Recording.

- then mension order type : OR

  Sorg : A100

  Distr chan : A1

  division : A1 enter

- then provide SP, PO number, Mat, Qty and save it. (take recording Name

- the prepare one excel sheet with mensioned fields.

Eg: Ord type	Sorg	distrchn	div	SP	PO	Mat	Qty

- then create another excel sheet with Recording Name and VA01

BACKGROUND JOB

- Doing the transactions in the background w/o the help of endusers.
- The T-code to create background job is SM36.
- mension some jobname (eg: ZBILL) and click on Job wizard and click on continue and mension Jobname: ZBILL and click on continue then select ABAP program step and click on continue
- To get the program go to the T-code which you want to do background job (eg: VF04) and go to maintenance → System → Status → take the program
- then mension the ABAP Program name: SDBILLDC
  variant: ZVAR (create & mension here)
  and click on continue and continue in next page and select the @ Immediately and click on continue and continue in next page then click on Complete
- To see the job status, go to the T-code SM37
  - mension the job Name: ZBILL and execute

VARIANT CONFIGURATION

- Variant Material :-

A product having different characteristics. eg: CAR, LAPTOPS, furniture, Aircraft..etc.

- The Purpose of variant configuration :-

  - It will help to simplify the maintenance of master data.
  - Variant configuration will help to choose the correct product for dispatch

Variant
↓
class → configurable Material
↓
characteristics → Dependencies
↙ ↓ ↘
value1 value2 value3

LAPTOP :-

LAPTOP

RAM	Processor	Harddisk	10" (Screen)
2GB	i3	250GB	12"
4GB	i5	500GB	
8GB	i7	1GB	15"

Configuration :-

- Create characteristics (T-code - CT04)

PATH :- Easy Access → Logistics → central functions → variant configuration → Environment → classifications → Master data → CT04 - characteristics

eg: characteristic : ARAM & click on create ☐

Description: RAM

Datatype : CHAR

Number of characters : 25

- Single value
- Multiple value.

- If you select single value then you will get radio button. If you select multiple value then you will get checkbox.

- then go to values tab and mension the char. values.

char. value	Description
2GB	2GB RAM
4GB	4GB RAM
8GB	8GB RAM

- Save it.
- Like wise create all other (Processor, Hard disk, screen) characteristics also.
- Create one extra characteristic for price and maintain all the values.

characteristics : Price

Data type : CHAR

No. of char : 25 ◉ Single value and go to additional data and maintain Table name : SPCOM Field NAME : VKOND , ☑ Not ready for input.

- In values tab mension all values.

char. value	Description
2GB	2GB RAM
4GB	4GB RAM
8GB	8GB RAM
i3	i3 Processor
i5	i5 Processor
i7	i7 Processor
250GB	250GB HD
500GB	500GB HD
1TB	1TB HD
10in	10 inch
12in	12 inch
15in	15 inch.

- Save it.

(ii) Create class :- T-code is [CL02]

PATH :- Same like characteristic.

- class : ALAPTOP

  class type : 300 then click on create.

  Description : LAPTOP

- then go to characteristics and mension all characteristics including price

  class

  ARAM
  APROCESSOR
  AHRDISK
  ASCREEN
  APRICE

- save.

(iii) Create Configurable Material. (MM01)

- To get Accounting tab go to OMS2 select the material type (KMAT) and go to details, in user department select Accounting and save it

- Material : ALAPTOP

  Mat type : KMAT enter

- Select the classification view also and continue.

- In classification view mension the class (ALAPTOP) and enter.. then go to each and every characteristic, select all and press enter. Don't select for Price.

- Item cat group : 0002, valuation class : 7900

- Create the config. Material and save it.

(iv) Create configurable profile [CU41]

- Select Material and continue, Mension Material : ALAPTOP. and enter.

Priority	Profile Name	class type	
10	LAPTOP	300	and enter.

- then select the line and click on class Assignment
- then select the line and go to Profile detail. and select config initial screen. and select ◎ sales order set
  ◎ single level BOM

Application : SD01

- save it.

v) Define Dependencies :-

- Go to characteristics CT04 (CABAM) and go to values select the 1st value (2GB) and in main menu go to Extras → object dependencies → Editor
  - Select ◎ Procedure and continue

Source code

000010 : $SELF.APRICE = '2GB' and save it.

- like wise select 4GB and 8GB also and maintain source code
- save it.
- like wise do it for other characteristics (APROCESSOR, AHARD DISK, ASCREEN) by selecting each values.

vi) Add VA00 condition type in pricing procedure (V/08)

- place it Below base price and above Base value.

step	cond type
15	VA00

- the cond category (V/06) for VA00 is 'O' (variant).

(vii) Maintain cond Record for PR00 (VK11).

(a) PR00 → ~~AAA~~LAPTOP → 20,000

(b) VA00 → 2GB → 2000

VA00 → 4GB → 4000

→ 8GB → 8000

→ I3 → 3000

→ I5 → 5000

→ I7 → 7000

→ 250GB → 2500

→ 500GB → 5000

→ 1TB → 10,000

→ 10' → 2000

→ 12' → 3500

→ 15' → 5000

20/5/10

SUPER BOM

- Super bom will help to determine the selected characteristic values as components in Sales order.

Step1: Create characteristic values as material (MM01)

Eg: 4GB, 8GB, I5, I7, 500GB, 1TB.. etc.

Step2: Create BOM (CS01)

- Mension the material (BBBCAPTOP) and enter and mension all components.

- select the component and in main menu Extras → Object dependencies → editor → selection conditions and click on continue.

Eg: Source code
000010 BRAM = '4GB'

- likewise select each component and do the procedure.
- save it.

Stock posting:-

- first post the stock for components (MB1C)

Consuming the component stock:-

- T-code - MB1A
- Movement type - 231
- Mension the sales order number., Main item number, and Materials as components.

Eg:

Material	Qty
4GB	10
I5	10
1TB	10

Post the stock for Main item:-

- MB1C
- Movement type 561

- Special stock indicator 'E'
- Order no. and item no.
- Mension Main Material (BBBCAPTOP) - 100ty) and save it document

REBATE

- Rebate is a special kind of discount and its a conditional discount which will be valid over a specific period of time.
- The Prerequisites to process rebates :-

  (i) check rebate proactive in sales org.

  (ii) check Rebates in customer master.

  (iii) check Relevant for Rebate in billing documents.
- Rebate is a Retroactive billing.
- The process of updating the previous billing documents into current Rebate is called as Retro Active billing.
- The T-code for Retro Active billing is VBOF
- The Program for Retroactive billing is SDBONT06
- The Info Structure for Rebates is S060
- We have 3 types of rebates

  1. Group Rebates
  2. Material Rebates
  3. Customer Rebates

Accruals:-

Accruals is a provisional account which will help to keep some money aside from each transaction to meet the future requirement of rebate settement.

Configuration:-

PATH:- SPRO → SOD → Billing → Rebate Processing → Rebate Agreement → Define Agreement type → Double click on define agreement type

- Standard agreement type for Group Rebate 0001
  Material Rebate 0002
  Customer Rebate 0003.

- The T-code to Create Rebate Agreement VB01

Controls:-

(i) Proposed valid from & Proposed valid to:-

- This will help to propose the default validity period while creating Rebate agreement.

(ii) Payment method:-

- This will controls the mode of rebate settement to customers.

(iii) Default status:-

- this will controls what could be the default status when you create rebate agreement.

(iv) Condition type group:-

- cond type group is the link between agreement type and condition type.

Eg. Agr. type — cond type group — Cond type

0002 — 0002 — B002

0001 — 0001 — B001

0003 — 0003 — B003

(V) Verification Levels :-

- this field controls on what basis we verify wether the customer is eligible for rebate or not.

- standard is f - Display totals by payer and Material.

(VI) Different validity period :-

- this field controls whether to differ the validity periods from rebate agreement to condition record.

(VII) Manual Accruals ord type :-

- the Order type to Post Manual Accruals is - "R4"

(VIII) Manual Accruals :-

- To post Manual Accruals Manually then ☑ check manual Accruals.

(IX) Arrangement calender :-

- this calender helps on which date system should allow to post the accruals manually. (Here create one calender, Remove all working days, then go to special rules, and mention the date on which you want to post accruals.

(X) Payment Procedure :-

- this field controls upto which value system should allow to make the payment manually.

(XI) Partial settlemut :-

- the doc type for Partial settlemut is - R3

(XII) Settlemut Period :-

- this is same like arrangement calender.

(XIII) final Settlemut :-

- the doc type for final Settlemut is - B1

(XIV) correction :-

- the doc type for settlemut correction is - B2

(XV) Minimum status :-

- this field controls at which status of rebate agremut system should allow to make the final settlemut.

Step2 :- condition type group:

- NEW ENTRIES

-

A002	-

- save it.

Step3: Assign cond type tables to cond type group :-

- NEW ENTRIES

CtyGg	condtype	
A002	B002	1

Step4: Assign cond type groups to Rebate agremut :-

- Go to your rebate agr type and assign cond type grp.

A002	A002

Steps:- cond tehnic for Rebate processing:-

- Maintain Condition tables for Rebates:-

  Eg: for Material Rebates - S.org / customer / Material

  for customer Rebates - S.org / customer

  for Group Rebates - S.org / Volume Rebate group

- Maintain Access sequence:-

Eg:

AS	type
A002	1

- Define condition type:-

- the standard cond type for Group Rebate B001
  Material Rebate B002
  Customer Rebate B003

- copy and A002. Save it.

- the cond class for Rebate cond type is 'C' - Expense Reimbursment.
  calc. type - 'A' - percentage.

- Maintain pricing procedure:-

- Requirement 24 check that the document should be billing document. that is the reason rebate cond type will be determined only in billing document.

- ~~Go to Netvalue step~~

- for Rebate cond type Maintain from as Netvalue step.

- Go to Netvalue Step and maintain Subtotal as 7.

- for Rebate cond type A/c key is ERB, Accruals is ERU

- Save it.

- Go back to cond type groups and go to assign cond type tables to cond type group and assign your own cond type and cond table

Step6: Account determination for Rebates:-

- Double click on assign G/L Accounts
- Go to any combination and assign the newly created G/L Accounts.

APP	Con type	ChA	SOrg	ACRY	G/L Ac	Provisional AC
V	KOFF	ENT	A100	ERB	800023	
V	KOFF	ENT	A100	ERU	800024	800024

Step7: Activate Rebate Processing

- this is prerequisite for Rebate
- Create Rebate Agreement (VB01)

  Agreement type: A002 and enter

  - Rebate Recipient: customer number
- then select conditions

Material	Amount	Accruals
VAREN1500	10%	4

- then go to scales and mention the quantity.

scale	Qty
from	1000

- then save it.
- If you are running VBOF tcode for updating previous billing doc into rebate then ☑ uncheck test.

LIS (Logistics Information System).

- Its a management Reporting tool.

Advantages of LIS Reports

(1) Execution time is very less (Bcoz LIS reports we fetch data from structure).

(2) In LIS we have Drilldown option

Configuration:-

PATH:- SPRO → Log-General → Logistics-Information system → Logistics Data wharehouse → updating → updating control → settings: sales → statastics groups → Maintain statastic groups for customers

- In this configuration step you can define your own cust-stat-grp

Eg: 1 - Relev. statastic

2 - Not rel. statastic.

Step2: Maintain statastic grp for material

- In this config. step we define new statatistic grp for material.

Eg: 1 - Relev. stat

2 - Not relev. for stat.

Step3: Maintain statistic group for sales document:-

Eg: 1 - Order, Debit memo

2. Returns, Credit memo

Step4: Assign stat. grp for each sales doc type:-

Eg: OR - 1
DR - 1
RE - 2
CR - 2 ..etc

FD - -
SDF - -
IN - -
QT - -

Step5: Assign stat-grps for each sales doc. item type:-

eg: AFN - - TAN - 1 G2N - 2
AGN - - RGN - 2

Step6: Determine billing document type relevant to statistics:-

eg: f2 - stat ☑ RE - stat ☑ check
f5 - ☐ uncheck G2 - ☑ check
f6 - ☐ uncheck L2 - ☑ check

Step7: update group → Assign update grp at item level.

- Go to "NEW ENTRIES" - Sorg: A100
Dchan: A1
Div: A1
cust-stat-grp: X
Mat-stat-grp: X
statgrp sales doc: 1
statgrp doc item: 1
update group: 1

- Save it.

- Maintain another combination - Sorg: A100
Dchan: A1
Div: A1
: X
: X
: 2
: 2
: 2

Step8: Assign update group at header Level

Sorg: A100 cust-stat-grp: X
Dchan: A1 Statgrp sales doc: 1
Div: A1 update grp: 1

- Save it.

- likewise maintain for 2 also.

S.Org: A100

DChan: A1

DIV: A1

Step 9: Defining Info Structure

PATH:- SPRO → Log-Gen → LIS → Log-data warehouse → Databases → Information structures → Maintain- self defined Info Structure → double click on create

- Infostructure starts with S & Number. And user defined Info. Structure number should be above 500

Eg: Info. Structure : S503 : New Info.

Application : 01

- Enter
- Info structure will have characteristics and key figures.

characteristics means - input parameters.

key figure means - output parameters.

- click on choose characteristics
  - Double click on SD: Article (order) and choose required fields.

    SD: Bus Trans (Order)
  - then click on copy+close, and click on copy and Generate it
- choose key figures and double click on SD: Additional key figures

Eg:- Incoming orders (value)

Incoming order Qty

Open orders Qty

Open orders (value)

Billing Qty

Sales (Billing value)

- then click on "copy + close", and click on copy, then click on Generate."
- Save it.

Step 10: updating → updating definition → Specific def using update rules → Maintain update rules → Create

- Mention Info. structure : Es: S503

  update group : 1 and enter.

- then double click on each and every key figure and mention

  Event : VA

  update type: A (cumulative updating)

  Table for Date: MCVBAP

  Date field: ERDAT

  then "copy"

- likewise do it for all key figures. for Billing key figure table for Date is: MCVBRD

  Date field: FKDAT / ERDAT.

- select the 1st key figure and click on Rules for characteristics and click on copy.
- likewise do it for all the key figures.
- for Billing key figures select and click on Rules for characteristics and change the tables. ∞

Es: Material	MCVBRP	MATNR
plant	MCVBRP	WERKS
Sales doc	MCVBRP	AUBEL
SP	MCVBRP	KUNAG

- Do it same for Sales (Billing Value) and click on Generate.
- After generate click on updating then double click on your Info. Structure and ① Day
  ② Asynchronous updating (2)
- then continue and save it.

Step II: Go to customer master and material master and maintain stat group as '1' (Es.x).

The T-code to execute Info structure is MCSI

- Go to MCSI and double click on your info. structure (S503)

updating the past data into LIS Report:-

PATH:- SPRO → Log-Gen → Log-Info. sys → Logistic data warehouse → Data basis → tools → Setup of statistical data → Application specific setup of stat data → Perform setup sales and distribution → double click on setup: copy/Delete versions

- Info structure: S503 and click on delete version and ② execute and click on yes.

- then go back and select SIS: setup orders

mission Info. structure to be setup: S503
version: &CA
Name of run: PROP1
Termination Date: 21.05.2015
Termination Tim: (mention as future time)
☑ Redetermine update group.
No. tolerated faulty docs: 999

- Execute

- then go back and double click on SLS: Setup Billing

Info structure : S503

Save under version: &CA

Name of Run: PROP1

Termin. Date: 21.05.2015

Termin. Time: future time

☑ Redetermine update gap

- Execute

- then go back and double click on Setup: copy / delete version.

— version info structure : S503

and click on copy version

Source version: &CA

Target version: 000 (Always) and Execute

STATUS PROFILE

- It is a
- After creating sales order by enduser the order will be sent to authorised people to crosscheck and release. After release then only system will allow to create delivery and invoice.

Config for status profile :-

PATH :- SPRO → S&D → Sales → Sales documents → Define and assign status profile → Define status profile → New Entry

eg: Status Profile : ASTATUS

Text : Status profile test

Maintenance Language : EN and click on continue

- the double click on status profile and maintain

eg:

Status no.	Status	Short text	Initial stat	Low	High	Position
10	A001	user status	☑	10	20	1
20	A002	SM		10	30	1
30	A003	GM		10	40	1
40	A004	FM		10	40	1

- Lowest & Highest controls from which status upto which status

eg:

				Low	High	Position
10	0	End user	10)	10	20	1
20	0	Sales	20)	10	30	2
30	0	GM	30)	10	40	3
40	0	FM	40)	10	40	4

- Position controls whether to display the status in vertical mode or horizontal mode
- Authorization code controls which user will have authorisation to release which status.

- click on object types - ☑ Sales order header.
- then select user status and double click on 1st line status and click on ☐ New entries
- Here we restrict which transaction to block.

Business transaction	forbidden
Billing	⊙
PGI	⊙
Delivery	⊙

- then go back and double click on 2nd line of status and click on ☐ new entries

Create Billing doc	⊙
PGI	⊙

- then go back and select 3rd line and new entries.

Billing	⊙

- In 4th status we allow all.
- save it.

Step2:- Go to your document type and assign status profile.

NOV8 → OR → status profile - ASDA70S1

- the T-code to release the status profile is V.26

mission status: A001

⊙ user status

- ⊙ Execute.

- select the order → Header → status → object status → A002 and save it.
- then it allows to create delivery.
- the table for status profile is JEST.
- And Active status is Inact should be blank.

As per above requirement we need to define 3 authorisation codes.

- place the cursor in Authorisation code, press F1, click on customizing (B_USERSTAT take it) and continue w/o specifying project → select Project system - Define Authoriz. key and click on continue → Define authorization key

Auth key	txt
A000001	SM
A000002	GM
A000003	FM

- then go back and assign Authorisation codes and save it.

10	A001	-
20	A002	A000001
30	A003	A000002
40	A004	A000003

- After configuring status profile we collect SM user ID's, GM user ID's, and FM user ID's from core user and prepare excel sheet and mension authorisation object as B_USERSTAT and MU801 the authorisation codes userwise and send this excel file to BASIS. Then BASIS will give authorisation to user ID's.

- T-code - SU01 → user ID. SAPUSER → change → Roles → F4 →

Roles : * Sales * - Sales order processing → copy

- then double click on the Role → Authorizations → change mode →

☒ change authorization data → [+ Manually]

Authorization object: B_USERSTAT enter

- Expand manual and Activity: Create or delete

Authorz key: A000001

objectcat: VBK

Stat Profile: ASTATUS1

- then Generate. this authorization done by BASIS.

BATCH MANAGEMENT

Configuration:-

PATH: SPRO → Log - General → Batch Mgt → Batch determ & Batch check

- Batch Mgt is also based on cond technic

Step1: cond tables → Define S&D condition tables → Create cond table for Batch Determination.

- Create cond table with the combination of Plant & Material.

Step2: Access sequences → Define S&D A/S

Eg: ABAT - Batch Access

Step3: Strategy types → Define S&D strategy types

Eg: ABAT - ABAT

Step4: Batch Search Procedure definition → Define S&D Procedure

Eg: ABAT01

Step5: Batch Search Procedure Allocation and check Activation → Allo-cate SD search Procedure → NEW ENTRIES

SOrg	Actual	DV	Sales doc ty	Search Proc	check batch
A100	A1	A1	OR	ABAT01	☑

Step6:- Activate Automatic Batch determin SD → Activate ABD for DELIVERY ITEM CATEGORIES

TAN ☑

Step7: Define Selection classes → Create Selection classes

class : ABATCH

class type : 023 and click on H create

Description: FIFO

- we are defining class to determine batch in FIFO method based on expiry dates

  - Go to characteristics tab and mention

    char

    LOBH_VFDAT

- save it.

Steps: Define Sort rule → Create Sort sequence

Sort sequence : 123 (some number) enter

description: sort FIFO and select characteristic and

mention characteristic Ascending

LOBH_VFDAT ☑

Step9: Shelf life expiration date (SLED) → set expiration date check

→ plant → A100 → ☑ BBD/ product - save it.

- then click on Movement type → 101 - 1

561 - 1 - save it.

- Create New material with classification view. (eg: ABT)

- in classification mention class: ABATCH

- In Sales / general plant ☑ Batch Mgt

- In plant data St1 mention Total Shelf Life : 90

min. rem. Shelf life: 10

- save it

- then do MB1C, check batch no, give production date.

step10: Maintain condition Records for Batch

- T-code is VCH1

  - mention strategy type : ABAT

Material	N	Selection type
ABT	5	O

- then go to Selection criteria and mention the class: ABAT
- then go to Sort and mention the sort rule: 123
- Save it.
- Batch split Item cat determination in deliveries

LF
NORM
CHSP
-
TAN

- when you create delivery

Q: client req is they have batches but system should not determine 0 qty line item in Invoice.? (Invoice - check billing rel. m/t

Ans:

RICEF - Reports
- Interface
- Conversions
- Enhancement
- forms

23/6/18

AUTOMATIC PACKING

SPRO → LE → Shipping → packing → packing control by item category

- Go to item cat and maintain packing control as A or '-'

  A - Must be packed.

Step1: Define Packaging material types

- Go to New ENTRIES

  Pack. mat. type : A001 : CARTON

  Pack. Mat. cat : C Packaging material

  Number Assgmnt: B

  Int. Interval : 01

- save it.

Step3: Define Material group for Packaging Materials

- New ENTRIES

  Eg: A100 - Box Packing

- save it

Step4: Define allowed Packaging Materials

- New ENTRIES

Mat grp PM	Packmat type
A100	A001

- save

Step5: Go to Actual Material → Sales General/plant → All grp packing Materials: A100

- save it.

Step6: Create Packaging Material (MM01)

Material: ACARTON

Industry Sector: Pharama

Material type: VERP

Item cat grp. VERP

- In sales general plant assign material grp pack Mat: A100

Mat. type packing: A001

- Save it.

Step7: Determination of Packaging Instructions

PATH: SPRO → Log-General → Handling unit Mgt → Automatic Packing

→ Determination of packing instructions. (Based on card technic).

- the standard access sequence is : SHIP

condition type : SHIP

Step8: Maintain packing transaction Profile

- Select '0002' → Details → Determ. Proc. for Pack. Instru : ZSHIP1.

Step9: Maintain card records (POP1)

- Short text: Carton Packing

Item cat	Component	
P	ACARTON	1~~000~~
M	VARNE1500	100

- Go to Admin data and check Profile : 01

- Save it (2A1)

Step10: Go to the T-code POF1

Determination type: SHIP.

- Select Material combination

Material	Packing Instr
VAXINE500	241

- Save it

Step 4:- In delivery types (OVLR) check ☑ Automatic Packing.

-

Return Process in Excise

- whenever customer returns the excisable goods then we create RE with ref to Invoice.

Invoice
↓
Return order
↓ Return Delivery
↓
Return Invoice.

- then go to J1IH and click on Additional Excise

DOC. no: (some no)

comp code:

plant:

Excise grp:

☑ RG23A and enter

Reference: (Mension Return Invoice no.)

BED: (If 400 Qty returned, 400 x 1000 Rs - 12% of BED)

ECS:

SES:

- Save it

- then go to $\boxed{J1IH}$ → other adjustment

Material:

Qty:

Ref-doc: (Return INV) BED: EES: SES:

- Save it.

- Step3: Extract RG23A Register Part 2

- T-code is $\boxed{J2I5}$

- Step4: T-code to do transfer the return stock to unrestricted stock

$\boxed{MB1B}$ - Movement type: 453.

Step5.. In CIN configuration assign 657 - RG23A
453 - RG1

- when you transfer the stock from Return stock to unrestricted stock then it updates to RG1 Register.

MATERIAL LISTING / EXCLUSION

- Listing means allowing some materials to customers for sale.
- Exclusion means Restricting some mat to customers for sale.
- Listing / Exclusion is also based on cond technique.

PATH:-

SPRO → SD → Basic fns → Listing / Exclusion

- The standard cond table is: 1 (customer / Material)

Access sequence: A001 (Listing), B001 (Exclusion)

condition type: A001 (Listing), B001 (Exclusion)

procedures: A00001 (Listing), B0000 (Exclusion)

- Activate listing / exclusion by sales doc type.

Sales	Listing	Exclusion
OR	A00001	B00001

- optimise access is most-specific to most general, if we have multiple condition tables.
- condition Record Maintenance - VB01

- List / Exc. type : A201
  - X -
  - Y -
- List / Excl type: B001
  - Z -

ITEM PROPOSAL

- Listing of materials which customers regularly orders and calling that list while creating sales order which will save the time of end user.
- the T-code to create Item proposal is : VA51
- the Item proposal type is : PV
- Go to VA51, mention some description: list of materials

Valid from: Valid to:

Material	Target Qty
X	10
Y	5
Z	5

- Save it. (50000033)
- then go to customer master and assign item proposal number. (XD02 ⇒ Sales area → sales → Item proposal).
- while creating order (VA01), enter customer and click on Item proposal

CROSS SELLING

- selling additional Products along with the main product
- cross selling is also based on cond technic
- Item category determination for cross selling

OR
NORM
CSEL
TAN
TAN

PATH:- SPRO → SDD → Basic fns →

Cross selling → Define determ Proced. for cross selling.

- the standard cond table : 11 (Material combination)

  Access sequence: C001

  cond type : Z001

  Procedure : Z00001

- Maintain customer/ Document Procedure for cross selling
- Assign doc procedure for cross selling to sales doc type

Satype	PP DOC Proce
OR	b

- Go to cust Master (XD02) and assign PP cust Proce : [b]
- Define and assign cross selling profile
  - Define cross selling profile

    Cross selling Prof: A00001

    cross sell proc. proce: Z00001
  - Save it
  - Assign cross-selling profile
  - we assign cross selling profile to the combination of sales area PP Doc Proc, B & PP cust Proc. B

OS	SOG	DChal	Dve	PP DOC Pro	PP cust Doc	CS Profile
	A100			B	B	A00001

- the T-code to maintain cross selling [VB41]

Material determ type: Z001

Material	Material
VAXINE1500	A

- Save it.
- Create the sales order

LOG OF INCOMPLETENESS

- It is the process of listing of mandatory fields which user has to enter while creating sales order. If any of the mandatory field is missing then either system will not allow to save the sales doc. or even if system allow to save the status of doc should be incomplete

PATH: SPRO → EDD → Basic fn's → Log of Incomplete Items → define incompleness procedures.

- select the group Header or Item or Schedule line and double click on Procedures → change mode
- New entries

A1 - New procedure.

- then select the procedure & double click on fields

Table	Fld Name	Screen
VBRD	ZTERM	KDE3
VBRD	INCO1	KDE3
VBRD	BSTKD	KBES

- Save it.

- Assign incompleteness procedure → Assign proc. to sale doc. type

Sale	Proc
OR	A1

- Define status groups
- New entries

Sa	General	Del	Bill
A1	☐	☐	☐
A2			
A3			

- status group controls which transactions to block if the field is missing.
- then go back to Define incomple Proc and assign status group

VBRD - ZTERM - KDE3 - A3
VBRD - INCO1 - KDE3 - A2
VBRD - BSTKD - KBES - A1

-

Tables & field Names

① customer Master :-

Table	field	field Name
KNA1	* LZONE	Transport. zone
	* KUNNR	customer number1
	* LAND1	country key
	* NAME1	Name1
	* ORT01	City
	* PSTLZ	Postal code
	* REGIO	Region
	* STRAS	House no. & street
	* ADRNR	Address
	MCOD1	search term
	* KTOKD	customer A/c group
	* KUKLA	cust. classification
	* NIELS	Nielson ID
	ORT02	District
	COUNC	country code
	RPMKR	Regional Market
	BRAN1	Industry code1
	UMSAT	Annual sales
	* BRSCH	Industry
	* SPRAS	Language
KNB1	(company code)	
	AKONT	Recon. Account
	ZTERM	Terms of payment
	XZVER	Payment History Record
	BUKRS	company code & KUNNR)
KNVP	(Cust. Partner functions)	
	VKORG	Sales organisation
	VTWEG	Distr. channel
	SPART	Division
	PARVW	Partner function
	KNREF	Number of contact person.
	KUNN2	cust. no. of Business partner.
	PARZA	Partner counter.

Table	field	field Name
KNVI	(cust. mast. Tax indicator)	
	ALAND	Departure country
	TATYP	Tax category
	TAXKD	Tax class. for customer.
	* KUNNR	cust. no.
KNVV	(cust. mast. Sales Data)	
	VERSG	cust. stat. Group
	LOEVM	Deletion flag for cust. (Sales)
	KALKS	cust. pric. procedure
	KDGRP	cust. group
	BZIRK	Sales District
	KONDA	Price group
	PLTYP	Price list
	AWAHR	Order probability
	INCO1	Incoterms1
	INCO2	Incoterms2
	KZAZU	Order combination
	LPRIO	Delivery priority
	VSBED	Shipping conditions
	PERFK	Invoice dates
	PERRL	Invoice list date
	VWERK	Delivering plant
	VKGRP	Sales group.
	VKBUR	Sales Office
	VSORT	Item proposal
	WAERS	Currency
	KLABC	ABC class
	KTGRD	A/c. Assg. Group of cust.
	BOKRE	customer Rebates
	KURST	Exchange Rate Type
	RDOFF	switch off Rounding
	PODKZ	Relevant for POD.
	AUTLF	complete dell req by law.

MARA - MATNR - Material Number ☑
- MTART - Material Type
- MBRSH - Industry sector
- MATKL - Material Group
- BISMT - old Material Number
- MEINS - Base unit of Measure
- ZEINR - Document Number
- EKWSL - Purchasing value Key
- BRGEW - Gross weight
- NTGEW - Net weight
- VOLUM - volume
- RAUBE - Storage conditions
- TRAGR - Transportation Group
- SPART - Division
- KZKFG - configurable Material
- XCHPF - Batch Mgt
- VHART - Packaging Mat Type
- ATTYP - Material category
- PMATA - Price Reference Material
- MSTAE - x-plant Mat. Status
- MSTAV - x-Dchain. status
- TAKLV - Tax class of Material
- RBNRM - catalogue profile
- MHDRZ - Min. Remaining shelf life
- MHDHB - Total shelf life
- KOSCH - Product Allocation
- RDMHD - Rounding Rule for SLED
- MTPOS MARA - General Item cat. group
-

MVKE - MATNR - Material Number ☑
- VKORG - Sales organisation ☑
- VTWEG - Distr. channel ☑
- VERSG - Mat. stat. Group
- BONUS - volume Rebate grp
- SKTOF - cash discount
- VMSTA - D-chain specific Mat. status
- AUMNG - Min. Order Qty
- LFMNG - Min. Del. Qty
- EFMNG - Min. Make to Order Qty
- SCHMG - Delivery unit
- VRKME - Sales unit
- MTPOS - Item cat. group for Material
- DWERK - Delivering plant
- PRODH - Product Hierarchy
- PMATN - Pricing Ref. Material
- KONDM - Mat. Pricing group
- KTGRM - A/c. Asg. group of Material
- MVGR1 - Mat. group 1
- ZDPRF - Rounding profile

Scenario1 :- I know customer number & I want to know the customer ~~Division~~. Region ?

Ans: SE16N (T-code)
↓
KNA1 (TABLE)
↓
KUNNR (PASS)
↓
REGIO (TAKE)

ABAPER

PASS KUNNR TO KNA1

TAKE KNA1-REGIO

② I know customer number & I want to know A/c. group

Ans: SE16N (T-code)
↓
KNA1 (TABLE)
↓
KUNNR (PASS)
↓
KTOKD (TAKE)

ABAPER

PASS KUNNR TO KNA1

TAKE KNA1-KTOKD

③ I know cust.no. & I want to know Reconciliation A/c

SE16N (T-code)
↓
KNB1 (Table)
↓
KUNNR (PASS)
↓
AKONT (TAKE)

ABAPER

PASS KUNNR TO KNB1

TAKE KNB1-AKONT

④ I know cust.no. & I want to know payment term.

SE16N (T-code)
↓
KNB1V
↓
KUNNR
↓
ZTERM

ABAPER

PASS KUNNR TO KNB1V

TAKE KNB1V-ZTERM

⑤ I know cust no. & I want Tax classification ?

Ans: PASS KUNNR TO KNVI , TAKE KNVI-TAXKD

⑥ I know cust no. & I want cust classification?

Ans: PASS KUNNR TO KNA1 , TAKE KNA1- KUKLA

⑦ I know cust no. & I want the sales district ?

Ans: PASS KUNNR TO KNVV , TAKE KNVV - BZIRK

⑧ I know cust no. & I want to know the delivering plant ?

Ans: PASS KUNNR TO KNVV, TAKE KNVV-VWERK

⑨ I know cust no. & I want to know ship to party ?

Ans: ① PASS KUNNR TO KNVP, ② CHECK KNVP - PARVW = SH ③ TAKE KNVP - ~~PARVW~~ KUNN2

SELGN (T-code)
↓
KNVP (TABLE)
↓
KUNNR (PAIS)
↓
CHECK PARVW = SH (CHECK)
↓
KUNN2 (TAKE)

— whenever we find multiple entries then we go to logic "CHECK"

⑩ I want list of customers who are located in AP.

Ans: SELGN (T-code)
↓
KNA1 (TABLE)
↓
REGIO (PAIS)
↓ LAND1 (PASS)
TAKE (KUNNR)

PASS REGIO (01) TO KNA1
PASS LAND1 (IN) TO KNA1
TAKE KNA1 - KUNNR

(11) I want list of customers whose payment terms is A030?

Ans: PASS ZTERM (A030) TO KNVV, TAKE KNVV - KUNNR

(12) I know cust no. & I want to know payer?

Ans: PASS KUNNR TO KNVP, CHECK KNVP - PARVW = PY, TAKE KNVP - KUNN2

(13) I want list of customers whose Tax classification is 0?

Ans: PASS TAXKD (000) TO KNVI, TAKE KNVI - KUNNR

(14) I know customer number & I want to know the customer classification & cust group.

Ans:

PASS KUNNR TO KNA1, TAKE KNA1 - KUKLA

PASS KUNNR TO KNVV, TAKE KNVV - KDGRP

(15) I know cust no. & I want to know the Bill to party number

PASS KUNNR TO KNVP, CHEK KNVP - PARVW = BP

TAKE KNVP - ~~PARVW~~ KUNN2

(16) I want list of 'A' class customers?

PASS KLABC(A) TO KNVV, ~~CHE~~

TAKE KNVV - KUNNR

(19)

- To get the field information (Technical information of the field) either go to the field, press F1 and click on technical information.
- If you want to see the table data then go to "SE16N" and take the data.
- To get key field information we need to go to "SE11"

27/08/15

PROJECT

- Any clients requirement if you require the help of ABAP'ers then we have to prepare "fs" (functional specification Document).
- In "fs" we will mension the "LOGIC" And logic consist of mainly the Table names and field names.

Customer Master Tables :-

1. KNA1 - General Data
2. KNB1 - company code data
3. KNVV -- Sales Area data
4. KNVI - Tax classification
5. KNVP - Partner functions.

field Names related to Enterprise structure :-

Company code	- BUKRS	Dist. channel	- VTWEG
sales org	- VKORG	Division	- SPART
sales office	- VKBUR	Sales group	- VKGRP
plant	- WERKS	storage loc	- LGORT.
Shipping point	- VSTEL		

Some Important fields :-

Customer number	- KUNNR	Item number	- POSNR
Material number	- MATNR		
Document number	- VBELN		

1) KNA1 - General Data :-

- To Get the field names in tables, go to the T-code [SE11]
- Every table will have key fields. In SE11 T-code we will get the information of keyfields

- Go to SE11, mension the Table name and click on Display (4)

KNA1		KNA1	
KUNNR	☑	Transport. zone	LZONE
Country	LAND1	Language	SPRAS
city	ORT01	Nielson ID	NIELS
Region	REGIO	customer classficn	KUKLA
Name	NAME1	Industry	BRSCH
Search term	SORTL	Account group	KTOKD
Postal code	PSTLZ		

② KNB1 - Company code data:-

KNB1		
customer	KUNNR	☑
Company code	☑	BUKRS
Recon. Account		AKONT
Terms of payment		ZTERM

③ KNVV - Sales Area data:-

KNVV		KNVV	
Cust	☑ - KUNNR	Delivering plant	- VWERK
Salesorg	☑ - VKORG	Incoterm1	- INCO1
Distchan	☑ - VTWEG	Incoterms2	- INCO2
Division	☑ - SPART	payment terms	- ZTERM
sales district	- BZIRK	A/c. Assg. grp	- KTGRD
Sales office	- VKBUR	Cust. stat. grp	- VERSG
Sales grp	- VKGRP	price list	- PLTYP
customer grp	- KDGR	cust. pric. procedure	- KALKS
ABC class	- KLABC	order combination	- KZAZU
Currency	- WAERS	Delivery priority	- LPRIO
price group	- KONDA	Shipping conditions	- VSBED

28/3/15

(4) KNVI – Tax classification control :-

KNVI	
Customer no. ☑	KUNNR
Dep. country ☑	ALAND
Tax category ☑	TATYP
Tax. classification	TAXKD

(5) KNVP – Partner functions :-

KNVP	
Customer no. ☑	KUNNR
Sales org ☑	VKORG
Dist. channel ☑	VTWEG
Division ☑	SPART
Partner function ☑	PARVW
Partner counter ☑	PARZA
Partner number	KUNNR

Scenarios :- Refer page (2) & (3)

MATERIL MASTER TABLES & FIELDS

31/03/15

Tables in Material Master :-

MARA – General Data

MARC – Plant Data

MVKE – Sales Data

MBEW – Accounting Data

MAKT – Material Description.

1) MARA (General Data) :-

MARA table consist of Basic data1, Basic data2, plant data store1, plant data store2.

Some important fields – MATNR – ☑ Material Number.

MARA

MATNR – ☑ – Material Number
MTART – Material Type
MTPOS – Gen. Item category
MATKL – Material group
SPART – Division
BRGEW – Gross weight
TRAGR – Transport. group
TAKLV – Tax class of Material

BISMT – old Material number
NTGEW – net weight
KOSCH – Product allocation.
PRDHA – Product Hierarchy
MEINS – Base unit of Measure
RAUBE – storage conditions.
MHDHB – Total Shelf life
MSTAE – x-plant Mat-status
PMATA – Pricing Reference Material

MARC (sales gen plant data / Purchasing / MRP1 / MRP2 / MRP3 / MRP4)

MATNR ☑ Material Number
WERKS Delivering plant
MTVFP Availability check
XCHAR Batch Mgt
LADGR Loading group
EKGRP Purchasing group

DISMM – MRP Type
DISGR – MRP group
KAUTB – Automatic PO
STRGR – Strategy group
EISBE – Safety stock
WZEIT – RLT

MVKE (Sales org1 / Sales org2)

MATNR ☑ Material Number
VKORG ☑ Sales org
VTWEG ☑ Distr. channel.
VRKME sales unit
MTPOS Item cat. group
DWERK Delivering plant
KONDM Mat. Pricing group.

KTGRM – A/c. Assg. grp of Material.
AUMNG – Min. order Qty
LFMNG – Min. del. Qty
SKTOF – cash Discount
PRODH – Product Hierarchy
VERSG – Mat. stat. group.

MBEW (Accounting

MATNR ☑ Material Number
BWKEY ☑ Valuation Area
BWTAR ☑ Valuation Type
BKLAS Valuation class.

VPRSV – Price control.
STPRS – Standard Price
VERPR – Moving Price

MATNR

MATNR EQ Material Number

SPRAS EQ Language

MAKTX Material Description.

Scenario's :-

① I know Mat no. & I want to know the Material type.

Goto T-code SE16N

↓

TABLE MARA

↓

PASS MATNR

↓

TAKE MTART

PASS MATNR TO MARA

TAKE MARA – MTART

② I know mat no. & I want to know the Item cat group.

PASS MATNR TO MVKE

TAKE MVKE – MTPOS

③ I know Mat no. & I want to know RLT

PASS MATNR TO MARC

TAKE MARC – WZEIT

④ I know Mat no. & I want to know the cost of the material.

PASS MATNR TO MBEW

CHECK IF MBEW – VPRSV = S

THEN TAKE MBEW – STPRS

IF MBEW – VPRSV = V

TAKE MBEW – VERPR

SE16N

↓

MBEW

↓

MATNR

↓

CHECK IF VPRSV = S

THEN TAKE STPRS

IF VPRSV = V

THEN TAKE VERPR

⑤ I know mat no. & I want to know the material description

PASS MATNR TO MAKT

TAKE MAKT – MAKTX

(6) I want list of materials which belongs to third party.

~~SE16N~~ ↓

PASS MTPOS (BANS) TO MVKE

TAKE MVKE - MATNR

(7) I want list of materials which are trading.

PASS MTART (HAWA) TO MARA

TAKE MARA - MATNR

(8) I know mat no. & I want to know tax classification.

PASS MATNR TO MARA

TAKE MARA - TATLV

(9) I want list of customers which are not relevant for plant.

PASS DISMM (NP) TO MARC

TAKE MARC - MATNR

1/4/15

(10) I want list of materials which are Individual Requirement

PASS MTVFP (02) TO MARC

TAKE MARC - MATNR.

(11) I want list of materials whose tax classification is "1"

PASS TATLV (01) TO MARA

TAKE MARA - MATNR

SALES DOCUMENT TABLES & FIELDS

① VBAK (Header Table)

VBELN – Sales doc. number

KUNNR – Cust numbers (sold to party)

ERDAT – Date on which the Record was created.

AUART – Document type.

AUGRU – Order reason

AUDAT – Document Date

VBTYP – Document category, VGTYP – Doc. cat of preceding doc (Ref. doc)

NETWR – Document value (Net value)

LIFSK – Delivery Block

FAKSK – Billing Block.

BSTDK – PO Date, BSTNK – PO Number.

VKORG – Sales organisation

VTWEG – Distribution channel.

SPART – Division.

ERNAM – user Name

VGBEL – Reference document Number → 20000014 → OT ↓ 14967 → OR ↓ VGBEL – 20000014

OBJNR – object Number (status profile)

JEST – (Table for status profile).

– If you want to go to "JEST" table first go to VBAK table take "OBJNR" and pass it to "JEST" table

VSBED – Shipping conditions VDATU – Req. delivery date

Scenario1 :- I know order no. (subsequent doc no.) and I want to know preceding document number.

GO TO SE16N
↓
Table VBAK
↓
PASS VBELN (order no.)
↓
TAKE VGBEL

PASS VBELN TO VBAK
TAKE VBAK – VGBEL.

Scen ②: I know QT number (preceding doc.no.) and I want to know OR no. (subsequent document no.).

⇒ SEIGN
↓
VBAK
↓
VGBEL (Pass QT no.)
↓
VBELN (Take OR no.)

PASS VGBEL TO VBAK

TAKE VBAK - VBELN

Scen ③: I know QT no. & I want to know Inquiry number?

⇒ SEIGN
↓
VBAK
↓
VBELN (Pass QT no.)
↓
VGBEL

PASS VBELN TO VBAK

TAKE VBAK - VGBEL

- (Here the scenario works with Preceding doc.no. & subseq.doc.no.)

To know Preceding document numbers we pass TO VBELN Take VGBE and to know subseq. doc. numbers we pass TO VGBEL Take VBELN

④ I know In no. and I want to know QT no?

SEIGN
↓
VBAK
↓
VGBEL (In no.)
↓
VBELN (Take QT no.)

PASS VGBEL TO VBAK

TAKE VBAK - VBELN

KONV:- Table.

KNUMV - Document condition. (this is the link between Sales document table (VBAK) and pricing table (KONV)

Scen 5 I know Sales

KBETR - Amount

KWERT - Value

KSCHL - condition type

ERDAT - system date

KPOSN - condition line item number.

BSTNK - PO number

BNDDT - valid to (QT)

Scen.5 I know sales order no. & I want to know PROD value.

SEIGN → VBAK → VBELN → KONUMV

PASS

TAKE

SEIGN → KONV → KNUMV → CHECK KSCHL = PROD KWERT

PASS VBELN TO VBAK

TAKE VBAK – KNUMV

PASS KNUMV TO KONV, CHECK KSCHL=PROD

TAKE KONV – KWERT

Scen.6 I know OT number and I want to know sales order no.

SEIGN → VBAK → VGBELN → VBELN

PASS VGBELN TO VBAK

TAKE VBAK – VGBELN

7) I know OR no. & I want to know OT?

PASS VGBELN TO VBAK,

TAKE VBAK – VBELN

8) I know OR no. & I want to know PROD Amount & value.

SEIGN ~~PASS~~ → VBAK → VBELN → KNUMV

SEIGN → KONV → KNUMV → CHECK KSCHL = PROD

~~CHECK~~

TAKE KWERT, KBETR

PASS VBELN TO VBAK

TAKE VBAK – KNUMV

PASS KNUMV TO KONV, CHECK KONV KSCHL=PRO

TAKE KONV – KWERT

TAKE KONV – KBETR

PASS VBELN TO VBAK

TAKE VBAK – KNUMV

PASS VBAK – KNUMV TO KONV – KNUMV

CHECK KONV – KSCHL = PROD

TAKE KONV – KWERT

TAKE KONV – KBETR

(9) I know sales order no. & I want to know Doc. value

PASS VBELN TO VBAK, TAKE VBAK - NETWR

(10) I want list of Return orders?

PASS AUART(RE) TO VBAK, TAKE VBAK - VBELN

(11) I want list of sales orders which are created today.

PASS ERDAT(2.4.15) TO VBAK, TAKE VBAK - VBELN

(12) I know sales order no. & I want to know PO no. & PO date.

PASS VBELN TO VBAK TAKE VBAK - BSTDK,
TAKE VBAK - BSTNK

(13) I know sales order no. & I want to know in number.

PASS VBELN (OR) TO VBAK., TAKE VBAK - VGLBEL (QT)

PASS VBELN TO VBAK, TAKE VBAK - VGLBEL (RN)

— x —

PASS VBELN (OR no.) TO VBAK - VBELN, TAKE VBAK - VGLBEL

PASS VBAK - VGLBEL TO VBAK - VBELN, TAKE VBAK - VGLBEL

(14) I know "in" no. & I want to know "OR"

SELGN	SELGN
↓	↓
VBAK	VBAK
↓	↓
VGLBEL (RN)	VGLBEL (QT)
↓	↓
VBELN (QT)	VBELN (OR)

PASS VGLBEL(RN) TO VBAK - VGLBEL(QT)
TAKE VBAK - VBELN (OR)

PASS VGLBEL(QT) TO VBAK - VGLBEL(
TAKE VBAK - VBELN (OR)

(15) I know "OR" no and I want to know the QT date.

SELGN	SELGN
↓	↓
VBAK	VBAK
↓	↓
VBELN	VBELN
↓	↓
VGLBEL	AUDAT

PASS VBELN (OR) TO VBAK - VBELN
TAKE VBAK - VGLBEL (QT).

PASS VBELN (OR) TO VBAK - VBELN
TAKE VBAK - AUDAT

(16) While creating OR with ref QT' If 'QT' validity period is expired then system should give error message.

TAKE XVBAK - VGBEL

PASS XVBAK - VGBEL TO VBAK - VBELN

TAKE VBAK - BNDDT

IF VBAK - BNDDT < XVBAK - ERDAT GIVE ERROR MESSAGE

2) VBAP (Item Data) Table & fields :-

- VBELN Key Doc number
- POSNR Key Item number
- MATNR Material number.
- PMATN - Pricing Ref. Material
- CHARG - Batch number
- LPRIO - Delivery priority

7) I know sales order no. & I want to know customer Region.

SELGN → VBAK → VBELN → KUNNR

SELGN → KNA1 → KUNNR → REGIO

PASS VBELN TO VBAK

TAKE VBAK - KUNNR

PASS VBAK - KUNNR TO KNA1 - KUNNR

TAKE KNA1 - REGIO.

8) I know sales order no. & I want to know the customers payment terms.

SELGN → VBAK → VBELN → KUNNR

SELGN → KNVV → KUNNR → ZTERM

PASS VBELN TO VBAK

TAKE VBAK - KUNNR

PASS VBAK - KUNNR TO KNVV

TAKE KNVV - ZTERM

- KWMENG - Order Qty
- MATKL - Material group
- PSTYV - Item category
- WERKS - Plant
- VSTEL - Shipping point
- LGORT - Storage location
- UEPOS - Higher level Item number.
- NTGEW - Net weight
- BRGEW - Gross weight
- NETWR - Item value
- WAVWR - Item cost
- VGBEL - Reference doc. number
- BONUS - Volume rebate group

- VGIPOS - Reference item number.
- VRKME - sales unit
- MEINS - Base unit
- MATWA - Material Entered

SPART - Item division
KTGRM - Alc. Assg. grp of Material
KONDM - Mat. prc. group.
ROUTE - Route
SKTOF - cash discount check.

Scenario's :-

① I know saler ord no. & I want to know each line item mat. description.

SE16N	SE16N	PASS VBELN TO VBAP
↓	↓	
VBAP	MAKT	TAKE VBAP-MATNR
↓	↓	
VBELN	MATNR	PASS VBAP MATNR TO MAKT-MATNR
↓	↓	
MATNR	MAKTX	TAKE MAKT-MAKTX

② I know sales ord no. & I want to know the Material Type

SE16N	SE16N	PASS VBELN TO VBAP
↓	↓	
VBAP	MARA	TAKE VBAP-MATNR
↓	↓	
VBELN	MATNR	PASS VBAP-MATNR TO MARA-MATNR
↓	↓	
MATNR	MTART	TAKE MARA-MTART

③ I know sales ord no. & I want to know the cost of each line item.

SE16N	PASS VBELN TO VBAP
↓	
VBAP	TAKE VBAP-WAVWR
↓	
VBELN	
↓	
WAVWR	

④ I know sales ord no. & I want to know 1st line item Ref doc. no.

SE16N	PASS VBELN TO VBAP
↓	
VBAP	PASS VBAP POSNR ~~10~~ = 10
↓	
VBELN	TAKE VBAP-VGBEL
↓	
PASS ~~check~~ POSNR = 10	
↓	
VGBEL	

⑤ I know "OR" number and I want to know profit margin for each and every line item.

SELGN
↓
VBAP
↓
VBELN
↓
NATWR
WAVWR

PASS VBELN TO VBAP

TAKE VBAP NATWR , TAKE VBAP WAVWR

MAKE VBAP-NATWR - (minus) VBAP-WAVWR

⑥ While creating sales order with ref. to "QT" if order qty exceeds QT qty then system should give error msg.

TAKE XVBAP-KWMENG (120)
TAKE XVBAP-VGBEL , TAKE XVBAP-VGPOS

PASS XVBAP-VGBEL TO VBAP-VBELN , PASS XVBAP-VGPOS TO VBAP-POSNR

TAKE VBAP-KWMENG (100)

IF XVBAP-KWMENG > VBAP-KWMENG GIVE error msg.

5/4/15

⑦ while creating sales order with ref to "QT" if order customer & QT customer is different then system should give error message.

TAKE XVBAK-KUNNR

TAKE XVBAK-VGBEL

PASS XVBAK-VGBEL TO VBAK-VBELN

TAKE VBAK-KUNNR

IF XVBAK-KUNNR ≠ VBAK-KUNNR GIVE ERROR MESSAGE

⑧ VBKD (Business Data) :-

Business data is the data which copies into sales doc from cust master sales tab, shipping tab and Billing tab.

Key fields :-

VBELN ⇒ Doc. number

POSNR ⇒ Item number.

VALDT - fixed value date

KURSK - Exchange rate

KONDA - Price group

KDGRP - Customer group

BZIRK - Sales District

~~Price~~ PLTYP - Price list

INCO1 - Incoterm Part1

INCO2 - Incoterms Part2

KZAZU - order combination.

ZTERM - Payment term.

KTGRD - A/c. Assg. grp of customer.

PRSDT - Pricing Date

FKDAT - Billing Date

BSTKD - PO Number

BSTDK - PO Date

VALTG - Additional value days

PODKZ - Relevant for POD

Scenario ① I know sales ord no. & I want to know Payment terms

SELGN
↓
VBKD
↓
VBELN
↓
ZTERM

PASS VBELN TO VBKD

TAKE VBKD-ZTERM

② I know sales order no. & I want the price group and price list.

SELGN
↓
VBKD
↓
VBELN
↓
KONDA
PLTYP

PASS VBELN TO VBKD

TAKE VBKD - KONDA

TAKE VBKD - PLTYP.

③ I know sales order no. & ~~I~~ want to know the A/c Ass grp.

PASS VBELN TO VBKD

TAKE VBKD - KTGRD

④ VBPA - Sales doc partner function(s):-

VBELN	☑	Doc. number
POSNR	☑	Item number
PARVW	☑	Partner fn.
KUNNR		Customer number

Scenario ① I know sales order no. & I want to know the payer no.

SEIGN
↓
VBPA
↓
VBELN
↓
CHECK PARVW = PY
↓
TAKE KUNNR

PASS VBELN TO VBPA

CHECK VBPA - PARVW = PY

TAKE VBPA - KUNNR

2) I know sales OR no. & I want to know the ship to party number.

SEIGN
↓
VBPA
↓
VBELN
↓
CHECK PARVW = SH
↓
KUNNR

PASS VBELN TO VBPA

CHEK VBPA - PARVW = SH

TAKE VBPA - KUNNR

3) VBEP schedule line Data :-

VBELN ☑ Document no.
POSNR ☑ Item number
ETENR ☑ schedule line number
ETTYP schedule line category
LFREL - Item rel. for delivery

EDATU - schedule line Date
BMENG - Confirmed Qty
VRKME - Sales unit
MEINS - Base unit
BANFN - Purchase req. number.

Scen ① I know sales OR no. & I want to know the sched. line cat

PASS VBELN TO VBEP, TAKE VBEP - ETTYP.

② I know OR no. & I want confirmed Qty?

PASS VBELN TO VBEP, TAKE VBEP - BMENG.

4) VBUK Header status :-

VBELN ☑ DOC. NO.
BESTK - confirmation status
LFSTK - Delivery status

WBSTK - Goods movement PGI status
FKSTK - Billing status
BUCHK - Posting status of Billing doc.

FKSAK - Billing status (order related billing)

GBSTK - Overall status

CMGST - Overall status of credit check.

PDSTK - POD status

ABSTK - Rejection status VBTYP - Document category

<u>scenario①</u> I know OR no. & I want to know wether it is confirmed or not.

PASS VBELN TO VBUK, ~~CHEK~~ CHECK VBUK - BESTK = 'C' or 'A'

② I know OR no. & I want to know credit status of the order.

PASS VBELN TO VBUK, ~~CHECK~~ TAKE VBUK - CMGST = ~~A or B or C~~

③ I know OR & I want overall status

PASS VBELN TO VBUK, TAKE VBUK - GBSTK.

⑦ <u>VBUP (Item status) table</u> :-

VBELN ☑ Doc. no.

POSNR ☑ Item no.

LFSTA - Delivery status

WBSTA - Goods movement status

FKSTA - Billing status (del. rel)

FKSAA - Billing status (ord. rel)

ABSTA - Rejection status

GBSTA = overall status (Processing status

BESTA - Confirmation status

PDSTA - POD status

Scenario① I know OR no. & I want each line item confirmation status

PASS VBELN TO VBUP, TAKE VBUP - BESTA

⑧ <u>KONV (Pricing Table)</u> :- (we use after doc saved)

KNUMV ☑ Doc. condition number.

KPOSN ☑ Cond. item number

STUNR ☑ Step Number

ZAEHK ☑ Condition Counter.

KSCHL Condition Type

KAWRT - Cond Base value

KBETR - cond amount / percentage.

WAERS - Currency

KWERT - cond value

KDATU - Pricing date

KINAK - Condition is Inactive

Scen① I know OR no. & I want to know the 1st line item PR00 value

SE16N → VBAK → VBELN → KNUMV

SE16N → KONV → KNUMV, KPOSN(10) → KSCHL = PR00 → TAKE KWERT

PASS VBELN TO VBAK

TAKE VBAK - KNUMV

PASS VBAK-KNUMV TO KONV - KNUMV

PASS KPOSN(10) TO KONV - KPOSN

CHECK KONV - KSCHL = PR00

TAKE KONV - KWERT

② I know sales OR no. & I want tax value

SE16N → VBAK → VBELN → KNUMV

SE16N → KONV → KNUMV → KSCHL = MWST → TAKE KWERT

PASS VBELN TO VBAK, TAKE VBAK-KNUMV

PASS VBAK-KNUMV TO KONV - KNUMV

CHECK KONV - KSCHL = MWST

TAKE KONV - KWERT.

③ Pricing structure :- (we use while doc creating)

- Table will store the data.
- structure will not store the data. structure will help to give the information while doing transactions.
- The structure is KOMV
- whatever the fields we have in KONV, the same fields we have in KOMV structure.

Scenario① while creating sales order, I want to know PR00 amount and value.

~~SE16N~~ ↓

CHECK XKOMV - KSCHL = PR00

TAKE KOMV - KWERT

TAKE KOMV - KBETR

② - the other structures are KOMK Header pricing related fields:-

eg: price group, price list, doc. cat, doc type, cust grp. etc ..

Eg: field catelog information

KONP - Item pricing Related fields:

Eg: Mat pric. group, pricing ref. material, etc., item category, weight.

6/4/15

Delivery Document Tables & fields

① LIKP Table (Delivery ~~Doc~~ Header Tables & fields)

VBELN - Delivery doc number

ERDAT - Date on which record was created.

BZIRK - Sales District

VSTEL - Shipping point

VKORG - Sales org.

KUNNR - Ship to party

KUNAG - Sold to party

KDGRP - Cust group.

NTGEW - Net weight

WADAT_IST - Goods movement Date

LFART - Delivery Type

KZAZU - Order combination

INCO1, INCO2 -

LFDAT - Delivery Date

VBTYP - Document category

ROUTE - Route

LPRIO - Delivery priority.

VSBED - Shipping conditions

BTGEW - Total weight

VKBUR - Sales office

AUTLF - complete delivery check box

Scenario① I know Del. no. & I want to know Sold to party

SELGN
↓
LIKP
↓
VBELN
↓
KUNAG

PASS VBELN TO LIKP

TAKE LIKP - KUNAG

② I know Delivery no., and I want to know SH

PASS VBELN TO LIKP, TAKE LIKP - KUNNR

③ I know Delivery no., & I want to know the Goods mov. Date?

PASS VBELN TO LIKP, TAKE LIKP - WADAT_IST

④ I know Del. no., & I want to know Del. Date?

PASS VBELN TO LIKP, TAKE LIKP - LFDAT

⑤ I want list of Deliveries with Del. Type "LO".

PASS LFART (LO) TO LIKP, TAKE LIKP - VBELN

(6) I want LIST of Deliveries which are created today.

PASS ERDAT (DD.MM.YY) TO LIKP, TAKE LIKP-VBELN

2) LIPS (Delivery Item tables & fields

VBELN ☑ Del. Doc. number

POSNR ☑ Item number.

PSTYV - Del. Item cat

MATNR - Material no.

MATWA - Material Entered. (Mat. Determ. main / item)

MATKL - Material group.

BDART - Requirement type

BWART - movement type

VGBEL - Ref. Doc. Number

WERKS - plant

LGORT - storage location

CHARG - Batch number

MEINS - Base unit of measure

VRKME - Sales unit

NTGEW - net weight

BRGEW - Gross weight

MTART - Material Type

SPART - Division.

VGPOS - Ref. Item. Number.

LFIMG - Del. Qty

Scenario (1) I know Del. no' & I want "OR" no

SELON
↓
LIPS
↓
VBELN
↓
VGBEL

PASS VBELN TO LIPS, TAKE LIPS-VGBEL

2) I know OR & I want Del. no.

PASS VGBEL TO LIPS, TAKE LIPS-VBELN

3) while creating del. if del. qty exceeds ord qty then system should give error msg. (one OR - one del)

TAKE XLIPS-LFIMG (50)

TAKE XLIPS-VGBEL, TAKE XLIPS-VGPOS

PASS XLIPS-VGBEL TO VBAP-VBELN

PASS XLIPS-VGPOS TO VBAP-POSNR

TAKE VBAP-KWMENG (10)

IF XLIPS-LFIMG > VBAP-KWMENG GIVE error

(4) While creating Delivery (1) S10 process if del. qty exceeds PO qty then system should give error message.

TAKE XLEPS-LFIMG (x)(30)

TAKE XLEPS- VGIBEL

TAKE XLEPS - VGPOS

PASS XLEPS-VGIBEL TO EKET-EBELN

PASS XLEPS-VGPOS TO EKET-EBELP

TAKE ~~XLEPS~~ EKET - WAMNG (75) Y

TAKE ~~XLEPS~~ EKET- MENGE (Z) 100

If x+y > Z give error.

PO Tables
EKKO
EKPO
EKET
Fields
EBELN - PO number
EBELP - PO. item number
MENGE - PO Qty.
WAMNG - Issued Qty.

eg: PO(100)(MENGE)

DelQty del.qty (LFIMG)

30 45 DelQty 25 (Exceeded) Error

(WAMNG)

7/4/15

(5) I know Delivery no. & I want to know PGI. Date

PASS VBELN TO LIKP, TAKE WADAT-IST

(6) I know Del no. & I want to know wether PGI made or not

PASS VBELN TO VBUK, CHECK VBUK WBSTK = 'C' or 'A'

(7) while creating delivery if Del qty exceeds order qty then system should give error message. Case of - Multiple Del.

OR (100)

Del 30 Del 45 Del 30

TAKE XLEPS - LFIMG (X) (DelQty)

TAKE XLEPS- VGIBEL, TAKE XLEPS- VGPOS

PASS XLEPS-VGIBEL TO VBAP - VBELN

PASS XLEPS- VBPOS to VBAP- POSNR

TAKE VBAP - KWMENG (Z)

PASS XLEPS - VGIBEL (ord.no) TO LEPS- VGIBEL (will get deliveries)

PASS XLEPS- VGPOS (ord. item no's) TO LEPS- VGPOS (will get del. item)

Cumulate LEPS - LFIMG (Y)

If x+y > Z then give error message.

(8) I know Del. no. & I want to know the POD status.

PASS VBELN TO VBUK, TAKE VBUK- PODSTK

(9)

Billing Tables :- & fields :-

① VBRK table

VBELN ☑ Doc-number
FKART - Billing Type
FKTYP - Billing category
VTWEG - Distr channel
KNUMV - Doc. condition
INCO1 - Incoterms 1
INCO2 - Incoterms 2
KTGRD - A/c. Assg. grp of cust.
LAND1 - country of destination
ERDAT - Date on which Record created.
KUNRG - Payer
KUNAG - Sold to party
FKDAT - Billing Date
BELNR - Accounting Doc. no.
KONDA - Price group
KDGRP - customer group
BZIRK - Sales District.
PLTYP - Price list
RFBSK - A/c. Doc. status
ZTERM - Terms of payment
REGIO - Region.
BUKRS - comp. code
SPART - Division
MWSBK - Tax amount
FKSTO - Billing doc is cancelled
x - means cancelled
'-' - not cancelled.

② VBRP table :-

VBELN ☑ Doc-number
POSNR ☑ Item number
FKIMG - Billing Qty
MATNR - Material number
VRKME - Sales unit
MEINS - Base unit
NTGEW - Net weight
BRGEW - Gross weight
SPART - Division
WERKS - plant
ALAND - Dep. country
LGORT - Storage location
WAVWR - Cost
KZWI1 - Subtotals
KZWI2, KZWI3, KZWI4, KZWI5, KZWI6 - Subtotals.
NETWR - Item value
VGBEL - Ref. doc. no.
VGPOS - Ref. Doc. item no
VGTYP - Ref. Doc. category
AUBEL - Sales order no.
AUPOS - Sales order item no.
MATKL - Mat group
PSTYV - Item category
VSTEL - shipping point
KONDM - Mat prc group
PRSFD - pricing field in item category
SKTON - Cash discount check box
KTGRM - A/c. Assg. grp of material
VKGRP - Sales group
VKBUR - Sales office

(1) I know Billing doc. no. & I want to know sales order no.

SE16N
↓
VBRP
↓
VBELN
↓
AUBEL

PASS VBELN TO VBRP.

TAKE VBRP- AUBEL

(2) I know Billing doc. no. & I want to know Del no.

PASS VBELN TO VBRP

TAKE VBRP- VGBEL

(3) I know Billing doc. no. & I want to know A/c. doc is generated or not.

PASS VBELN TO VBRK

~~TAKE~~ CHECK VBRK- RFBSK

(4) I know Billing doc. no. & I want to know A/c. doc. no

PASS VBELN TO VBRK

TAKE VBRK- BELNR

(5) I know Billing doc. no. & I want to know whether it is cancelled or not.

PASS VBELN TO VBRK

CHECK VBRK- FKSTO = 'X' or '-'

(6) I know Billing doc. no. & I want to know the cust region.

PASS VBELN TO VBRK

TAKE VBRK- REGIO

(7) I know Billing doc. no. & I want 'SP'.

PASS VBELN TO VBRK

TAKE VBRK- KUNAG.

8/11/11

FS (functional Specification)

- we prepare FS whenever we require the help of ABAP'er
- the below scenario's we require the help of ABAP'er.
  1. user exits,
  2. customer exits (nothing but enchancement) (SMOD)
  2. copy requirements, pricing req, output req's.
  3. Pricing formulas
  4. ZB-Reports
  5. Smartforms
  6. BDC-BAPI
  7. ALE-IDOC's.
  8. output forms

1. User exits:-

- Any determination if it is not possible with standard configurations, then we go for user exits.
- while doing the transaction if you want to check something then we go for user exits.

Path:- (to find out user exits):-

SPRO → S&P → system modification → user exits → then click on Documentation icon and check the Program & user exits.

- To check the user exits go to T-code - SE38 → Program (source code) and click on display.
- whenever ABAP'rs are changing the standard programe user exits pricing req, copy req etc then system will ask for "access key"
- whenever ABAPER require Access key then ABAPER will take the screen shot and send it to Basic Consultant. then Basis consultant will go to "service-sap-com" and mensions the information and take the 20 digit Access key number and sends it to ABAPER. then

ABAPer will mension the Access key number. then System will allow to change the program.

- As a functional consultant we will also enter into "service.sap.com"
- we use "service.sap.com" (i) To search for SAP Notes
  (ii) To post the issue (product errors) to sap.
- whenever we upgrade the system from one enhancement package to another enhancement package. then we may get some product errors. then we go to service.SAP.com & search for SAP Notes.
- SAP Note consist of program corrections. SAP Note is a number like 841257. If you find relevant SAP note for the product error then we will send this SAP note to BASIS. then BASIS consultant will apply SAP Notes.
- If you don't find SAP Note for the product error, then we will post the error to SAP.
- To enter into service.SAP.com we required "OSS ID number" & "password". OSSID no. starts with "S0000". eg: OSSID: S0000056781
  Password: xxxxx
- the OSSID no. & password will be provided by clients Administrator.
- If you don't find user exits in path then we go to programmer to search for user exits. (SE38)

  the user exit program for Sales doc is MV45AFZA
  MV45AFZB
  MV45AFZC
  MV45AFZD
  MV45AFZZ.
- If you don't find user exists here also then we go to the T-code "SMOD" and mension V* in enhancement & click on F4.
- whatever the exits we find in S-mode we will call it as enhancement

2. copy req's, Pricing Req's, Output req's :-

- the T-code to develop the Requirements is VOFM
- User defined Requirement numbers should be 900 & Above.
- After developing the req no. by ABAPER then we have to assign it in our configuration.

3. pricing formulas :-

- the T-code to develop pricing formulas is "VOFM".

4. G-Reports :-

- G-Report is a customised Report. If the clients req related to report is not fulfilling with standard configuration then we go for G-Reports. (customised reports). G-Reports will be developed by ABAPER.

fn'l consultant Role in G-Reports :-

- 1st we collect the req from core users, then we prepare FS and send it to ABAPER. then ABAPER will develop the G-Reports and assigns one T-code and send it back to fn'l consultant. then fn'l consultant will test the report and if everything fine then fn'l will move it to Quality server & production server

Scen① I want G-Report for List of Billing does in a particular plant.

Input	output
plant ☐	INV NO. INV DT CUST NO. INV Value.
S.org ☐	
Date frm ☐ to ☐	

- The standard Reports provided by SAP

1. list of orders - VA05N
2. list of Enquiries - VA15N
3. list of Quotations - VA25N
4. list of scheduling Agg - VA35N
5. List of contracts - AA45N
6. List of Billing documents - VF05N
7. Delivery Monitor - VL06O
8. collective proc. of Deliveries - VL10C, VL10A
9. collective proc. of PGI - VL06G
10. collec. processing of Picking - VL06P
11. collec. proc. of Bill doc - VF04
12. coll. proc. of posting Invoicing values into Accounting - VFX3
13. collect. proc. of deliveries w/r to PO - VL10D or VL10B
14. Delivery Due list - VL04
15. Expiring Quotations - SDQ1
16. Expired Quotations - SDQ2
17. Completed Quotations - SDQ3
18. Incomplete SD Documents - V.05

5. GAP :-

- Any clients requirement for which there is no solution from SAP. then we call it as GAP.
- we find GAAP while preparing "TO-BE" document.
- whenever we find GAAP, we need to prepare GAAP Analysis document. GAAP Analysis doc. consist of clear description of GAAP and alternate solution, estimated effort.
- estimated efforts consist of functional mandays & technical mandays.
- After preparing GAAP analysis document we will send this doc to core user for Aproval. After getting aproval then we will start working.
- SAP will not give support for GAAPS.

The GAAPs are :- 1. changing the standard programs

2. Adding G-fields in master data & Transaction data

3. New transactions.

4. Adding New Screens.

6. BDC - BAPI :-

Consultants Role in BDC - BAPI :-

- first consultant has to do recording and simultaneously prepare excel sheet in the same format of Recording.
- The T-code for Recording is - "SHDB"
- Then prepare one more excel sheet and mension the technical names of the fields for which we did Recording. And attach the excel sheet with FS & send it to ABAPer. (In excel sheet mension the recording name also. then ABAPer will develop BDC or BAPI and assign one T-code and give to final consultant. then core user will fill the data in excel file and sends to consultant
- then fn'l consultant will go to Quality server and do the mock run. If everything is fine then functional cons will go to production server and upload the data from excel to SAP.

the sequence to upload the data modulewise is MM, PP, SD, and FI.

- BDC - Batch Data Communication.
- BAPI - Business Application Programming Interface.

Diff B/w BDC & BAPI :-

- BDC will upload the data screen by screen. BAPI will upload the data directly into database tables and fields.

8. output forms :-

- functional consultants role in forms :-
- first fi'l consultant has to collect "sample outputs" from core users. then consultant has to prepare "FS" & prepare one "excel sheet" and mension the technical names of the information which we have in sample output. and attach all the 3 and send it to ABAPer. then ABAPer will develop the form.
- And give the form name to fi'l consultant. then fi'l consultant will go to output type configuration and assign the form name.
- we have 3 types of forms. 1. script form
  2. Adobe form
  3. smart form.

12/4/15

FS FORMAT

Sample Issues :-

- clients requirement is storage location should be determined based on shipping point, plant, Material type, Material group.
- In standard storage location determines based on ship point, plant and storage conditions.
- The above client's requirement will not be fulfilled with the standard configuration. so we need to go for enhancement.
- Any determination if it is not possible with standard configurations then we will go for user exits or customer exits.
- Before starting FS we need to findout the user exit (or) customer exit (Enhancement). and program or function module.
- user exits will be available in program and customer exits will be

available in function module.

PATH :- for user exits :-

SPRO → SAP → system modifications → user exits → user exits for shipping

- If you don't find user exits here, then we go to user exit programme.

the standard user exit program in Sales doc - MV45AFZA
MV45AFZB
MV45AFZC
MV45AFZD
MV45AFZZ.

- T-code for user exit program - SE38

- the standard user exit programme for delivery - MV50AFZ1
MV50AFZ2
MV50AFZ3
MV50AFZK
MV50AFZL
MV50AFZP
MV50AFZZ

- the standard user exit program for Billing - RV60AFZA
RV60AFZB
RV60AFZC
RV60AFZD
RV60AFZZ
RV60AFZJ

- If you don't find user exits in programs also then we need to go to T-code SMOD

- In SMOD put V* (in enhancement) and click on F4 option.

FS format :-

1. Title page :- user exit in delivery document

functional specification documents.

- FS will be divided into 3 parts. part A, part B, part C.

1. PART A :-

author :- Author is the person who is preparing FS.

PART A - Document Information

General Information	Project Name Document title	Beady SAP Rollout to thailand. user exits in Delivery doc.		
Author	Position/Title SD consultant	Name	functional Team	
Review	Position/title Beady TH Super user, Business Analyst.	Name	Signature	Date
Approval	position/title site Lead project mgr.	Name	signature	Date
Document History	Version 1.0	Reason for change		Effective Date

2. PART B - Request Information

Requester:		Module: ~~es~~ SD	
Description: user exits in delivery doc to determine storage location			
objective: user exits in delivery doc to determine storage location based on ship-point, plant, Mat. Type and Mat group.			
Program type	☐ Report ☐ form ☐ output ☑ Enhancement ☐ conversion	Frequency	☐ Monthly ☐ weekly ☑ Daily ☐ Ad hoc

priority Level	☑ High ☐ Medium ☐ Low	complexity	☐ very simple ☐ simple ☑ Average ☐ Difficult ☐ very Difficult

☐ New program (the new program name/ transaction will be defined by the assigned programmer.

New Name :

New T-code :

☑ copy from existing program (the existing program name must be filled up by the fn'l consultant while the new program name must be filled by the assigned programmer.

Existing Name(s) . T code(s) New Name(s) T code(s).

3. PART-C - Program Information :

1. General Description of program Logics.

In brady thailand while creating outbound delivery system should determine storage location based on Z table.

(i) Create new Z table

- Here primary keys are shipp point, plant, Mat grp, Mat type.
- primary keys are the info. which we pass to Z table

(ii) Develop new user exits

T-code : VL01N

Enhancement : V02V0002

function Module : EXIT_SAPLV02V_002

Determine storage location (LIPS-LGORT) based on abov Z table and below logic

TAKE shipping point (LIKP- VSTEL)

TAKE Plant (LIPS - WERKS)

TAKE Material type (LIPS - MTART)

TAKE Material group (LIPS - MATKL)

PASS the above info. to Z table & Determine storage location (LIPS-LGORT)

this user exit should work only for sales org. 3720 brody thailand (LCKP-VKORG).

2. Input fields (selection screen) - output fields

- No input selection for this program.
- No output fields for this program.

3. Reusable screens

4. Out put layout

(No output layout for this program.)

printing Requirements

Type of printer.

- ☐ Dot matrix
- ☐ Laser Jet
- ☐ Deskjet
- ☐ other.

Type of paper printout

- ☐ Pre-Printed form
- ☐ Regular paper (A4)
- ☐ others.

Type of program Run

- ☐ foreground
- ☐ Background

Remarks

5. Test cases

NO	Test cases	Expected Result.
1	Created outbound delivery - Normal order processing - consignment process - Return process - Inter company.	storage location determine from z table - Shipping point - plant - Mat type - Mat group
2.	change outbound delivery	System will not change the storage location.
3.	Test in other sales organisation (not 3720).	storage location determine from configuration.

Sample Issues :- Clients requirement is they want to determine plant based on Region of ship-to-party.

- But in standard plant determines based on 1.-CNER, 2.customer Master, 3 - Material Master.
- the above clients requirement is not fulfilling with standard. then we go for enhancements.

Part 1. General Description of program logic.

- plant should be determined into sales doc based on z table

(i) Create new z table

Region - (char 3), plant (char 4).

Here primary key is Region.

(ii) Develop new user exit

T-code : VA01

user exit : USER EXIT_SOURCE_DETERMINATION

program : MV45AF2B

Determine plant (VBAP-WERKS) based on above z-table & [illegible] logic

TAKE REGION CHECK KVBPA- PARVW=SH, TAKE KVBPA- KUNNR

PASS KVBPA-KUNNR TO KNA1-KUNNR, TAKE KNA1- REGIO

PASS KNA1 - REGIO TO Z-TABLE AND DETERMINE PLANT (VBAP-WERKS).

Sample Issue3:- Client requirement is they want different billing number ranges for different plant) (client req is they want different Billing doc no. for different plants.

- this req is not possible with

- After preparing FS, we will send this document to Superior.
- After review we will send this document to core user for approval.
- PART B :- Requester is the person who is rising the Issue

□ Interface means - "ALE IDOCS"

- □ Conversion means - "BDC-BAPI"

- Any change in Standard program the complexity is very difficult.
- Any developments in usercits the complexity is Average.
- for the client requirement if ABAP'er develops "new program" & T-code then ABAP will mension the "program name" and "T-code" here.
- The T-code to check the length of field is - SE11
  - mension the table and select required field and check for length. for eg: shipping point - length - (char 4)
    plant - length - (char 4)
    Material type - length - (char 4)
    Material group - length - (char 9)
    storage location - length - (char 4)

  Here primary keys are ship. point, plant, Mat group, Mat type.

- In Reference Screens we will give some screen shots which are required for ABAPer.

Sample issues:- clients req is in STO process while creating delivery if user is increasing the quantity in delivery then system should give error message.

Ans: T-code: "VL10D" (or) "VL02N"

user exit: USEREXIT_READ_DOCUMENT

Program: MV50AF21

TAKE XLIPS - LFIMG (X), (350TY).
TAKE XLIPS - VGIBEL
TAKE XLIPS - VGIPOS

PASS XLIPS - VGIBEL TO EKET - EBELN
PASS XLIPS - VGIPOS TO EKET - EBELP

TAKE EKET - WAMNG (Y) (70 QTY) (Issued QTY)
TAKE EKET - MENGE (Z) (100 QTY) (Reffered QTY)
if X+Y > Z then give error message.

Sample issues:- clients requirement is they want to maintain discounts based on customer classification.

- the field name for customer classification is KUKLA.
- And the field KUKLA is not available in field catalogue. If the field is not available in field catalogues then we go to allowed fields and try to add the field in allowed fields. some fields system will allow and some fields system will not allow. If system is not allowing the field in allowed fields then we go to enhancement.
- cust classification field system will not allow in allowed fields. so we have to go for enhancement.

Ans: ADD THE FIELD KUKLA IN INCLUDE KOMKAZ

- Header field include is KOMKAZ and
- Item field include is KOMPAZ

- After adding the field in include KOMKAZ then system will allow to add the field KUKLA in allowed fields. then you will get the field customer classification in field catelogue.
- After that we create condition table, Access sequence, condition type and we maintain condition Records. But this cond type will not be determined into sales document price. Because system will not identify the newly added field in sales doc pricing.
- To make system identify the newly added field KUKLA in Sales doc pricing we need to develop USER EXIT.

Ans: T-code: VA01

user exit: USEREXIT_PRICING_PREPARE_TKOMK (for Header)

- TKOMP (for item)

program: MV45AFZZ

PASS KNA1-KUKLA TO TKOMK-KUKLA.

- with this configuration, system can't determine into Billing document. for this we need to do following configuration.

T-code: VF01

user exit: USEREXIT_PRICING_PREPARE_TKOMK

Program: RV60AFZZ

PASS KNA1-KUKLA TO TKOMK-KUKLA

Sample Rule 7:- clients requirement is while creating sales order with ref to quotation sometimes they change the customer in order. while changing the customer in order if customer group is different for both customers then system should give error message.

Ans: T-code: VA01

user exit: USER EXIT_READ_DOCUMENT

Program: MV45AF22

QT (100551)
cust grp [D2]
OR (100553)
cust grp [D1]

TAKE XVBKD - KDGRP (D1)
TAKE XVBAK - VGBEL
PASS XVBAK - VGBEL TO VBKD - VBELN
TAKE VBKD - KDGRP (D2)
IF XVBKD - KDGRP ≠ VBKD - KDGRP give error message.

8/4/15

Sample Issues:-

clients req is any customer if he is returning the goods after 6 months from the date of Invoice. then system should inactive the Sales tax cond type in return Order. (only for ~~indian~~ client).

Ans: T-Code: VA01

user exit: USER EXIT_FIELD_MODIFICATION

Program: LV69AF22 (Program for all pricing related).

Logic: TAKE VBAK - ~~ERDAT~~ (order date)
TAKE VBAK - VGBEL
PASS VBAK - VGBEL TO VBRK - VBELN
TAKE VBRK - FKDAT
IF (XVBAK - ERDAT) - (VBRK - FKDAT) > 180 days
THEN MAKE KONV - KINAK = X (Inactive)

Eg: Inv. Oct/1/14
↓
RE 13/4/15

Issues:-

clients req is there a manual cond type which user enters manually into Sales document. But sometimes users are entering the same cond type multiple types, system should restrict that.

Ans: T-code: VA01

user exit: USER EXIT_PRICING_CHECK

program: LV69AF22

Logic: COUNT = 0

LOOP AT XKONV - KSCHL = ZDIS

COUNT = COUNT + 1

If COUNT > 1 Give error message.

END LOOP

Issue (10) :-

clients req is while creating order with reference to 'QT'. system should allow to change the base price cond types in QT. But system should not allow to change the base price cond type in 'OR" (they have status profile in QT). after creating QT, the QT will be sent to authorised people to cross check and release. After cross checking then system should allow to authorised people may change the price in QT, After changing the price in QT they will release the QT then shouldn't allow to change the price while creating 'OR' with ref 'QT'.

Ans: TCode :- VA01

user exit :- USER EXIT_ FIELD_ MODIFICATION

Program : LV69AFZZ

Logic: If XVBAK - VBTYP = B (doc category) KONV-KMANU- V106 Manual Entry

THEN MAKE KONV - KMANU = '-' or 'c'.

If XVBAK - VBTYP = C

THEN MAKE KONV - KMANU = 'D'.

Issue (11) :-

clients req is system shouldn't propose a particular discount cond type (ZDIS). if you have free goods for that line item.

Ans: T-code: VA01

userexit : USEREXIT- FIELD MODIFICATION

Program : LV69AFZZ

Logic :

~~XKONV~~ CHECK XVBAP - PSTYV = TANN

TAKE XVBAP - UEPOS

PASS XVBAP - UEPOS TO KONV - KPOSN

CHECK XKONV - KSCHL = ZDRS

THEN MAKE XKONV - KINAK = X KINAK = INACTIVE

Issue (12) :-

Clients req is for dealers system should determine new price while creating invoice. for distr & Institutions System should copy the price as it is and redetermine only taxes.

Ans: T-code : VF01

user exits : USER-EXIT - PRICING - RULE

Program : RV69AFZA Table-field pricing type - "STEU" - "KNPRS"

LOGIC : IF VBRK VTWEG = D1 (Dealer)

THEN MAKE STEU - KNPRS = [B] (new price)

IF VBRK VTWEG = D2 or D3 (Distr & Rest)

THEN MAKE STEU - KNPRS = [G] (redetermine taxes)

Issue (13) :-

Clients req is while creating sales order if profit margin is ≥200% then system should give error msg while saving the sales order.

Ans: T-code : VA01

user exit : USER EXIT - SAVE - DOCUMENT

Program : MV45AFZZ

Logic : TAKE XVBAK - NETWR (net value) (X)

THEN CUMULATE XVBAP - WAVWR (line item) (Y)

IF $\frac{(X-Y)}{Y}$ X100 ≥200 give error message

Issue 14:-

client req is they have status profile in sales order. If final release has been made then system should not allow to change the sales order. (table JEST for status profile).

Ans: T-code : VA02

user exit : USEREXIT_SAVE_DOCUMENT

program : MV45AFZZ

Logic : TAKE XVBAK-OBJNR (Object status)

PASS XVBAK-OBJNR TO JEST-OBJNR

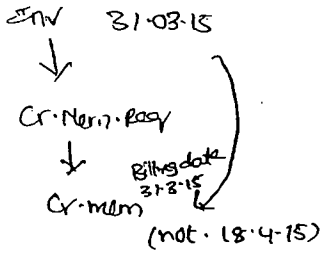
CHECK JEST-INACT = "_"

AND TAKE JEST-STAT

If JEST-STAT = E0004 give error message.

Issue 15:-

client req is while creating credit memo and debit memo invoice system should copy the billing date as it is from original invoice to CR & DR memo invoices.



Ans: T-code : VF01

user exit : USEREXIT_NUMBER_RANGE_INVOICE_DATE

program : RV60AFZZ

LOGIC: TAKE XVBRK-VGBEL

PASS XVBRK-VGBEL TO VBAK-VBELN

TAKE VBAK-VGBEL

PASS VBAK-VGBEL TO VBRK-VBELN

TAKE VBRK-FKDAT

PASS VBRK-FKDAT TO XVBRK-FKDAT

Issue 16:-

clients requirement is system shouldn't allow to change the price in order if billing is made for that order.

Ans: T-code: VA02

user exit: USER EXIT FIELD_ MODIFICATION

Program: LV69AF22

Logic: PASS XVBAK-VBELN TO LIPS VGBEL

THEN TAKE LIPS-VBELN

PASS LIPS-VBELN TO VBUK-VBELN

IF VBUK-FKSTK = C

THEN CHECK XKOMV-KSCHL = PR00

AND MAKE XKOMV-KMANU = D

——— x ———

COPY REQUIREMENT

- A requirement is a condition which system will check everytime while creating a doc with ref to another doc. If the requirement fulfills then only system will allow to create a document with ref to another doc. If the req is not fullfilling then system will not allow to create a doc with reference to another doc.
- The T-code to develop new copy requirement is VOFM.
- The user defined requirement number should be 900 & above.

Requirement:-

- Client requirement is while creating return Invoice system should check whether PGR is made or not. If PGR is not made then system shouldn't allow to create return Invoice.

Ans: In standard system will allow to create return Invoice w/o return delivery and PGR.

- To fulfill this requirement, we need to develop new copy requirement

which is a copy of standard copy requirement.

T-code : VTFA

Logic : TAKE VBAK-VBELN

PASS VBAK-VBELN TO LIPS-VGBEL

TAKE LIPS-VBELN

PASS LIPS-VBELN TO VBUK-VBELN

If VBUK-WBSTK ≠ C give error message.

Requirement 2 :-

clients req is like order combination in customer master, they want new Z-field. i.e Delivery combination in customer master billing tab. Any customer master if you check delivery combination then only system should allow to combine multiple deliveries into single invoice.

Ans :- To fullfil this requirement we will inform to ABAPER to add a new field in customer master Billing tab.

- ADD NEW ZFIELD IN CUSTOMER MASTER BILLING TAB TABLE KNVV FIELD NAME SHOULD BE ZDLC, LENGTH 1 CHAR CHECK BOX IN NATURE

- After this we need to develop new copy requirement in delivery to invoice.

T-code : VTFL

Logic : COUNT = 0

LOOP AT READ VBELN

COUNT = COUNT + 1

END LOOP

If COUNT > 1 then only go inside the logic

TAKE LIPS - KUNAG

PASS LIPS-KUNAG TO KNVV-KUNNR

TAKE KNVV-ZDLC

If KNVV-ZDLC ≠ X then give error message.

Req 3:-

clients req is system shouldn't allow to create invoice in future date

Ans:- for this req develop new routine in VBRK/VBRP (we have VBRK/VBRP routine in "DEL" "INV" copy controls.

T-code: VTFL

Standard VBRK/VBRP Routine is: 0007

Logic: TAKE VBRK-FKDAT

TAKE VBRK-ERDAT

If VBRK-FKDAT > VBRK-ERDAT give error message.

Req 4:-

clients req is system should determine Billing date same as PGI Date.

Ans:- for this req we need to develop new routine in VBRK/VBRP.

T-code: VTFL

Logic: TAKE VBRK-VGBEL

PASS VBRK-VGBEL TO LIKP-VBELN

then TAKE LIKP-WADATIST

THEN MOVE LIKP-WADATIST TO XVBRK-FKDAT

——— x ———

PRICING REQUIREMENTS

Req ①:-

clients req is they have two baseprice condition types in pricing procedure. i.e PR00 & DR00. system should determine PR00 when you are doing normal process. system should determine DR00 when you are doing third party process.

eg:	10	PR00	Req 900	→	COPY2
	20	DR00	901		CHECK KOMP-PSTYV ≠ TAS
				→	CHECK KOMP-PSTYV = TAS

PRICING FORMULAS

- The T-code to develp new formula is VOFM

standard Pricing

10	PR00	2 Lakhs
20	Base [10]	2L
30	JVAT 4% [20]	8000
40	Total (20)(30)	2,08000

Reverse pricing

10	ZR00	subtot ①	2,08000
20	JVAT 4%	(KOMP-KZWI1) X100 / 100+	

CHECK XKONV-KSCHL=JVAT
TAKE XKONV - KBETR.

OUTPUT REQUIREMENT

Req ②:- clients req is they have status profile in QT. if QT is released then only system should send a mail to customer. If QT is not released then system shouldn't send mail to customer. But in the present scenario while saving the QT itself should send a mail to customer.

Ans: for this req we need to develp new output requirement.

T-code: VA01

Logic: TAKE XVBAK-OBJNR

PASS XVBAK-OBJNR TO JEST-OBJNR

CHECK JEST-INACT = "_"

TAKE JEST-STAT

CHECK JEST-STAT = E0004.

GAPS

- Any clients req for which if there is no solution from SAP then we call it as GAP.
- whenever we find GAP, we will prepare GAP Analysis document.

GAP Analysis doc consist of

1. clear description of GAP
2. Alternate solution.
3. Estimated efforts
   (i) functional mandays
   (ii) Technical mandays

- After preparing GAP Analysis doc we will send this doc to superior for review. After review we will send this doc to core user. for approval. After getting approval then we will start working on the GAAP.
- we find GAP while preparing TO-BE document.
- the GAPS are (i) Adding new fields in master data / transaction data
  (ii) Adding new screens in master data / transaction data.
  (iii) Changing the standard program
  (iv) Developing new Z-transactions.

req①:- Client's req is like order combination they want new field in customer master. i.e Delivery combination. If delivery combination is

check then only system should allow to combine multiple deliveries into single invoice.

Req ②:-

clients req is they want to determine ~~QT~~ free goods into QT automa-
-tically.

Ans: for the above requirement by using debugging we will go to the place or program area where system determines free goods. there we will add document category 'B'.

- the above one is a GAAP. Beause we are changing the standard program.
- After enhancement we need to do this item category determination.

QT
NORM
FREE
AGIN
AGINN

Gap ③:-

clients requirement is they want to track C-form. But C-form tracking is not provided by SAP. this requirement is only for indian clients.

C-form tracking:-

- Any customer if he is eligible for C-form then while placing order customer will mension C-form then ~~Ave~~ we have to charge concessional sales tax from customer

  Eg: If normal sales tax is 5% then for C-form customers it is 1%
- But after creating invoice within 6 months from the date of

Invoice customer has to submit C-forms. If customer fails to submit C-form then we charge additional sales tax to the customers (i.e 4%' eg). this tracking is not provided by SAP.

Ans: for the above requirement we need to develop new z-transaction that is the reason we call it as GAAP.

Develop new Z-transaction:-

- whenever customer submit C-form then we will goto the Z-transaction and input the data. And when you save Z-transaction the data will be updated into Z-table

eg: ZCFORM

INV NO: 9000140
CUST NO: _____

→ VBRK-FKDAT

If [todays date - Billing date] > 180 - don't allow

INV NO	CUST NO	INV DT	CFORM SUB DT	Todaysdate	Cform Duedate	Tax class	status
			user enters only this.			C	open

- In the above transaction user will enter only C-form submission date.
- when you save this the data will be updated into Z-table. And the status will be closed.
- Now we have to develop new Z-reports. this Z-report they will run every month and with this they come to know which invoice C-form is not submitted and they charge additional sales tax

to the customer.

Develop new Z-Report :-

- Every Z-Report will have input parameters and output parameters.
- Input parameter specify on what basis you want to generate Z-Reports.
- output parameters consist of the data which you want to display in Z-Reports.

Input parameters :-

- Input parameters we have (i) Invoice number
  (ii) Customer number
  (iii) Status
  (iv) Tax classification.
  (v) Date from & TO

output parameters :-

(i) Invoice no.
(ii) customer no.
(iii) Invoice Date
(iv) Order no.
(v) Tax classification
(vi) C-form Due date (Apr 10th)
(vii) Todays Date (April 18)
(viii) No of days Exceeded (8)
(ix) Net value (20L)
(x) Sales tax percentage (1%)
(xi) Sales tax amount (C-form) (20,000)
(xii) original sales tax
(xiii) original sales tax amount
(xiv) Difference in Sales tax amount (8,000)

- After that they click on post.
- when they click on post the diff in Sales tax amount will be posted into customers outstanding and status becomes "CLOSED" And this data will also be updated into Z-table.

filters in Z-form Reports:-

(i) Billing Type - F2

(ii) tax classfcn - C

(iii) Not cancelled (Inv) (FKSTO - table for cancelled Inv)

(iv) Invoice shouldn't be updated in z-table

— x —

LD (Late Delivery) Process

- Some customer they will charge penalty if Delivery is delayed.
  - eg: Govt. customers
- the tracking of penalty is provided by SAP.
- they will charge penalty on percentages. And these percentages are not fixed. It will vary based on no of days delayed.
- To fulfil this requirement, we need to add new z-fields in customer master and sales document.
- the new z-fields in customer master → Sales Area Data

L.D Relevance (i)	ZLD	[ ]	Y/N	1 character		
(ii)	ZLD1	[5]	(no.of days)	ZLP1	[7%]	(%)
(iii)	ZLD2	[15]	(no.of days)	ZLP2	[12%]	(%)
(iv)	ZLD3	[30]	(no.of days)	ZLP3	[20%]	(%)

- the same fields i want in Sales doc header.

ZLD	[ ]		
ZLD1	[ ]	ZLP1	[ ] %
ZLD2	[ ]	ZLP2	[ ] %
ZLD3	[ ]	ZLP3	[ ] %
LD DATE	[ ]		

- If the PGI date exceeds LD date then the penalty starts.
- Now to track the penalty we need to develop new Z- Reports.

Z-Report:-

(i) Input parameters:-

(a) Invoice no.

(b) customer no.

(c) LD Relevance yes/no.

(ii) output parameters:-

(a) Invoice no.

(b) customer no.

(c) LD Relevance

(D) Invoice Date (ex: 10/4/15)

(e) LD Date (ex: 18/4/15)

(f) Difference in no. of days (8)

(g) Net value (20L)

(h) LD % (12)

(i) LD Amount (2,40,000)

(J) Status (Initially open)

- If you click on post then the LD Amount will be posted into (Z- ~~table~~) customers account. And the accounting entry is

Revenue A/c Dt

To

customer A/c Cr.

open order stock Report

(i) Input parameters

(a) Sales order no.

(b) Cust no.

(c) plant

(d) Material

(ii) output parameters

(a) Sales order no.

(b) Cust - no.

(c) Material
(d) Order date
(e) Order Qty
(f) Order value
(g) open Qty (VBBE - OMEN G)
(h) open value (open Qty x ord value)/ord Qty
(i) Delivery Qty (ord Qty — open Qty)
(j) Delivery value (ord value - open value)

Here filters are

(i) check VBUP - GBSTA ≠ C and
check Doc. cat should be = C

Sales tax Register (only for Indian clients)

(I) Input parameters

(a) Inv no.
(b) cust no.
(c) plant
(d) CST
(e) vat
(f) Date from & to

(II) output parameters

(a) Inv no.
(b) Cust no.
(c) Inv date
(d) payment terms
(e) Item no.
(f) Material
(g) Qty
(h) base value
(i) total discounts
(J) Gross value
(K) total surcharge
(L) Net value
(M) BED, ESS, SECS
(N) Net Excise
(O) CST %
(P) CST Amount
(Q) vat %
(R) vat Amount.

Here filters are
- Billing type - F2
- It shouldn't be cancelled.
- Tax class is not '0'.

Customer Ageing Reports

Input Parameters

(i) Inv no:

(ii) customer no:

(iii) AGEING: [10] [30] [50]

Output Parameters:-

(i) Inv. no:

(ii) cust no:

(iii) Inv date:

(iv) Payment terms:

(v) Due Date:

(vi) Due value:

(vii) Overdue value:

- this report is Integration b/w SD & FI
- Ageing nothing but number of outstanding overdue days.

SD ISSUES

① clients requirement is some customers if they purchase some slow moving item then system shouldn't update the value into credit Mgt. (Item cat determ (usage))

② clients requirement is if customer purchase slow moving item then they want to offer 20 days extra credit period. (Pricing)

③ clients requirement is they want to offer discount based on total document value. (Group condition concept).

④ clients requirement is frieght should be calculated based on below requirement. (Refer to Pricing)

⑤ clients requirement is if some materials are determined as free good then they want to offer 50% discounts.

Z100 (1000) 55

R100 55

(6) client Requirement is they want to add new discount cond type in pricing procedure. And this new discount cond type should automatically determines into invoice, while creating invoice for already created open orders in which we don't have the new discount cond type.

Sol: Go to ZDES (V/06) & maintain cond cat: 'L' (General new when copy)

(7) clients requirement is they want to redetermine tax as well as freight condition types while creating invoice.

Sol: Maintain cond category: D for MWST & KF00

Maintain Pricing Type: G

(8) client requirement is in one plant if stock is not available then system shouldn't confirm the Qty. In another plant even if stock is not available system should confirm the Qty in future date.

(9) client requirement is in third party process, they want to generate automatic PO.

Sol: (i) Maintain ACE Data. (ii) Create PO Automatic ☑

(10) clients requirement is in third party process while creating invoice system should determine the cost from MIRO

Sol: Pricing Type [N]

(11) clients requirement is in STO process they want to copy the price from PO to Profarma Invoice.

High Priority Issues

① there is one Invoice for which accounting document is not generated And during monthend client raised this issue. and they want to post it immediately.

when we analyse the invoice profit centre is missing. And we asked user to maintain profit centre in material master and with the help of Debugging we posted profit centre to debugging.

② There is a material forwhich we have available qty. But system is not confirmed. when we analyse there is one order which was deleted but still appearing in Stock requirement (MD04).

Sol: Run a program SDRQCR21

eg MD04

X		
1001	-30	70
1002	-25	45
1003	-20	50

After Program Run → MD04

OR 1001 [X 30] OR ~~1002 [X 25]~~ OR 1003 [X 20]

X		
1001	-30	70
1003	-20	50

- when you Execute Material: X
  plant: A100
  ☐ comparison Cunchecks → ①

③ - we will find High priority issues in Del, Env, Excise Env.

ASAP METHODOLOGY

- It has 5 phases.
- we involve from BBP phase
- client meeting with core users. site visit.
- Team size 15, SD-3, My position - consultant, others 2 shadow consultant and associate consultant (for Domestic). (6 months) + 3 months)
- MNC Team size - 60, SD-11 (13 months + 3 months post production)
- In BBP, Implementation partner will provide questions. 90% cases it will happen at manufacturing plant. Requirement gathering will take 2 months.
- then we prepare BBP (don't say To-be doc).
- we may find GAP., Prepare and ask core user to sign off.
- Problem we face while gathering requirements.
  - core user won't spend time to explain
  - If core user knows SAP, and asking to explain in detail.
  - Core user don't want to implement SAP.
- once BBP signoff, we will get mail from BASIS consultant with logon details. we will have access to two servers. Dev and Quality server.
- In Development we will have 3 clients.
  (i) Sandbox (ii) Configuration (iii) Internal testing.

100	200	300
sand	config	Intnal

- Don't say 800 & 000 as your client in interviews.
- configuration client doesn't have master data and transactional data. only configuration we will do here.
- for testing we have seperate server 300 (Internal testing).
- Import - client to client - No need to Release request
- Transport - server to server - Need to Release request

- we will import the request.
- Transport will be done by BASIS. Here we need to release request (SE09 1st we release the child (Release directly) and then Parent request.

Import Request - SCC1

Release request - SE09, SE10

Transport request - STMS

- Once we Release the request, we can't save any configurations in that (server) request. If we release child request then we can save configurations in request which will generate another childrequest
- After transporting if we found that there is a mistake, we go to develop server, do the configuration save in another request and transport
- then we need to do Base line config, and integrated config.
- then unit testing, integrated testing. Here we need to prepare test case document.

what: If high risk cust credit limit exceeds block at Order level.
How: Create a Customer, Maintain F032, Risk cat [A01], & create OR more than cr. limit
Expected Result: BLOCK THE ORDER
Actual Result: NOT BLOCKED
Status: FAIL
Tested doc no: 14800

- After testing we prepare user manual doc and config doc.
- And we prepare FS document.

21/12/2011

SCENARIOS

① client req is BP should be determined from SH. But not from SP.

configuration:-

Step1:- Go to VOPAN → select customer Master → change

- Select SH PDP and double click on PF's in procedure. then go to new entries and add 'BP'. and save it

KUNE	BP	☐	☑

Step2:- Go to A/c group for Assignment → NEW ENTRIES

BP	-	K002

Step3:- select Sales doc Header → change

- Select the PDP "TA" and double click on PF's in Procedure.
- then go to BP and maintain source as 'SH', sequence '1'
- save it.

Ans: Go to partner determination for sales document header and for BP partner function maintain source as "SH".

② Restricting number of line items in Invoice:-

PATH:- SPRO → S&D → Billing → Billing documents → Country specific features → Maintain max no. of billing items.

- then go to your sales org and maintain the no. of line items you want to restrict.

eg:

S.org	no. Items
A100	2

Step2: In copy controls maintain VBRK/VBRP as [006.]
T-code [VTFL] → F2-LF → Item → TAN → Details

- To practise create order with multiple line items (eg: 3), complete the delivery and create Invoice.

③ can i have multiple SH in single sales order.

Ans: yes. In line item → Partner - you can change.

④ clients req is system shouldn't allow to change SH in Sales Order

Ans: T-code [VOPAN] → Sales doc Header → TA SH - ☑ (Not modifiable).

In item level - VOPAN → Sales doc item → N - SH - ☑ (not modifiable).

⑤ can i change the customer Address in sales order?

Ans: Go to partner frs tab and double click on PF and change the address.

- If you change address in sales doc, then that data will be updated in [ADRC] table

⑥ How many max. no. of line items we can enter in sales order?

Ans: Check it in google.

⑦ can i cancel the Invoice?

Ans: yes - Go to VF11, mension Invoice no, and save it. when you cancel Invoice the A/c entry is Revenue A/c Dr
To
Customer A/c Cr

⑧ can i delete Delivery?

Ans: yes. Go to change mode (VL02N) → outbound delivery → Delete.

Collective processing of Deliveries :-

- If you want to combine multiple orders into single delivery then Ef Order combination. (XD02 - Shipping tab)
- create multiple orders
- Go to VL10A or VL10C
  - mension Deliveryy creation date ____ : ____
  - Execute
- select all orders and click on Background
- then click on Log
- then select the line and click on Documents
- then select the line and display documents

Collective processing of Picking :-

- T-code is VL06P
  - Mension shipping point : A101 and Execute
- then select all and click on change, do the picking and save the delivery (dont do PGI).

Collective processing of PGI :-

- T-code is VL06G
  - Mension the shipping point : A101 and execute
- then select all and click on "Post Goods Issue"

Collective processing of Billing document :-

- T-code is VF04
  - Mension the Billing dates : ____ : ____
- select all the deliveries and click on collective billing does / online

Delivery Monitoring :-

- the T-code for Delivery monitor is 'VL060'

① what is the T-code for Incomplete SD Documents ? (V.01)